



US009192675B2

(12) **United States Patent**  
**Smutney et al.**

(10) **Patent No.:** **US 9,192,675 B2**  
(45) **Date of Patent:** **\*Nov. 24, 2015**

(54) **DRY POWDER INHALER AND SYSTEM FOR  
DRUG DELIVERY**

(Continued)

(71) Applicant: **MannKind Corporation**, Valencia, CA  
(US)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**  
CPC ..... **A61K 47/22** (2013.01); **A61K 9/0075**  
(2013.01); **A61K 38/1709** (2013.01);  
(Continued)

(72) Inventors: **Chad C. Smutney**, Watertown, CT (US);  
**P. Spencer Kinsey**, Sandy Hook, CT  
(US); **Carl R. Sahi**, Coventry, CT (US);  
**Benoit Adamo**, Mount Kisco, NY (US);  
**John M. Polidoro**, Coventry, CT (US);  
**Scott McLean**, Waterbury, CT (US);  
**Dennis Overfield**, Fairfield, CT (US);  
**Kelly S. Kraft**, Poughquag, NY (US);  
**Karla Somerville**, Corona, CA (US)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**  
CPC ..... A61K 38/28; A61K 9/0075; A61K 47/22;  
A61K 9/145; A61K 9/1617; A61K 9/0073;  
A61K 9/14; A61K 38/1709; A61K 38/22;  
A61K 38/26; A61K 38/00; A61M 15/0028;  
A61M 15/0091; A61M 2202/064; A61M  
15/0043  
See application file for complete search history.

(73) Assignee: **ManKind Corporation**, Valencia, CA  
(US)

(56) **References Cited**  
U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

(\*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this  
patent is extended or adjusted under 35  
U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

2,549,303 A 4/1951 Friden  
2,754,276 A 7/1956 Joseph et al.  
(Continued)

This patent is subject to a terminal dis-  
claimer.

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

(21) Appl. No.: **13/954,731**

CA 2551182 C 8/2010  
CN 101851213 10/2010

(22) Filed: **Jul. 30, 2013**

(Continued)

(65) **Prior Publication Data**  
US 2013/0338065 A1 Dec. 19, 2013

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

**Related U.S. Application Data**

(63) Continuation of application No. 12/484,129, filed on  
Jun. 12, 2009, now Pat. No. 8,636,001.

Coors et al., Polysorbate 80 in medical products and nonim-  
munologic anaphylactoid reactions. Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.,  
95(6): 593-599 (2005). Abstract only. Accessed by Examiner on Jul.  
22, 2013 and cited in Office Action issued on Jul. 26, 2013 in U.S.  
Appl. No. 12/830,557.

(Continued)

(60) Provisional application No. 61/157,506, filed on Mar.  
4, 2009, provisional application No. 61/061,551, filed  
on Jun. 13, 2008.

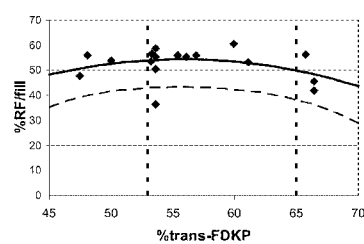
*Primary Examiner* — Isis Ghali

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — K&L Gates LLP; Louis C.  
Cullman; Hal Gibson

(51) **Int. Cl.**  
**A61K 47/22** (2006.01)  
**A61M 15/00** (2006.01)

(57) **ABSTRACT**

A breath-powered, dry powder inhaler, a cartridge, and a  
pulmonary drug delivery system are provided. The dry pow-



der inhaler can be provided with or without a unit dose cartridge for using with the inhaler. The inhaler and/or cartridge can be provided with a drug delivery formulation comprising, for example, a diketopiperazine and an active ingredient, including, peptides and proteins such as insulin and glucagon-like peptide 1 for the treatment of diabetes and/or obesity. The dry powder inhaler is compact; can be provided in

various shapes and sizes, colors, and comprises a housing, a mouthpiece, a cartridge placement area, and a mechanism for opening and closing the medicament cartridge. The device is easy to manufacture, provides a pre-metered single unit dose, it is relatively easy to use, and can be reusable or disposable.

**18 Claims, 78 Drawing Sheets**

(51)	<b>Int. Cl.</b>		4,624,861	A	11/1986	Yale et al.
	<i>A61K 9/00</i>	(2006.01)	4,637,996	A	1/1987	Konishi
	<i>A61K 38/28</i>	(2006.01)	D288,852	S	3/1987	Miyoshi
	<i>A61K 38/17</i>	(2006.01)	4,659,696	A	4/1987	Hirai et al.
	<i>A61K 38/22</i>	(2006.01)	4,668,218	A	5/1987	Virtanen
	<i>A61K 38/26</i>	(2006.01)	4,681,752	A	7/1987	Melillo
(52)	<b>U.S. Cl.</b>		D295,321	S	4/1988	Hallworth
	CPC .....		4,757,066	A	7/1988	Shiokari et al.
	<i>A61K 38/22</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 38/26</i>		4,792,451	A	12/1988	Kim
	(2013.01); <i>A61K 38/28</i> (2013.01); <i>A61M</i>		4,811,731	A	3/1989	Newell et al.
	<i>15/0023</i> (2014.02); <i>A61M 15/0028</i> (2013.01);		D301,273	S	5/1989	Leonard
	<i>A61M 15/0043</i> (2014.02); <i>A61M 15/0045</i>		4,835,312	A	5/1989	Itoh et al.
	(2013.01); <i>A61M 15/0048</i> (2014.02); <i>A61M</i>		4,841,964	A	6/1989	Hurka et al.
	<i>15/0086</i> (2013.01); <i>A61M 15/0091</i> (2013.01);		4,849,227	A	7/1989	Cho
	<i>A61M 2202/064</i> (2013.01); <i>A61M 2205/6081</i>		4,861,627	A	8/1989	Mathiowitz
	(2013.01)		4,866,051	A	9/1989	Hunt et al.
			4,873,087	A	10/1989	Morishita et al.
			4,887,722	A	12/1989	Greenward, Sr.
			4,900,730	A	2/1990	Miyauchi
			4,907,583	A	3/1990	Wetterlin
			4,925,673	A	5/1990	Steiner
			4,926,852	A	5/1990	Zoltan et al.
			4,927,555	A	5/1990	Colarusso, Jr.
			4,927,928	A	5/1990	Shroot et al.
			4,946,828	A	8/1990	Markussen
			4,981,295	A	1/1991	Belman et al.
(56)	<b>References Cited</b>		4,983,402	A	1/1991	Steiner et al.
	U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS		4,984,158	A	1/1991	Hillsman
	D189,076	S 10/1960 Altman	4,991,605	A	2/1991	Keritsis
	3,337,740	A 8/1967 Gray et al.	4,998,624	A	3/1991	Capes et al.
	3,407,203	A 10/1968 Buijle	5,006,343	A	4/1991	Benson
	3,518,340	A 6/1970 Raper	D316,902	S	5/1991	Hoefling
	3,622,053	A 11/1971 Ryden	5,021,376	A	6/1991	Nienburg et al.
	3,669,113	A 6/1972 Altounyan et al.	5,027,806	A	7/1991	Zoltan et al.
	3,823,816	A 7/1974 Controullis et al.	5,042,975	A	8/1991	Chien
	3,823,843	A 7/1974 Stephens et al.	D321,570	S	11/1991	Blasdell et al.
	3,856,142	A 12/1974 Vessalo	5,067,500	A	11/1991	Keritsis
	3,906,950	A 9/1975 Cocozza	5,069,204	A	12/1991	Smith et al.
	3,921,637	A 11/1975 Bennie et al.	5,074,418	A	12/1991	Buan et al.
	3,976,773	A 8/1976 Curran et al.	5,075,027	A	12/1991	Dixit et al.
	3,980,074	A 9/1976 Watt et al.	5,098,590	A	3/1992	Dixit et al.
	3,998,226	A 12/1976 Harris	5,105,291	A	4/1992	Matsumoto et al.
	4,013,075	A 3/1977 Cocozza	D326,517	S	5/1992	Funai et al.
	4,018,619	A 4/1977 Webster et al.	5,110,007	A	5/1992	Law et al.
	4,022,749	A 5/1977 Kuechler	5,110,823	A	5/1992	Hamaguchi et al.
	4,040,536	A 8/1977 Schwarz	5,118,666	A	6/1992	Habener
	4,047,525	A 9/1977 Kulesa et al.	5,120,712	A	6/1992	Habener
	4,078,128	A 3/1978 Hoyt et al.	5,124,291	A	6/1992	Bremer et al.
	4,091,077	A 5/1978 Smith et al.	5,131,539	A	7/1992	Karita et al.
	4,098,273	A 7/1978 Glenn	5,139,878	A	8/1992	Kim
	4,102,953	A 7/1978 Johnson et al.	5,145,684	A	9/1992	Liversidge et al.
	4,110,240	A 8/1978 Leo et al.	5,152,284	A	10/1992	Valentini et al.
	4,148,308	A 4/1979 Sayer	D331,106	S	11/1992	Fuchs
	4,153,689	A 5/1979 Hirai	5,167,506	A	12/1992	Kilis et al.
	D252,707	S 8/1979 Besnard	5,170,801	A	12/1992	Casper et al.
	4,171,000	A 10/1979 Uhle	5,188,837	A	2/1993	Domb
	4,175,556	A 11/1979 Freezer	5,201,308	A	4/1993	Newhouse
	4,187,129	A 2/1980 Bost et al.	5,203,768	A	4/1993	Haak et al.
	4,196,196	A 4/1980 Tiholiz	5,204,108	A	4/1993	Ilium
	4,206,758	A 6/1980 Hallworth et al.	D337,636	S	7/1993	Kocinski
	4,210,140	A 7/1980 James et al.	D338,062	S	8/1993	Yair
	4,211,769	A 7/1980 Okada	D338,268	S	8/1993	Kobayashi et al.
	4,268,460	A 5/1981 Boiarski et al.	5,239,992	A	8/1993	Bougamont et al.
	4,272,398	A 6/1981 Jaffe	5,244,653	A	9/1993	Berke et al.
	4,275,820	A 6/1981 LeBlond	5,250,287	A	10/1993	Cocozza
	4,289,759	A 9/1981 Heavener	D340,975	S	11/1993	Sladek
	4,294,829	A 10/1981 Suzuki	5,260,306	A	11/1993	Boardman et al.
	4,300,546	A 11/1981 Kruber	5,270,305	A	12/1993	Palmer
	4,356,167	A 10/1982 Kelly	5,287,850	A	2/1994	Haber et al.
	D269,463	S 6/1983 Young et al.	D344,796	S	3/1994	Sochon et al.
	4,407,525	A 10/1983 Hoppe	D344,797	S	3/1994	Sochon et al.
	4,456,007	A 6/1984 Nakao et al.	D345,013	S	3/1994	Huck et al.
	4,483,922	A 11/1984 Carpenter	5,301,666	A	4/1994	Lerk et al.
	D276,654	S 12/1984 Snellman-Wasenius et al.	5,306,453	A	4/1994	Shulman
	4,487,327	A 12/1984 Grayson	D347,057	S	5/1994	Yair
	4,524,769	A 6/1985 Wetterlin	D348,100	S	6/1994	Clarke
	4,526,804	A 7/1985 Escallon	5,320,094	A	6/1994	Laube et al.
	4,534,345	A 8/1985 Wetterlin	D348,928	S	7/1994	Ashley et al.
	D282,209	S 1/1986 Newell et al.	D348,929	S	7/1994	Paton
	4,581,020	A 4/1986 Mittleman				
	4,592,348	A 6/1986 Waters, IV et al.				
	4,613,500	A 9/1986 Suzuki				
	4,615,817	A 10/1986 McCoy				

(56)

## References Cited

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,327,883 A	7/1994	Williams et al.	5,578,323 A	11/1996	Milstein et al.
5,328,464 A	7/1994	Kriesel et al.	5,584,417 A	12/1996	Graf et al.
5,331,953 A	7/1994	Andersson et al.	D377,215 S	1/1997	Rand
5,333,106 A	7/1994	Lanpher et al.	D377,686 S	1/1997	Waldeck et al.
D349,572 S	8/1994	Jagnandan et al.	5,595,175 A	1/1997	Malcher et al.
D350,193 S	8/1994	Huck et al.	5,596,701 A	1/1997	Augusteijn et al.
5,337,740 A	8/1994	Armstrong et al.	D377,861 S	2/1997	Jacober
D350,602 S	9/1994	Hobbs	5,598,835 A	2/1997	von Schrader
D350,821 S	9/1994	Wright et al.	5,601,846 A	2/1997	Milstein et al.
5,351,683 A	10/1994	Chiesi et al.	5,610,271 A	3/1997	Dooley et al.
5,352,461 A	10/1994	Feldstein et al.	5,614,492 A	3/1997	Habener
5,354,562 A	10/1994	Platz	5,615,670 A	4/1997	Rhodes et al.
5,358,734 A	10/1994	Lenox et al.	5,617,844 A	4/1997	King
D352,107 S	11/1994	Meier et al.	5,619,984 A	4/1997	Hodson et al.
5,360,614 A	11/1994	Fox et al.	5,622,164 A	4/1997	Kilis et al.
5,363,842 A	11/1994	Mishelevich et al.	5,622,166 A	4/1997	Eisele et al.
5,364,838 A	11/1994	Rubsamen	5,623,724 A	4/1997	Gurkovich et al.
5,372,128 A	12/1994	Haber et al.	5,623,920 A	4/1997	Bryant
D355,029 S	1/1995	Kinneir et al.	D379,506 S	5/1997	Maher
5,385,904 A	1/1995	Andersson et al.	5,629,020 A	5/1997	Leone-Bay
5,394,868 A	3/1995	Ambrosio et al.	5,631,224 A	5/1997	Efendic et al.
5,401,516 A	3/1995	Milstein et al.	5,632,971 A	5/1997	Yang
D357,603 S	4/1995	Wolff	5,634,900 A	6/1997	Makino et al.
5,404,871 A	4/1995	Goodman et al.	5,641,861 A	6/1997	Dooley et al.
D358,880 S	5/1995	Mulhauser et al.	D381,416 S	7/1997	Hansson et al.
5,413,804 A	5/1995	Rhodes	5,642,727 A	7/1997	Datta et al.
5,415,162 A	5/1995	Casper et al.	5,642,728 A	7/1997	Andersson et al.
D359,153 S	6/1995	Viggiano	5,643,957 A	7/1997	Leone-Bay et al.
D359,555 S	6/1995	Funai et al.	5,645,051 A	7/1997	Schultz
5,424,286 A	6/1995	Eng	5,651,359 A	7/1997	Bougamont et al.
5,437,271 A	8/1995	Hodson et al.	5,653,961 A	8/1997	McNally et al.
5,443,841 A	8/1995	Milstein et al.	5,655,516 A	8/1997	Goodman et al.
D362,500 S	9/1995	Cook et al.	5,655,523 A	8/1997	Hodson et al.
5,447,150 A	9/1995	Bacon	5,657,748 A	8/1997	Braithwaite
5,447,151 A	9/1995	Bruna et al.	5,658,878 A	8/1997	Backstrom et al.
5,447,728 A	9/1995	Milstein et al.	5,660,169 A	8/1997	Kallstrand et al.
5,451,410 A	9/1995	Milstein et al.	5,672,581 A	9/1997	Rubsamen et al.
D363,775 S	10/1995	Hobbs	5,673,686 A	10/1997	Villax et al.
5,454,871 A	10/1995	Liaw et al.	5,679,377 A	10/1997	Bernstein et al.
5,455,335 A	10/1995	Kahne et al.	5,687,710 A	11/1997	Ambrosio et al.
5,458,135 A	10/1995	Patton et al.	5,690,910 A	11/1997	Ahmed et al.
5,469,750 A	11/1995	Lloyd et al.	5,693,338 A	12/1997	Milstein
5,469,971 A	11/1995	Chilton et al.	5,699,789 A	12/1997	Hendricks
5,476,093 A	12/1995	Lankinen	D389,238 S	1/1998	Kirk, III et al.
5,477,285 A	12/1995	Riddle et al.	D389,570 S	1/1998	Savolainen
D365,876 S	1/1996	Chawla	5,705,483 A	1/1998	Galloway et al.
5,482,032 A	1/1996	Smith et al.	D390,651 S	2/1998	Smith et al.
5,482,927 A	1/1996	Maniar	D390,653 S	2/1998	Blasdel et al.
5,483,954 A	1/1996	Mecikalski	5,714,007 A	2/1998	Pletcher et al.
5,484,606 A	1/1996	Dhaber et al.	5,714,167 A	2/1998	Milstein et al.
5,487,378 A	1/1996	Robertson et al.	5,727,546 A	3/1998	Clarke et al.
5,492,112 A	2/1996	Mecikalski et al.	5,740,793 A	4/1998	Hodson et al.
D368,364 S	4/1996	Reitano et al.	5,740,794 A	4/1998	Smith et al.
5,503,144 A	4/1996	Bacon	5,746,197 A	5/1998	Williams
5,503,852 A	4/1996	Steiner et al.	5,746,227 A	5/1998	Rose et al.
5,505,194 A	4/1996	Adjei et al.	5,747,445 A	5/1998	Backstrom et al.
5,506,203 A	4/1996	Backstrom et al.	5,752,505 A	5/1998	Ohki et al.
D370,255 S	5/1996	Yamamoto et al.	5,755,218 A	5/1998	Johansson et al.
5,514,646 A	5/1996	Chance et al.	D395,147 S	6/1998	Vidgren et al.
5,518,998 A	5/1996	Backstorm et al.	D395,499 S	6/1998	Eisele et al.
5,524,613 A	6/1996	Haber et al.	5,758,638 A	6/1998	Kreamer
5,532,461 A	7/1996	Crummenauer et al.	5,763,396 A	6/1998	Weiner et al.
5,533,502 A	7/1996	Piper	5,766,620 A	6/1998	Heiber et al.
5,533,505 A	7/1996	Kallstrand et al.	5,766,633 A	6/1998	Milstein et al.
5,542,411 A	8/1996	Rex	5,769,073 A	6/1998	Eason et al.
5,542,539 A	8/1996	Early	5,772,085 A	6/1998	Bryant et al.
5,545,618 A	8/1996	Buckley et al.	RE35,862 E	7/1998	Steiner et al.
5,547,929 A	8/1996	Anderson, Jr. et al.	5,775,320 A	7/1998	Patton et al.
5,562,909 A	10/1996	Allcock et al.	5,785,049 A	7/1998	Smith et al.
5,562,918 A	10/1996	Stimpson	5,785,989 A	7/1998	Stanley et al.
5,568,884 A	10/1996	Bruna	D397,435 S	8/1998	Naumann
5,570,810 A	11/1996	Lambelet, Jr. et al.	5,792,451 A	8/1998	Sarubbi et al.
5,571,795 A	11/1996	Kahne et al.	5,794,613 A	8/1998	Piskorski
5,574,008 A	11/1996	Johnson et al.	5,797,391 A	8/1998	Cook et al.
5,577,497 A	11/1996	Mecikalski et al.	D398,992 S	9/1998	Feret
			5,799,821 A	9/1998	Lambelet, Jr. et al.
			5,807,315 A	9/1998	Va Antwerp et al.
			5,809,997 A	9/1998	Wolf
			5,811,127 A	9/1998	Milstein et al.

(56)

## References Cited

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,813,397 A	9/1998	Goodman et al.	6,060,069 A	5/2000	Hill et al.
5,824,345 A	10/1998	Milstein et al.	6,063,910 A	5/2000	Debenedetti et al.
5,839,429 A	11/1998	Marnfeldt et al.	6,071,497 A	6/2000	Steiner et al.
5,840,279 A	11/1998	Narodylo et al.	6,073,629 A	6/2000	Hardy et al.
5,840,340 A	11/1998	Milstein et al.	6,077,543 A	6/2000	Gordon et al.
5,846,447 A	12/1998	Beatty	6,080,762 A	6/2000	Allen et al.
5,848,589 A	12/1998	Welnetz	D428,486 S	7/2000	Schuckmann
5,849,322 A	12/1998	Ebert et al.	6,085,745 A	7/2000	Levander et al.
5,857,457 A	1/1999	Hyppola	6,087,334 A	7/2000	Beeley et al.
5,858,099 A	1/1999	Sun et al.	6,087,351 A	7/2000	Nye
5,865,012 A	2/1999	Hansson et al.	6,089,228 A	7/2000	Smith et al.
5,868,774 A	2/1999	Reil	6,095,136 A	8/2000	Virtanen
5,874,064 A	2/1999	Edwards et al.	6,098,618 A	8/2000	Jennings et al.
5,875,776 A	3/1999	Vaghefi	6,098,619 A	8/2000	Britto et al.
5,877,174 A	3/1999	Ono et al.	6,099,517 A	8/2000	Daugherty
5,881,719 A	3/1999	Gottenauer et al.	6,102,035 A	8/2000	Asking et al.
5,881,721 A	3/1999	Bunce et al.	6,105,571 A	8/2000	Coffee
5,884,620 A	3/1999	Gonda et al.	6,105,574 A	8/2000	Jahnsson
5,888,477 A	3/1999	Gonda et al.	6,109,261 A	8/2000	Clarke et al.
5,896,855 A	4/1999	Hobbs et al.	6,109,481 A	8/2000	Alexander et al.
5,901,703 A	5/1999	Ohki et al.	6,116,237 A	9/2000	Schultz
5,904,139 A	5/1999	Hauser	6,116,238 A	9/2000	Jackson et al.
D410,541 S	6/1999	Moulin	6,116,239 A	9/2000	Volgyesi
D411,005 S	6/1999	Coe	6,119,684 A	9/2000	Nohl et al.
5,908,639 A	6/1999	Simpkin et al.	6,119,688 A	9/2000	Whaley et al.
5,912,011 A	6/1999	Makino et al.	6,131,567 A	10/2000	Gonda et al.
5,918,594 A	7/1999	Asking et al.	6,132,766 A	10/2000	Sankaram et al.
5,919,897 A	7/1999	Dooley et al.	6,133,235 A	10/2000	Galloway et al.
5,921,237 A	7/1999	Eisele et al.	6,142,145 A	11/2000	Dagsland
5,924,419 A	7/1999	Kotliar	6,152,130 A	11/2000	Abrams
5,929,027 A	7/1999	Takama et al.	6,153,613 A	11/2000	Ono et al.
D412,572 S	8/1999	Gray	6,155,423 A	12/2000	Katzne et al.
D412,744 S	8/1999	Braithwaite	6,156,114 A	12/2000	Bell et al.
D412,978 S	8/1999	Cameron	6,158,431 A	12/2000	Poole
D412,979 S	8/1999	Weinstein et al.	6,159,360 A	12/2000	Gerteis et al.
5,934,273 A	8/1999	Andersson et al.	RE37,053 E	2/2001	Hanes et al.
5,942,242 A	8/1999	Mizushima et al.	6,182,655 B1	2/2001	Keller et al.
5,948,749 A	9/1999	Igarashi et al.	6,187,291 B1	2/2001	Weinstein et al.
5,952,008 A	9/1999	Backstrom et al.	6,191,102 B1	2/2001	DiMarchi et al.
5,954,047 A	9/1999	Armer et al.	6,192,876 B1	2/2001	Denyer et al.
5,965,701 A	10/1999	Junien et al.	6,193,844 B1	2/2001	McLaughlin et al.
5,971,951 A	10/1999	Ruskewicz	6,193,957 B1	2/2001	Ahmed
D416,085 S	11/1999	Forssell et al.	D438,612 S	3/2001	Suh
D416,621 S	11/1999	Forssell et al.	D439,325 S	3/2001	Frost
D416,998 S	11/1999	Hodson et al.	D439,656 S	3/2001	Andersson et al.
D417,271 S	11/1999	Denyer et al.	6,198,847 B1	3/2001	Washizawa
5,975,347 A	11/1999	Lambelet, Jr. et al.	D441,446 S	5/2001	Dagsland et al.
5,976,569 A	11/1999	Milstein	D441,859 S	5/2001	Pera
5,976,574 A	11/1999	Gordon	D442,685 S	5/2001	Sladek
5,977,071 A	11/1999	Galloway et al.	6,235,725 B1	5/2001	Ahmed
5,980,865 A	11/1999	Ahmed et al.	D444,226 S	6/2001	Geert-Jensen et al.
5,981,488 A	11/1999	Hoffmann	6,250,300 B1	6/2001	Andersson et al.
5,983,893 A	11/1999	Wetterlin	6,254,854 B1	7/2001	Edwards et al.
5,985,248 A	11/1999	Gordon et al.	6,257,232 B1	7/2001	Andersson et al.
5,985,309 A	11/1999	Edwards et al.	6,258,816 B1	7/2001	Singh et al.
5,990,077 A	11/1999	Drucker	6,263,871 B1	7/2001	Brown et al.
D417,732 S	12/1999	Dagsland et al.	6,269,952 B1	8/2001	Watt et al.
D417,912 S	12/1999	Dagsland et al.	6,273,084 B1	8/2001	Frid
5,996,577 A	12/1999	Ohki et al.	6,273,085 B1	8/2001	Eisele et al.
5,997,848 A	12/1999	Patton et al.	6,273,086 B1	8/2001	Ohki et al.
6,001,336 A	12/1999	Gordon	6,277,819 B1	8/2001	Efendic
6,006,747 A	12/1999	Eisele et al.	6,279,511 B1	8/2001	Loughnane
6,006,753 A	12/1999	Efendic	D448,076 S	9/2001	Von Schuckmann
D418,600 S	1/2000	Haerle	6,286,506 B1	9/2001	MacAndrew et al.
D420,736 S	2/2000	Moulin	6,286,507 B1	9/2001	Jahnsson
6,026,809 A	2/2000	Abrams et al.	6,294,204 B1	9/2001	Rossling et al.
6,029,663 A	2/2000	Eisele et al.	D449,684 S	10/2001	Christrup et al.
D421,800 S	3/2000	Doat	6,298,846 B1	10/2001	Ohki et al.
6,039,208 A	3/2000	Lambelet et al.	6,298,847 B1	10/2001	Datta et al.
6,043,214 A	3/2000	Jensen et al.	D450,117 S	11/2001	Braithwaite et al.
6,045,828 A	4/2000	Bystrom et al.	D451,597 S	12/2001	Suh
6,051,256 A	4/2000	Platz et al.	6,328,034 B1	12/2001	Eisele et al.
6,051,551 A	4/2000	Hughes et al.	6,331,318 B1	12/2001	Milstein
6,055,980 A	5/2000	Mecikalski et al.	D452,910 S	1/2002	Braithwaite et al.
6,056,169 A	5/2000	Bruna et al.	6,335,316 B1	1/2002	Hughes et al.
			D453,264 S	2/2002	Acevedo, Jr.
			6,347,629 B1	2/2002	Braithwaite
			6,348,447 B1	2/2002	Hellstorm et al.
			6,357,442 B1	3/2002	Casper et al.

(56)

**References Cited**

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

6,358,058 B1	3/2002	Strupat et al.	6,578,571 B1	6/2003	Watt
6,358,924 B1	3/2002	Hoffman	6,582,728 B1	6/2003	Platz et al.
6,360,743 B1	3/2002	Andersson et al.	6,583,111 B1	6/2003	DiMarchi
6,360,929 B1	3/2002	McCarthy	D477,665 S	7/2003	Myrman et al.
D455,208 S	4/2002	Bacon et al.	6,589,560 B2	7/2003	Foster et al.
6,363,932 B1	4/2002	Forchione et al.	6,591,832 B1	7/2003	DeJonge
6,365,190 B1	4/2002	Gordon et al.	6,592,904 B2	7/2003	Platz et al.
6,372,258 B1	4/2002	Platz et al.	6,595,205 B2	7/2003	Andersson et al.
6,375,975 B1	4/2002	Modi	6,595,208 B1	7/2003	Coffee et al.
6,380,357 B2	4/2002	Harmeling et al.	D478,983 S	8/2003	Whitehall et al.
6,386,195 B1	5/2002	Coffee	6,606,992 B1	8/2003	Schuler et al.
6,388,053 B1	5/2002	Galloway et al.	D479,745 S	9/2003	Albulet et al.
6,394,085 B1	5/2002	Hardy et al.	6,613,308 B2	9/2003	Bartus et al.
6,395,300 B1	5/2002	Straub et al.	6,615,987 B1	9/2003	Greenhill et al.
6,395,744 B1	5/2002	Adams et al.	6,620,910 B1	9/2003	Calas et al.
6,395,774 B1	5/2002	Milstein	6,626,173 B2	9/2003	Genova et al.
6,410,513 B1	6/2002	Galloway et al.	D480,806 S	10/2003	Engelberth et al.
D460,173 S	7/2002	Harrison	6,630,169 B1	10/2003	Bot et al.
6,415,784 B1	7/2002	Christrup et al.	6,632,258 B1	10/2003	Wheelock et al.
6,418,926 B1	7/2002	Chawla	6,632,456 B1	10/2003	Backstrom et al.
6,423,344 B1	7/2002	Platz et al.	6,635,283 B2	10/2003	Edwards et al.
D461,239 S	8/2002	Cassidy	6,637,431 B2	10/2003	Ekelius et al.
6,427,688 B1	8/2002	Ligotke et al.	6,640,050 B2	10/2003	Nichols et al.
6,428,771 B1	8/2002	Steiner et al.	6,644,309 B2	11/2003	Casper et al.
6,428,805 B1	8/2002	Dohi et al.	6,645,468 B2	11/2003	Cutie et al.
6,432,383 B1	8/2002	Modi	6,645,504 B1	11/2003	Weiner et al.
6,436,443 B2	8/2002	Edwards et al.	6,652,838 B2	11/2003	Weinstein et al.
6,439,227 B1	8/2002	Myrman et al.	6,652,885 B2	11/2003	Steiner et al.
6,440,463 B1	8/2002	Feldstein et al.	D483,860 S	12/2003	Knoch
6,441,172 B1	8/2002	Nefzi et al.	6,655,379 B2	12/2003	Clark et al.
D463,544 S	9/2002	Engelberth et al.	6,655,380 B1	12/2003	Andersson et al.
6,443,143 B1	9/2002	Ishida et al.	6,655,381 B2	12/2003	Keane et al.
6,444,226 B1	9/2002	Steiner et al.	6,660,716 B1	12/2003	Yakubu-Madus et al.
6,446,626 B1	9/2002	Virtanen	6,663,898 B2	12/2003	Milstein
6,446,627 B1	9/2002	Bowman et al.	6,668,826 B1	12/2003	Myrman et al.
6,447,750 B1	9/2002	Cutie et al.	6,672,304 B1	1/2004	Casper et al.
6,447,751 B1	9/2002	Weinstein et al.	6,676,931 B2	1/2004	Dugger, III
6,447,753 B2	9/2002	Edwards et al.	6,679,255 B2	1/2004	Pera
6,451,337 B1	9/2002	Smith et al.	6,681,767 B1	1/2004	Patton et al.
6,457,470 B1	10/2002	Coffee	6,681,768 B2	1/2004	Haaije de Boer et al.
6,468,507 B1	10/2002	Cutie et al.	6,685,967 B1	2/2004	Patton
6,470,884 B2	10/2002	Horlin	6,698,421 B2	3/2004	Attolini
6,479,049 B1	11/2002	Platz et al.	6,701,917 B2	3/2004	O'Leary
6,484,715 B1	11/2002	Ritsche et al.	6,703,361 B2	3/2004	Weiner et al.
6,484,717 B1	11/2002	Dagsland et al.	6,703,365 B2	3/2004	Galloway et al.
D469,527 S	1/2003	Keller et al.	6,703,381 B1	3/2004	Ekwuribe et al.
6,503,480 B1	1/2003	Edwards et al.	6,705,313 B2	3/2004	Niccolai
6,509,006 B1	1/2003	Platz et al.	6,715,486 B2	4/2004	Gieschen et al.
6,509,313 B1	1/2003	Smith	6,715,487 B2	4/2004	Nichols et al.
D469,866 S	2/2003	Albulet et al.	6,718,972 B2	4/2004	O'Leary
6,514,482 B1	2/2003	Bartus et al.	6,720,407 B1	4/2004	Hughes et al.
6,518,239 B1	2/2003	Kuo et al.	6,722,363 B1	4/2004	von Schuckmann
D471,273 S	3/2003	Albulet et al.	D489,448 S	5/2004	Shayan
6,528,096 B1	3/2003	Musa et al.	6,729,324 B2	5/2004	Casper et al.
6,532,437 B1	3/2003	Clardy et al.	6,729,328 B2	5/2004	Goldemann
6,536,427 B2	3/2003	Davies et al.	6,737,045 B2	5/2004	Patton
D473,298 S	4/2003	Bowman et al.	6,745,761 B2	6/2004	Christrup et al.
D473,640 S	4/2003	Cuffaro et al.	6,747,006 B2	6/2004	Efendic
6,540,672 B1	4/2003	Simonsen et al.	6,748,946 B1	6/2004	Rand et al.
6,540,982 B1	4/2003	Adjei et al.	6,748,947 B2	6/2004	Keane et al.
6,540,983 B1	4/2003	Adjei et al.	6,752,145 B1	6/2004	Bonney et al.
6,543,448 B1	4/2003	Smith et al.	6,755,190 B2	6/2004	Rasmussen
6,546,929 B2	4/2003	Burr et al.	D492,769 S	7/2004	Hatanaka
6,555,521 B2	4/2003	Hermeling et al.	D493,220 S	7/2004	Burge et al.
D474,536 S	5/2003	Albulet et al.	D493,519 S	7/2004	Jonsson et al.
D475,133 S	5/2003	McLuckie	6,774,112 B2	8/2004	Gougoutas
6,557,549 B2	5/2003	Schmidt et al.	6,787,152 B2	9/2004	Kirby et al.
6,561,186 B2	5/2003	Casper et al.	6,790,496 B1	9/2004	Levander et al.
6,567,686 B2	5/2003	Sexton	6,792,945 B2	9/2004	Davies et al.
6,568,390 B2	5/2003	Nichols et al.	6,797,258 B2	9/2004	Platz et al.
6,569,406 B2	5/2003	Stevenson et al.	6,799,572 B2	10/2004	Nichols et al.
6,571,793 B1	6/2003	Nilsson et al.	6,800,643 B2	10/2004	Cuenoud et al.
6,572,893 B2	6/2003	Gordon et al.	6,803,044 B1	10/2004	Catania et al.
6,575,160 B1	6/2003	Volgyesi	6,821,949 B2	11/2004	Bridon et al.
6,575,162 B1	6/2003	Rand	6,823,863 B2	11/2004	Huxham et al.
			D499,802 S	12/2004	Pinon et al.
			6,830,046 B2	12/2004	Blakley et al.
			6,838,075 B2	1/2005	Stevenson et al.
			6,838,076 B2	1/2005	Platton et al.

(56)

## References Cited

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

6,847,595 B2	1/2005	Tanaka	7,171,965 B2	2/2007	Young et al.
6,848,443 B2	2/2005	Schmidt et al.	7,172,768 B2	2/2007	Hastedt et al.
6,849,708 B1	2/2005	Habener	7,179,788 B2	2/2007	DeFelippis et al.
6,852,690 B1	2/2005	Nauck et al.	D537,936 S	3/2007	Cox et al.
6,858,199 B1	2/2005	Edwards et al.	D538,423 S	3/2007	Berube et al.
6,860,262 B2	3/2005	Christrup et al.	7,185,650 B2	3/2007	Huber et al.
6,866,037 B1	3/2005	Aslin et al.	7,198,806 B2	4/2007	Berndt
6,871,646 B2	3/2005	Keane et al.	7,211,557 B2	5/2007	DiMarchi et al.
6,871,647 B2	3/2005	Allan et al.	7,219,664 B2	5/2007	Ruckdeschel et al.
6,880,554 B1	4/2005	Coffee	7,223,728 B2	5/2007	Yakubu-Madus et al.
6,881,423 B2	4/2005	Dohi et al.	D544,093 S	6/2007	Eriksen
6,884,435 B1	4/2005	O'Hagan et al.	7,231,919 B2	6/2007	Giroux
6,887,459 B1	5/2005	Haeblerlin	7,232,897 B2	6/2007	Hotamisligil et al.
6,887,849 B2	5/2005	Bridon et al.	7,234,459 B2	6/2007	Del Bon
6,889,687 B1	5/2005	Olsson	7,234,460 B2	6/2007	Greenleaf et al.
6,892,728 B2	5/2005	Helgesson et al.	7,234,464 B2	6/2007	Goede et al.
6,896,906 B2	5/2005	Hastedt et al.	7,238,663 B2	7/2007	DeFelippis et al.
6,904,907 B2	6/2005	Speldrich et al.	7,246,617 B1	7/2007	Hammer et al.
6,906,030 B2	6/2005	Milstein	D548,330 S	8/2007	Cox et al.
6,916,354 B2	7/2005	Elliot	D548,833 S	8/2007	Young et al.
6,918,991 B2	7/2005	Chickering, III et al.	7,258,118 B2	8/2007	Goede et al.
6,921,458 B2	7/2005	Chickering, III et al.	7,259,233 B2	8/2007	Dodd et al.
6,921,528 B2	7/2005	Edwards et al.	D550,835 S	9/2007	Tanaka et al.
6,923,175 B2	8/2005	Poole	7,270,124 B2	9/2007	Rasmussen
D509,296 S	9/2005	Minshull et al.	D552,729 S	10/2007	Cox et al.
D509,898 S	9/2005	Bunce et al.	7,276,534 B2	10/2007	Milstein
6,948,496 B2	9/2005	Eason et al.	7,278,419 B2	10/2007	Gonda
6,949,258 B2	9/2005	Zhang	7,278,426 B2	10/2007	Myrman et al.
6,951,215 B1	10/2005	Hoffman	7,279,457 B2	10/2007	Pohl et al.
6,953,812 B2	10/2005	Jorgenson et al.	7,284,553 B2	10/2007	Hochrainer
D511,208 S	11/2005	Pardonge et al.	D557,799 S	12/2007	Greenhalgh et al.
6,962,006 B2	11/2005	Chickering, III et al.	7,305,986 B1	12/2007	Steiner et al.
D512,777 S	12/2005	Beisner et al.	7,306,787 B2	12/2007	Tarara et al.
6,979,437 B2	12/2005	Bartus et al.	D560,793 S	1/2008	Pearl et al.
D514,222 S	1/2006	Andersson et al.	7,314,859 B2	1/2008	Green et al.
6,981,499 B2	1/2006	Andersson et al.	7,316,748 B2	1/2008	Li et al.
6,989,155 B1	1/2006	Ganderton et al.	7,331,340 B2	2/2008	Barney
6,991,779 B2	1/2006	Steiner et al.	7,334,577 B2	2/2008	Gumaste et al.
D515,696 S	2/2006	Lucking et al.	7,344,734 B2	3/2008	Heijerman et al.
D516,211 S	2/2006	Minshull et al.	7,368,102 B2	5/2008	Tarara et al.
6,998,387 B1	2/2006	Goke et al.	7,373,938 B2	5/2008	Nichols et al.
D518,170 S	3/2006	Clarke et al.	7,377,277 B2	5/2008	Hickey et al.
D518,171 S	3/2006	Anderson et al.	7,387,122 B2	6/2008	Nishibayashi et al.
7,022,674 B2	4/2006	DeFelippis et al.	7,399,528 B2	7/2008	Caponetti et al.
7,025,056 B2	4/2006	Eason et al.	7,401,713 B2	7/2008	Ede et al.
7,028,686 B2	4/2006	Gonda et al.	7,402,564 B1	7/2008	Schteingart et al.
7,030,084 B2	4/2006	Ekwuribe et al.	7,414,720 B2	8/2008	Wachtel et al.
7,032,593 B2	4/2006	Johnston et al.	D577,815 S	9/2008	Gokhale et al.
7,035,294 B2	4/2006	Dove et al.	7,422,013 B2	9/2008	Burr et al.
7,047,967 B2	5/2006	Knudsen	D579,549 S	10/2008	Birath et al.
7,048,908 B2	5/2006	Basu et al.	7,448,375 B2	11/2008	Gonda et al.
7,060,274 B2	6/2006	Blumberg et al.	7,448,379 B2	11/2008	Yamashita et al.
7,067,129 B2	6/2006	Blumberg et al.	7,451,761 B2	11/2008	Hickey et al.
7,077,130 B2	7/2006	Nichols et al.	7,453,556 B2	11/2008	Hochrainer et al.
7,080,642 B2	7/2006	Hodson et al.	D583,463 S	12/2008	Wood et al.
7,084,243 B2	8/2006	Glaesner et al.	7,461,653 B2	12/2008	Oliva
7,093,594 B2	8/2006	Harrison et al.	7,462,367 B2	12/2008	Schmidt et al.
7,093,595 B2	8/2006	Nesbitt	7,464,706 B2	12/2008	Steiner et al.
D527,817 S	9/2006	Ziegler et al.	7,469,696 B2	12/2008	Yang et al.
7,101,843 B2	9/2006	Glaesner et al.	7,500,479 B2	3/2009	Nichols et al.
7,101,866 B2	9/2006	Biggadike et al.	7,503,324 B2	3/2009	Barney et al.
7,107,988 B2	9/2006	Pinon et al.	7,504,538 B2	3/2009	Chang et al.
D529,604 S	10/2006	Young et al.	7,517,874 B2	4/2009	Beckett et al.
7,128,067 B2	10/2006	Byron et al.	7,520,278 B2	4/2009	Crowder et al.
7,131,441 B1	11/2006	Keller et al.	7,521,069 B2	4/2009	Patton et al.
7,132,115 B2	11/2006	Musa et al.	7,533,668 B1	5/2009	Widerstrom
7,140,365 B2	11/2006	Poole et al.	7,556,798 B2	7/2009	Edwards et al.
D533,268 S	12/2006	Olfati	7,559,322 B2	7/2009	Foley et al.
7,143,764 B1	12/2006	Dagsland et al.	D597,657 S	8/2009	Kinsey et al.
7,143,765 B2	12/2006	Asking et al.	7,584,846 B2	9/2009	Senter
7,144,863 B2	12/2006	DeFelippis et al.	7,598,222 B2	10/2009	Prouty, Jr. et al.
7,146,978 B2	12/2006	Edwards et al.	D604,832 S	11/2009	Smutney
7,151,456 B2	12/2006	Godfrey	D604,833 S	11/2009	Polidoro
7,163,014 B2	1/2007	Nichols et al.	D605,752 S	12/2009	Polidoro
D537,522 S	2/2007	Cox et al.	D605,753 S	12/2009	Smutney
			7,625,865 B2	12/2009	Colombo
			7,648,960 B2	1/2010	Steiner et al.
			D613,849 S	4/2010	Smutney
			D614,760 S	4/2010	Smutney et al.

(56)

## References Cited

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

7,694,676	B2	4/2010	Wachtel	2002/0053347	A1	5/2002	Ziaee
7,708,014	B2	5/2010	Yamashita et al.	2002/0065239	A1	5/2002	Caplan et al.
7,709,639	B2	5/2010	Stevenson	2002/0088462	A1	7/2002	Genova et al.
7,713,937	B2	5/2010	Schteingart et al.	2002/0101590	A1	8/2002	Shimaoka
7,727,963	B2	6/2010	Schteingart et al.	2002/0144680	A1	10/2002	Nilsson et al.
7,735,485	B2	6/2010	Yamashita et al.	2002/0161001	A1	10/2002	Kanstrup et al.
7,799,344	B2	9/2010	Oberg	2003/0000524	A1	1/2003	Andersson et al.
7,803,404	B2	9/2010	Hokenson	2003/0010794	A1	1/2003	Herdtle et al.
7,820,676	B2	10/2010	Leone-Bay et al.	2003/0013641	A1	1/2003	Steiner et al.
7,833,549	B2	11/2010	Steiner et al.	2003/0017211	A1	1/2003	Steiner
7,833,550	B2	11/2010	Steiner et al.	2003/0053960	A1	3/2003	Heijerman et al.
7,842,662	B2	11/2010	Schteingart et al.	2003/0064097	A1	4/2003	Patel et al.
D629,505	S	12/2010	Adamo	2003/0068378	A1	4/2003	Chen et al.
D629,506	S	12/2010	Adamo	2003/0099636	A1	5/2003	Epshtein et al.
D629,886	S	12/2010	Adamo	2003/0136405	A1	7/2003	Goede et al.
D629,887	S	12/2010	Adamo	2003/0194420	A1	10/2003	Holl et al.
D629,888	S	12/2010	Adamo	2003/0235538	A1	12/2003	Zierenberg
D635,241	S	3/2011	McLean	2004/0024180	A1	2/2004	Drauz
D635,242	S	3/2011	Adamo	2004/0025875	A1	2/2004	Reber et al.
D635,243	S	3/2011	Kinsey	2004/0034014	A1	2/2004	Kanstrup et al.
7,913,688	B2	3/2011	Cross	2004/0038865	A1	2/2004	Gelber et al.
D636,868	S	4/2011	Kinsey et al.	2004/0053819	A1	3/2004	Dodd et al.
7,919,119	B2	4/2011	Straub et al.	2004/0062722	A1	4/2004	Gonda et al.
7,943,178	B2	5/2011	Steiner et al.	2004/0077528	A1	4/2004	Steiner et al.
7,943,572	B2	5/2011	Cheatham et al.	2004/0096403	A1	5/2004	Steiner
7,954,491	B2	6/2011	Hrkach	2004/0107963	A1	6/2004	Finlay et al.
7,959,609	B2	6/2011	Gaydos et al.	2004/0121964	A1	6/2004	Madar et al.
8,037,880	B2	10/2011	Zhu et al.	2004/0138099	A1	7/2004	Draeger
8,037,881	B2	10/2011	Pentafragas	2004/0151059	A1	8/2004	Roberts, II et al.
8,039,431	B2	10/2011	Wilson et al.	2004/0151774	A1	8/2004	Pauletti et al.
8,047,203	B2	11/2011	Young et al.	2004/0157928	A1	8/2004	Kim et al.
8,109,267	B2	2/2012	Villax et al.	2004/0163648	A1	8/2004	Burton
8,119,593	B2	2/2012	Richardson	2004/0182387	A1	9/2004	Steiner et al.
8,133,514	B2	3/2012	Milstein	2004/0187869	A1	9/2004	Bjornedal et al.
8,146,588	B2	4/2012	Steiner et al.	2004/0204439	A1	10/2004	Staniforth et al.
8,156,936	B2	4/2012	Steiner et al.	2004/0204440	A1	10/2004	Staniforth et al.
8,166,970	B2	5/2012	Poole et al.	2004/0211419	A1	10/2004	Eason et al.
8,172,817	B2	5/2012	Michaels et al.	2004/0234615	A1	11/2004	Sabetsky
8,196,576	B2	6/2012	Kriksunov	2004/0234616	A1	11/2004	Sabetsky
8,201,555	B2	6/2012	Chawla	2004/0247628	A1	12/2004	Lintz et al.
8,202,992	B2	6/2012	Stevenson	2004/0250812	A1	12/2004	Davies et al.
8,215,300	B2	7/2012	Steiner et al.	2005/0000518	A1	1/2005	Dunkley et al.
8,217,007	B1	7/2012	Schteingart	2005/0039743	A1	2/2005	Taylor
8,227,409	B2	7/2012	Kraft	2005/0043228	A1	2/2005	DeFelippis et al.
8,236,766	B2	8/2012	Schteingart	2005/0043247	A1	2/2005	Trunk et al.
8,258,095	B2	9/2012	Boss et al.	2005/0056281	A1	3/2005	Snow
8,278,308	B2	10/2012	Leone-Bay et al.	2005/0070469	A1	3/2005	Bloom
8,293,869	B2	10/2012	Bossard	2005/0080000	A1	4/2005	Thurrow et al.
8,314,106	B2	11/2012	Kraft	2005/0119604	A1	6/2005	Bonney et al.
8,372,804	B2	2/2013	Richardson	2005/0147581	A1	7/2005	Zamiri et al.
8,377,869	B2	2/2013	Richardson	2005/0153874	A1	7/2005	Cheatham et al.
8,389,470	B2	3/2013	Steiner	2005/0155601	A1	7/2005	Steiner et al.
8,394,414	B2	3/2013	Steiner et al.	2005/0183723	A1	8/2005	Pinon et al.
8,408,200	B2	4/2013	Clark et al.	2005/0187749	A1	8/2005	Singley
8,420,604	B2	4/2013	Hokenson	2005/0214251	A1	9/2005	Pohl et al.
8,424,518	B2	4/2013	Smutney	2005/0252508	A1	11/2005	Koerner
8,485,180	B2	7/2013	Smutney	2005/0265927	A1	12/2005	Lee
8,486,894	B2	7/2013	Schteingart	2005/0274378	A1	12/2005	Bonney et al.
8,499,757	B2	8/2013	Smutney	2006/0000469	A1	1/2006	Tseng
8,512,932	B2	8/2013	Wilson et al.	2006/0040953	A1	2/2006	Leone-Bay et al.
8,522,775	B2	9/2013	Malhotra et al.	2006/0041133	A1	2/2006	Stevenson et al.
8,536,131	B2	9/2013	Schteingart	2006/0060194	A1	3/2006	Oliva
8,538,707	B2	9/2013	Adamo	2006/0073105	A1	4/2006	Yamashita et al.
8,539,946	B2	9/2013	Esteve et al.	2006/0099269	A1	5/2006	Cheatham et al.
8,551,528	B2	10/2013	Grant et al.	2006/0120969	A1	6/2006	Nilsson et al.
8,636,001	B2	1/2014	Smutney	2006/0153778	A1	7/2006	Gelber
8,671,937	B2	3/2014	Steiner	2006/0160722	A1	7/2006	Green et al.
8,677,992	B2	3/2014	Villax et al.	2006/0165756	A1	7/2006	Catani et al.
8,763,606	B2	7/2014	Mosier et al.	2006/0169280	A1	8/2006	Yama et al.
8,820,324	B2	9/2014	Smith et al.	2006/0239933	A1	10/2006	Nilsson et al.
8,925,726	B2	1/2015	Bergey	2006/0239934	A1	10/2006	Cheatham
2001/0020147	A1	9/2001	Staniforth et al.	2006/0243275	A1	11/2006	Ruckdeschel et al.
2002/0033177	A1	3/2002	Ohki et al.	2006/0249419	A1	11/2006	Taylor et al.
2002/0052381	A1	5/2002	Bar-Or et al.	2006/0260777	A1	11/2006	Rashba-Step et al.
2002/0053344	A1	5/2002	Davies et al.	2006/0283758	A1	12/2006	Pasbrig
				2007/0017506	A1	1/2007	Bell et al.
				2007/0020191	A1	1/2007	Boss et al.
				2007/0027063	A1	2/2007	Boss et al.
				2007/0044793	A1	3/2007	Kleinsteuer et al.



(56)

## References Cited

## U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2007/0059373 A1 3/2007 Oberg  
 2007/0059374 A1 3/2007 Hokenson et al.  
 2007/0074989 A1 4/2007 Merboth et al.  
 2007/0086952 A1 4/2007 Steiner  
 2007/0099454 A1 5/2007 Gordon  
 2007/0125375 A1 6/2007 Finlay et al.  
 2007/0151562 A1 7/2007 Jones  
 2007/0191462 A1 8/2007 Hettiarachchi  
 2007/0196503 A1 8/2007 Wilson  
 2007/0207958 A1 9/2007 Bridon et al.  
 2007/0225587 A1 9/2007 Burnell et al.  
 2007/0235029 A1 10/2007 Zhu et al.  
 2007/0240708 A1 10/2007 Schuckmann  
 2007/0272763 A1 11/2007 Dunne et al.  
 2007/0277821 A1 12/2007 Oliva et al.  
 2007/0295332 A1 12/2007 Ziegler  
 2008/0015457 A1 1/2008 Silva  
 2008/0047550 A2 2/2008 Steiner et al.  
 2008/0066739 A1 3/2008 LeMahieu et al.  
 2008/0108554 A1 5/2008 Jackson et al.  
 2008/0115785 A1 5/2008 Eason et al.  
 2008/0127970 A1 6/2008 Steiner et al.  
 2008/0127971 A1 6/2008 King et al.  
 2008/0127974 A1 6/2008 Lastow  
 2008/0168987 A1 7/2008 Denny et al.  
 2008/0190424 A1 8/2008 Lucking et al.  
 2008/0190425 A1 8/2008 Steiner et al.  
 2008/0197044 A1 8/2008 Hickey et al.  
 2008/0216824 A1 9/2008 Ooida  
 2008/0217199 A1 9/2008 Burress et al.  
 2008/0255468 A1 10/2008 Derchak et al.  
 2008/0260838 A1 10/2008 Hokenson et al.  
 2008/0260840 A1 10/2008 Alessi  
 2008/0295833 A1 12/2008 Rohrschneider et al.  
 2008/0314384 A1 12/2008 Harris et al.  
 2008/0319333 A1 12/2008 Gavish et al.  
 2009/0025720 A1 1/2009 Chen  
 2009/0068274 A1 3/2009 Edwards et al.  
 2009/0084379 A1 4/2009 Goeckner et al.  
 2009/0084380 A1 4/2009 Gieschen et al.  
 2009/0110647 A1 4/2009 Richardson  
 2009/0149727 A1 6/2009 Truitt et al.  
 2009/0151720 A1 6/2009 Inoue et al.  
 2009/0178676 A1 7/2009 Villax et al.  
 2009/0205657 A1 8/2009 Barney et al.  
 2009/0209502 A1 8/2009 Haeblerlin et al.  
 2009/0232891 A1 9/2009 Gelber et al.  
 2009/0241949 A1 10/2009 Smutney  
 2009/0250058 A1 10/2009 Lastow  
 2009/0258818 A1 10/2009 Surolia et al.  
 2009/0308391 A1 12/2009 Smutney  
 2009/0314292 A1 12/2009 Overfield  
 2009/0320837 A1 12/2009 Smith et al.  
 2010/0012120 A1 1/2010 Herder  
 2010/0086609 A1 4/2010 Steiner et al.  
 2010/0113363 A1 5/2010 Holst et al.  
 2010/0163042 A1 7/2010 Bhowmick et al.  
 2010/0180894 A1 7/2010 Jones  
 2010/0181225 A1 7/2010 Spallek et al.  
 2010/0190701 A1 7/2010 Day et al.  
 2010/0193380 A1 8/2010 Sullivan et al.  
 2010/0197565 A1 8/2010 Smutney et al.  
 2010/0212667 A1 8/2010 Smith et al.  
 2010/0235116 A1 9/2010 Adamo et al.  
 2010/0238457 A1 9/2010 Adamo et al.  
 2010/0278924 A1 11/2010 Oberg  
 2010/0326438 A1 12/2010 Dunne  
 2011/0000482 A1 1/2011 Gumaste et al.  
 2011/0003004 A1 1/2011 Hokenson  
 2011/0011394 A1 1/2011 Edwards et al.  
 2011/0083667 A1 4/2011 Briant  
 2011/0158935 A1 6/2011 Kraft  
 2011/0183901 A1 7/2011 Cheatham  
 2012/0014999 A1 1/2012 Grant et al.  
 2012/0040899 A1 2/2012 Costello

2012/0071510 A1 3/2012 Leone-Bay  
 2012/0094905 A1 4/2012 Costello  
 2012/0115777 A1 5/2012 Richardson  
 2012/0122775 A1 5/2012 Boss et al.  
 2012/0160241 A1 6/2012 Oliva  
 2012/0164186 A1 6/2012 Grant et al.  
 2012/0178935 A1 7/2012 Stevenson  
 2012/0192865 A1 8/2012 Steiner et al.  
 2012/0207913 A1 8/2012 Smyth  
 2012/0240929 A1 9/2012 Steiner et al.  
 2012/0247235 A1 10/2012 Adamo et al.  
 2012/0247465 A1 10/2012 Wachtel  
 2012/0328676 A1 12/2012 Leone-Bay et al.  
 2013/0012710 A1 1/2013 Freeman et al.  
 2013/0053309 A1 2/2013 Kraft  
 2013/0104887 A1 5/2013 Smutney  
 2013/0125886 A1 5/2013 Richardson et al.  
 2013/0143801 A1 6/2013 Steiner et al.  
 2013/0189365 A1 7/2013 Hokenson  
 2013/0199527 A1 8/2013 Smutney  
 2013/0289278 A1 10/2013 Kraft  
 2013/0291866 A1 11/2013 Smutney  
 2013/0291867 A1 11/2013 Smutney  
 2013/0303445 A1 11/2013 Wilson et al.  
 2013/0338065 A1 12/2013 Smutney  
 2014/0007873 A1 1/2014 Smutney  
 2014/0014106 A1 1/2014 Smutney  
 2014/0083421 A1 3/2014 Smutney  
 2014/0096771 A1 4/2014 Rimmelgas et al.

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE 2840442 C2 2/1982  
 DE 3639836 A1 6/1988  
 DE 19519840 A1 12/1996  
 EP 69715 1/1983  
 EP 122036 10/1984  
 EP 143524 6/1985  
 EP 180543 5/1986  
 EP 220958 5/1987  
 EP 237507 8/1987  
 EP 257915 2/1988  
 EP 308637 A1 3/1989  
 EP 360340 3/1990  
 EP 364235 4/1990  
 EP 387222 A 9/1990  
 EP 388621 A 9/1990  
 EP 606486 12/1993  
 EP 581473 A1 2/1994  
 EP 655237 5/1995  
 EP 666085 A1 8/1995  
 EP 748213 12/1996  
 EP 558879 B1 5/1997  
 EP 844007 12/1998  
 EP 1060741 A1 12/2000  
 EP 1114644 7/2001  
 EP 640354 B1 12/2001  
 EP 1364967 11/2003  
 EP 825885 B1 3/2004  
 EP 96911738 6/2004  
 EP 1598066 11/2005  
 EP 833652 B1 2/2008  
 EP 1923087 A2 5/2008  
 EP 2060268 A1 5/2009  
 EP 2314298 A1 4/2011  
 GB 475440 A 11/1937  
 GB 716815 10/1954  
 GB 2072536 A 10/1981  
 GB 2148841 A 6/1985  
 GB 2240337 7/1991  
 GB 2253200 A 9/1992  
 GB 2262452 6/1993  
 GB 2398065 A 8/2004  
 JP 63-020301 1/1988  
 JP 2115154 A 4/1990  
 JP 2-149545 2/1992  
 JP 09-208485 8/1997  
 JP 10234827 9/1998  
 JP 2002322294 11/2002

(56)

## References Cited

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

JP	2003-503420	1/2003	WO	2004/012720	2/2004
JP	2004-121061	4/2004	WO	2004/033010	4/2004
JP	2006-280620 A	10/2006	WO	2004/035121	4/2004
TW	200505517 A	2/2005	WO	2004/041338	5/2004
WO	90/13285	11/1990	WO	2004/050152	6/2004
WO	91/04011	4/1991	WO	2004/054647 A1	7/2004
WO	91/06287	5/1991	WO	2004/056314	7/2004
WO	91/16038	10/1991	WO	2004/060458	7/2004
WO	91/16882	11/1991	WO	2004/064862	8/2004
WO	91/19524	12/1991	WO	2004/075919	9/2004
WO	92/04069	3/1992	WO	2004/080401	9/2004
WO	92/08509	5/1992	WO	2004/080482	9/2004
WO	93/02712	2/1993	WO	2004/103304 A2	12/2004
WO	93/14110	7/1993	WO	2005/020964	3/2005
WO	93/17728	9/1993	WO	2005/023348	3/2005
WO	93/18754	9/1993	WO	2005/028699	3/2005
WO	94/00291	1/1994	WO	2005/067964	7/2005
WO	94/08552	4/1994	WO	2005/081977 A2	9/2005
WO	94/08599	4/1994	WO	2005/089722	9/2005
WO	94/19041	9/1994	WO	2005/089843	9/2005
WO	94/23702	10/1994	WO	2005/102428 A1	11/2005
WO	95/00127	1/1995	WO	2005/102429	11/2005
WO	95/05208	2/1995	WO	2005/113042 A1	12/2005
WO	95/11666	5/1995	WO	2005/113043	12/2005
WO	95/24183	9/1995	WO	2005/120616	12/2005
WO	95/31979	11/1995	WO	2006/010248	2/2006
WO	95/34294	12/1995	WO	2006/017688 A2	2/2006
WO	96/01105	1/1996	WO	2006/023849	3/2006
WO	96/05810	2/1996	WO	2006/023943	3/2006
WO	96/13250	5/1996	WO	2006/023944	3/2006
WO	96/22802 A	8/1996	WO	2006/037636	4/2006
WO	96/27386 A1	9/1996	WO	2006/059939	6/2006
WO	96/32149	10/1996	WO	2006/061637	6/2006
WO	96/36314	11/1996	WO	2006/086107	8/2006
WO	96/40206 A1	12/1996	WO	2006/090149	8/2006
WO	97/01365	1/1997	WO	2006/105501	10/2006
WO	97/04747	2/1997	WO	2007/007110 A1	1/2007
WO	97/25086 A2	7/1997	WO	2007/019229	2/2007
WO	97/30743	8/1997	WO	2007/024953 A1	3/2007
WO	97/46206	12/1997	WO	2007/030706	3/2007
WO	97/49386	12/1997	WO	2007/033316	3/2007
WO	98/26827 A1	6/1998	WO	2007/042822	4/2007
WO	98/39043	9/1998	WO	2007/068896	6/2007
WO	98/41255 A2	9/1998	WO	WO 2007068896 A1 *	6/2007
WO	98/43615	10/1998	WO	2007/075534 A2	7/2007
WO	99/14239 A1	3/1999	WO	2007/093310	8/2007
WO	99/18939 A1	4/1999	WO	2007/098500	8/2007
WO	99/32510 A1	7/1999	WO	2007/100535	9/2007
WO	99/33862	7/1999	WO	2007/118342	10/2007
WO	99/52506	10/1999	WO	2007/118343 A1	10/2007
WO	00/12116	3/2000	WO	2007/121411	10/2007
WO	00/33811 A2	6/2000	WO	2007/132217	11/2007
WO	00/71154 A2	11/2000	WO	2007/144607	12/2007
WO	01/00654	1/2001	WO	2007/144614	12/2007
WO	01/81321 A	1/2001	WO	2008/001744	1/2008
WO	01/07107	2/2001	WO	2008/008021	1/2008
WO	01/49274 A2	7/2001	WO	2008/014613 A1	2/2008
WO	01/51071	7/2001	WO	2008/020217	2/2008
WO	01/66064	9/2001	WO	2008/060484 A2	5/2008
WO	01/68169	9/2001	WO	2008/092864	8/2008
WO	02/11676	2/2002	WO	2008/110809	9/2008
WO	02/12201 A1	2/2002	WO	2009/005546	1/2009
WO	02/47659 A2	6/2002	WO	2009/008001	1/2009
WO	02/058735	8/2002	WO	2009/009013 A2	1/2009
WO	02/059574 A1	8/2002	WO	2009/055030	4/2009
WO	02/067995 A1	9/2002	WO	2009/055740	4/2009
WO	02/085281	10/2002	WO	2009/055742	4/2009
WO	02/098348	12/2002	WO	2009/047281	12/2009
WO	02/102444	12/2002	WO	2010/080964	7/2010
WO	03/000202	1/2003	WO	2010/102148	9/2010
WO	03/005547	7/2003	WO	2010/105094 A1	9/2010
WO	03/057170	7/2003	WO	2010/125103 A1	11/2010
WO	03/086345	10/2003	WO	2010/144789	12/2010
WO	03/094951	11/2003	WO	2011/163272	12/2011
WO	2004/012672	2/2004	WO	2012/135765	10/2012
			WO	2013/063160 A1	5/2013

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Non-covalent interactions from UCDavis ChemWiki, pp. 1-5.

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

Accessed by Examiner on Jul. 23, 2013 and cited in Office Action issued on Jul. 26, 2013 in U.S. Appl. No. 12/830,557.

Drug Delivery, Easing the drug delivery route, Jun. 2006, Pharmaceutical & Medical Packaging News, Canon Communications.

Edwards et al., Recent advances in pulmonary drug delivery using large, porous inhaled particles. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, pp. 379-385 (1998).

Exubera indications, dosage, storage, stability. [http://www.rxlist.com/cgi/generic4/exubera\\_ids.htm](http://www.rxlist.com/cgi/generic4/exubera_ids.htm).

Exubera package insert, p. 1.

Ferrin et al, Pulmonary retention of ultrafine and fine particles in rats. *Am. J. Respir. Cell Mol. Biol.*, pp. 535-542 (1992).

Insulin inhalation NN 1998, Drugs R & D, 2004, pp. 46-49, Adis Data Information BV.

Klinger et al., Insulin-micro and nanoparticles for pulmonary delivery. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, vol. 377, pp. 173-179 (2009).

Nemmar et al., Passage of inhaled particles into the blood circulation in humans. *Circulation* pp. 411-414 (2002).

Newman, Principles of metered-dose inhaler design. *Respiratory Care*, vol. 50, No. 9, pp. 1177-1190 (2005).

Next Generation Inhaler Nears Market, Manufacturing Chemist, Cambridge Consultants, Polygon Media Ltd. (2006).

Oberdorster et al., Correlation between particle size, in vivo particle persistence, and lung injury. *Environ Health Perspect* 102 Suppl 5, pp. 173-179 (1994).

Oberdorster et al., Pulmonary effects of inhaled ultrafine particles. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*, vol. 74, pp. 1-8 (2001).

O'Neill, Air pollution and inflammation in type 2 diabetes: a mechanism for susceptibility. *Occup Environ Med.* vol. 64, pp. 373-379 (2007).

Pesic, Inhaler delivers more drug to the deep lung, says Cambridge Consultants. in-Pharma Technologist.com, <http://www.in-pharmatechnologist.com/content/view/print/344335>, Dec. 1, 2010.

Pfütznern, Technosphere/Insulin—A new approach for effective delivery of human insulin via the pulmonary route. *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, vol. 4, No. 5, pp. 589-594 (2002).

Roumeliotis, New inhaler launched with a bag, in-Pharma Technologist.com, Decision News Media SAS (2006).

Shimada et al. Translocation pathway of the intratracheally instilled ultrafine particles from the lung into the blood circulation in the mouse. *Toxicologic Pathology* pp. 949-957 (2006).

Svartengren et al., Added External Resistance Reduces Oropharyngeal Deposition and Increases Lung Deposition of Aerosol Particles in Asthmatics. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*, vol. 152, pp. 32-27, 1995.

Telko et al., Dry Powder Inhaler Formulation. *Respiratory Care*, Sep. 2005, vol. 50, No. 9, pp. 1209-1227.

Vaczek, Accelerating drug delivery firms exploring new drug-delivery routes and devices intently awaiting the commercial launch of Exubera. *Pharmaceutical & Medical Packaging News*, vol. 14, No. 6 (2006).

CN Office Action cited in application No. 200880122670.3 mailed on Nov. 23, 2011.

International Search Report for PCT/US2010/038287.

"An inhaled insulin formulation (Technosphere Insulin) effectively improves glycaemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus." *Inpharma Weekly*, vol. 1522, Jan. 28, 2006, p. 8.

Basu A et al. "Effects of a change in the pattern of insulin delivery on carbohydrate tolerance in diabetic and nondiabetic humans in the presence of differing degrees of insulin resistance." *J Clin Invest* 97:2351-2361, 1996.

Bayés M et al. "Gateways to clinical trials" *Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol* 24:431-455, 2002.

Belmin J et al. "Novel drug delivery systems for insulin. Clinical potential for use in the elderly." *Drugs Aging* 20:303-12, 2003.

Boss AH et al. "Insulin bio-effect is limited by speed of absorption and elimination: similarities between an inhaled insulin formulation that mimics first-phase kinetics and i.v. insulin." *Diabetologia* 47:A314, 2004.

Boss AH et al. "Markedly reduced post prandial glucose excursions through inhaled Technosphere®/Insulin in comparison to SC injected regular insulin in subjects with type 2 diabetes." 1st Annual Meeting of the European Association for the Study of Diabetes, Sep. 2005, abstract 816.

Boss AH et al. "Does kinetics matter? Physiological consequences of the ability of Technosphere®/Insulin inhalation to mimic first phase insulin release." Presented at the 5th Annual Meeting of the Diabetes Technology Society, Nov. 2005, abstract A14.

Boss AH et al. "Mimicry of the early phase insulin response in humans with rapidly available inhaled insulin accelerates post prandial glucose disposal compared to slower bioavailable insulin." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 65th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2005, abstract 1373-P.

Boss AH et al. "Inhaled Technosphere®/Insulin: Glucose elimination at the right time?" Poster presented at the American Diabetes Association 65th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2005, abstract 443-P.

Boss AH et al. "The variability and time-action profile of inhaled Technosphere®/Insulin compares favorably to that of subcutaneous human regular insulin." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 65th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2005, abstract 358-OR.

Brownlee M et al. "Glycemic variability: a hemoglobin A1c-independent risk factor for diabetic complications." *JAMA* 295:1707-8, 2006.

Caumo et al. "First-phase insulin secretion: does it exist in real life Considerations on shape and function." *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 287:E371-E385, 2004.

Cefalu "Concept, strategies and feasibility of noninvasive insulin delivery." *Diabetes Care* 27:239-246, 2004.

Cerasi et al. Decreased sensitivity of the pancreatic beta cells to glucose in prediabetic and diabetic subjects. A glucose dose-response study. *Diabetes* 21(4):224-34, 1972.

Cernea et al. "Dose-response relationship of oral insulin spray in healthy subjects." *Diabetes Care* 28:1353-1357, 2005.

Cheatham et al. "Desirable dynamics and performance of inhaled insulin compared to subcutaneous insulin given at mealtime in type 2 diabetes: A report from the Technosphere®/Insulin study group." *Diabetes Tech Ther* 6:234-235, 2004.

Cheatham et al. "A novel pulmonary insulin formulation replicates first phase insulin release and reduces s-proinsulin levels." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 64th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2004, abstract 457-P.

Warren et al. "Postprandial versus prandial dosing of biphasic insulin aspart in elderly type 2 diabetes patients." *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 66:23-29, 2004.

White JR et al. "Inhaled insulin: an overview." *Clinical Diabetes* 19:13-16, 2001.

Kaur et al., A delineation of diketopiperazine self-assembly processes: understanding the molecular events involved in Ne-(Fumaroyl) diketopiperazine of L-Lys (FDKP) Interactions. *Molecular Pharmaceutics*, vol. 5, No. 2, pp. 294-315 (2008).

English translation of Chinese Office Action for Chinese Patent application No. 201080026117.7.

Cheatham et al. "Prandial Technosphere®/Insulin inhalation provides significantly better control of meal-related glucose excursions than prandial subcutaneous insulin." Presented at the Diabetes Technology Society meeting, Oct. 2004.

Del Prato "Unlocking the opportunity of tight glycaemic control. Far from goal!" *Diabetes Obesity Metabolism* 7:S1-S4, 2005.

Edelman SV Type II diabetes mellitus. *Adv Int Med* 43:449-500, 1998.

Gates BJ "Update on advances in alternative insulin therapy." *Advances in Pharmacy* 1:159-168, 2003.

Grant et al "Both insulin sensitivity and maximal glucose elimination rate are reduced in type 2 diabetes." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 65th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2005, abstract 2202-PO.

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

- Grant et al. "The distribution of 14C-labeled particles following intra-tracheal liquid installation in the Sprague-Dawley rat." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 64th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2004, abstract 461-P.
- Gupta et al. Contemporary approaches in aerosolized drug delivery to the lung. *J Controlled Release* 17:129-148, 1991.
- Harsch IA "Inhaled Insulins: Their potential in the treatment of diabetes mellitus." *Treat Endocrinol* 4:131-138, 2005.
- Heinemann, L., et al., "Current status of the development of inhaled insulin" *Br. Diabetes Vasc Dis* 4:295-301, 2004.
- Hirsch IB "Insulin analogues." *N Engl J Med* 352:174-83, 2005.
- Kapitza et al. "Dose-response characteristics for a new pulmonary insulin formulation and inhaler." Presented at the 35th Annual Meeting of the EASD, Sep. 2000, abstract OP29 184.
- Kohler et al. Non-radioactive approach for measuring lung permeability: inhalation of insulin. *Atemw Lungenkrkh* 13:230-232, 1987.
- Krueger et al. "Toxicological profile of pulmonary drug delivery agent." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 64th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2004, abstract 465-P.
- Laureano et al. "Rapid absorption and elimination of insulin from the lung following pulmonary administration of Technosphere®/Insulin: A pharmacokinetic study in a rat model." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 65th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2005, abstract 445-P.
- Leahy et al. Beta-cell dysfunction in type II diabetes mellitus. *Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes* 2:300-306, 1995.
- Leiner et al. "The pharmacokinetic profile of insulin administered by inhalation in the rat." *Diabetes* 53 Supplement, Jun. 2004, A111.
- Leiner et al. "Particles facilitate the absorption of insulin in a primary cell culture model of alveolar epithelium without evidence of cytotoxicity." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 64th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2004, abstract 467-P.
- Lian et al. A self-complementary self-assembling microsphere system: application for intravenous delivery of the antiepileptic and neuroprotectant compound felbanate. *J Pharm Sci* 89:867-875, 2000.
- Lindner et al. "Increase in serum insulin levels is correlated with lung distribution after pulmonary delivery of Technosphere/Insulin." *Diabetologia* 46:A277, 2003.
- Mandal "Inhaled insulin for diabetes mellitus." *Am J Health Sys Pharm* 62:1359-64, 2005.
- Mann "Pulmonary insulin—the future of prandial insulin therapy." Presented at the 5th Annual Meeting of the Diabetes Technology Society, Nov. 2005, abstract A94.
- Monnier et al. "Activation of oxidative stress by acute glucose fluctuations compared with sustained chronic hyperglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes." *JAMA* 295:1681-7, 2006.
- Nathan et al. "Intensive diabetes treatment and cardiovascular disease in patients with type 1 diabetes." *N Engl J Med* 353:2643-53, 2005.
- Owens et al. "Alternative routes of insulin delivery." *Diabetic Medicine* 20:886-898, 2003.
- Patton et al. "Clinical pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of inhaled insulin." *Clin Pharmacokinet* 43:781-801, 2004.
- Peyrot et al. "Resistance to insulin therapy among patients and providers." *Diabetes Care* 28:2673-2679, 2005.
- Pfeiffer et al. Insulin secretion in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Med* 70:579-88, 1981.
- Pfützner A. et al. "Influence of small dose i.v., s.c. and pulmonary insulin treatment on prandial glucose control in patients with Type 2 diabetes." 37th Annual Meeting of the EASD, Sep. 9-13, 2001, abstract 812.
- Pfützner A et al. "Variability of insulin absorption after subcutaneous and pulmonary application in patients with type 2 diabetes." *Diabetes* 51 Supplement, Jun. 2002, A47-48.
- Pfützner A et al. Pilot study with Technosphere/PTH(1-34)—a new approach for effective pulmonary delivery of parathyroid hormone (1-34). *Horm Metab Res* 35:319-323, 2003.
- Pfützner A et al. "Lung distribution of radiolabeled Technosphere™/Insulin." *Diabetes* 52 Supplement, Jun. 2003, A107.
- Katchalski, Ephraim, "Synthesis of Lysine Anhydride", *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, vol. 68, 1946, pp. 879-880.
- Kopple, Kenneth D., "A Convenient Synthesis of 2,5-Piperazinediones", *J. Org. Chem.*, vol. 33, No. 2, 1968, pp. 862-864.
- Pfützner et al. "Pulmonary Insulin Delivery by Means of the Technosphere Drug Carrier Mechanism." *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2:1097-1106, 2005.
- Pfützner et al. "Inhaled Technosphere/Insulin Shows a Low Variability in Metabolic Action in Type 2 Diabetic Patients." *Diabetes* 49 Supplement, May 2000, A121.
- Polonsky et al. "Abnormal Patterns of Insulin Secretion in Non-insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus." *N Eng J Med* 318:1231-39, 1988.
- Raskin et al. "Continuous Subcutaneous Insulin Infusion and Multiple Daily Injection Therapy are Equally Effective in Type 2 Diabetes." *Diabetes Care* 26:2598-2603, 2003.
- Rave et al. "Results of a Dose-Response Study with a New Pulmonary Insulin Formulation and Inhaler." *Diabetes* 49, Supplement, May 2000, A75.
- Raz et al. "Pharmacodynamics and Pharmacokinetics of Dose Ranging Effects of Oral Versus S.S. Regular Insulin in Type 1 Diabetic Subjects." Fourth Annual Diabetes Technology Meeting, Philadelphia, 2004.
- Rhodes et al. "Technosphere: Microspherical Particles from Substituted Diketopiperazines for Use in Oral Drug Delivery." 208th ACS National Meeting, Aug. 1994.
- Rosenstock et al. "Inhaled Insulin Improves Glycemic Control when Substituted for or Added to Oral Combination Therapy in Type 2 Diabetes." *Ann Intern Med* 143:549-558, 2005.
- Rousseau et al. "Drug delivery by fumaryl diketopiperazine particles: evidence for passive transport." Presented at the American Diabetes Association 64th Scientific Sessions, Jun. 2004, abstract 484-P.
- Sakagami et al. "Respirable microspheres for inhalation: the potential of manipulating pulmonary disposition for improved therapeutic efficacy." *Clin Pharmacokinet* 44:263-77, 2005.
- Skyler JS et al. "Use of inhaled insulin in a basal/bolus insulin regimen in type 1 diabetic subjects." *Diabetes Care* 28:1630-1635, 2005.
- Steiner et al. "Technosphere®, a novel drug delivery system for oral administration of calcitonin." *Pharmaceutical Res* 11:S299, 1994.
- Steiner et al. "A novel glucagon delivery system for the management of hyperinsulinemia." *Diabetes* 49 Supplement, May 2000, A368.
- Steiner et al. "Bioavailability and pharmacokinetic properties of inhaled dry powder Technosphere®/Insulin." *Diabetes* 49 Supplement, May 2000, A126.
- Steiner et al. Technosphere(TM)/Insulin—proof of concept study with a new insulin formulation for pulmonary delivery. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 110:17-21, 2002.
- Taylor et al. "Aerosols for macromolecule delivery. Design challenges and solutions." *Am J Drug Deliv* 2:143-155, 2004.
- File History of Related U.S. Appl. No. 14/092,810, filed Nov. 27, 2013.
- File History of Related U.S. Appl. No. 13/941,365, filed Jul. 12, 2013.
- File History of Related U.S. Appl. No. 13/921,104, filed Jun. 18, 2013.
- Supplemental Response filed on Feb. 21, 2014 in supplemental examination U.S. Appl. No. 96/000,027.
- Transaction History Page of Related U.S. Appl. No. 13/921,104, filed Jun. 18, 2013 (transaction history page printed on May 21, 2014).
- Supplemental Response filed on May 15, 2014 in related U.S. Appl. No. 13/921,104, filed Jun. 18, 2013.
- Transaction History Page of Related Supplemental Examination U.S. Appl. No. 96/000,027, filed Aug. 30, 2013 (transaction history page printed on May 21, 2014).
- Transaction History page viewed on Jun. 20, 2014 for U.S. Appl. No. 13/921,104, filed Jun. 18, 2013.
- Transaction History page viewed on Jun. 20, 2014 for Supplemental Examination U.S. Appl. No. 96/000,027, filed Aug. 30, 2013.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Nathan DM et al. "Management of hyperglycemia in Type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy." *Diabetes Care* 29:1963, 2006.
- Nathan DM et al. "Management of hyperglycemia in Type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy." *Diabetes Care* 31:173, 2008.
- Nathan DM et al. "Management of hyperglycemia in Type 2 diabetes: a consensus algorithm for the initiation and adjustment of therapy." *Diabetes Care* 32:193, 2009.
- Nathan, "Initial Management of Glycemia in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus" *N. Eng. J. Med.*, 2002, 347, 1342-9.
- Nauck "Is glucagon-like peptide 1 an incretin hormone?" *Diabetologia* 42:373, 1999.
- Nauck et al. "Glucagon-like peptide 1 inhibition of gastric emptying outweighs its insulinotropic effects in healthy humans." *Am J Physiol* 273 (Endocrinol Metab 36):E981, 1997.
- Nauck et al. "Reduced incretin effect in type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes." *Diabetologia* 29:46, 1986.
- Nauck et al., Effects of glucagon-like peptide 1 on counterregulatory hormone responses, cognitive functions, and insulin secretion during hyperinsulinemic, stepped hypoglycemic clamp experiments in healthy volunteers. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.*, 87:1239-1246, 2002.
- Nauck et al., Effects of subcutaneous glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1 [7-36 amide]) in patients with NIDDM. *Diabetologia*, 39:1546-1553, 1996.
- Nauck et al., Normalization of fasting hyperglycemia by exogenous GLP-1 (7-36 amide) in type 2 diabetic patients. *Diabetologia*, 36:741-744, 1993.
- Onoue et al., Dry powder inhalation systems for pulmonary delivery of therapeutic peptides and proteins. *Expert Opin. Ther. Patents* 18(4):429-442 (2008).
- NHS Clinical Guidelines, "Type 1 diabetes diagnosis and management of type 1 diabetes in children and young people", National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health Commissioned by the National Institute for Clinical Excellence, Sep. 2004, p. 1-217.
- Non-covalent interactions from UC Davis ChemWiki, pp. 1-5. Accessed by Examiner on Jul. 23, 2013 and related case U.S. Appl. No. 12/830,557.
- Nystrom et al. "Effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 on endothelial function in type 2 diabetic patients with stable coronary artery disease." *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 287:E1209, 2004.
- Okumura et al., Intratracheal delivery of insulin: absorption from solution and aerosol by rat lung. *Int. J. Pharmaceuticals* 88: 63-73 (1992).
- Orgsoltab et al., Division of Organic Chemistry. Ohio Northern University. Nov. 24, 2009. Available from: <[http://www2.onu.edu/~b-meyers/organic\\_solvents.html](http://www2.onu.edu/~b-meyers/organic_solvents.html)>.
- Oshima et al. "Comparison of half-disappearance times, distribution volumes and metabolic clearance rates of exogenous glucagon-like peptide 1 and glucagon in rats." *Regulatory Peptides* 21:85, 1988.
- Ostrovsky, Gene. Mannkind Inhalation Insulin Going to FDA to Seek Approval [on-line]. *MedGadget.com*, posted on Mar. 17, 2009, Retrieved from the Internet: <[URL:http://medgadget.com/2009/03mannkind\\_inhalation\\_insulin\\_going\\_to\\_fda\\_to\\_seek\\_approval.html](http://medgadget.com/2009/03mannkind_inhalation_insulin_going_to_fda_to_seek_approval.html)>.
- Owens et al. "Inhaled human insulin." *Nature Reviews, Drug Discovery*, vol. 5, No. 5, pp. 371-372, May 2006.
- Ozyazgan et al. "Effect of glucagon-like peptide-1(7-36) and exendin-4 on the vascular reactivity in streptozotocin/nicotinamide-induced diabetic rats." *Pharmacology* 74:119, 2005.
- Pacini P, Marino MT. Evaluation of endogenous and exogenous components to peripheral insulin concentration during administration of inhaled insulin. ADA 2010; Abstract 2094-PO.
- Patton "Mechanisms of macromolecule absorption by the lungs." *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews* 19:3, 1996.
- Patton "Unlocking the opportunity of tight glycaemic control. Innovative delivery of insulin via the lung." *Diabetes Obesity and Metabolism* 7:S5, 2005.
- Patton & Platz, Routes of Delivery: Case studies: pulmonary delivery of peptides and proteins for systemic action. *Adv. Drug. Del. Rev.* 8: 179-196 (1992).
- Patton et al. "The lungs as a portal of entry for systemic drug delivery." *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 1:338, 2004.
- Patton et al., "Inhaled Insulin", *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews*, 35, Feb. 1999, p. 235-247.
- Pearson et al., Systematically Initiating Insulin, supplemental to vol. 32, No. 1, 19S-28S, 2006.
- Perera et al. "Absorption and Metabolic Effect of Inhaled Insulin." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 25, No. 12, Dec. 2002, p. 2276-2281.
- Petkiewicz et al., "Hypoglycemic effect of liposome-entrapped insulin administered by various routes into normal rats", *Pol. J. Pharmacol. Pharm.* 41:299-304 (1989).
- Petrucci R, Amin N, Lovetin P. et al. Pulmonary function tests remain similar in patients who received Technosphere® insulin and in patients currently receiving standard antidiabetic therapy. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Peyrot M, Rubin RR, Otterbach K. Effect of Technosphere® inhaled insulin on treatment satisfaction, glycemic control and quality of life. *Diabetes* 2006; 55:Abstract 423-P.
- Pezron et al., Insulin aggregation and asymmetric transport across human bronchial epithelial cell monolayers (Calu-3). *J. Pharmaceutical Sci.* 91: 1135-1146 (2002).
- Bosquillon et al., Pulmonary delivery of growth hormone using dry powders and visualization of its local fate in rates. *Journal of Controlled Release* 96: 233-244 (2004).
- ACTOS Product Insert. Aug. 2008.
- Adjusting Mealtime Insulin Doses. BD Diabetes. <http://www.bd.com/diabetes/page.aspx?cat=7001&id=7280> (2014).
- Ahren "GLP-1 and extra-islet effects." *Horm. Med Res* 36:842, 2004.
- Ahren B et al. "Characterization of GLP-1 effects on b-cell function after meal ingestion in humans." *Diabetes Care* 26:2860, 2003.
- Ahren B., Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1): a gut hormone of potential interest in the treatment of diabetes. *BioEssays*, V. 20, pp. 642-651 (1998).
- Akerlund et al., Diketopiperazine-based polymers from common acids. *Journal of Applied Polymer Science* (2000), 78(12), 2213-2218.
- Alabraba et al. *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*. Jul. 2009, 11(7): 427-430.
- Alcohols limited. Alcohol speciality solvents—Go green! Jul. 24, 2010. Available from: <[http://web.archive.org/web/20100724193725/http://www.alcohols.co.uk/speciality\\_solvents.php](http://web.archive.org/web/20100724193725/http://www.alcohols.co.uk/speciality_solvents.php)>.
- Aljada et al. "Insulin inhibits the pro-inflammatory transcription factor early growth response gene-1 (Egr)-1 expression in mononuclear cells (MNC) and reduces plasma tissue factor (TF) and plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1) concentrations." *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, vol. 87, No. 3, p. 1419-1422, 2002.
- Al-Showair et al., Can all patients with COPD use the correct inhalation flow with all inhalers and does training help? *Respiratory Medicine*, vol. 101, No. 11, p. 2395-2401 (2007).
- American Diabetes Association, "Standards of medical care in diabetes—2009", *Diabetes Care*, Jan. 2009, 32 Suppl 1: S13-61.
- Amin N, Boss AH, Petrucci R, et al. Pulmonary functions (over 2 years) in diabetic subjects treated with AFRESA® or usual antidiabetic treatment ADA 2009; Poster 570.
- Amin N, et al. Long-term sustained safety and efficacy of continued use of Technosphere insulin in subjects with type 2 diabetes. Abstract—Oral Presentation 215, 48th EASD Annual Meeting, Sep. 29-Oct. 2, 2009, Vienna Austria.
- Amin N, Marino MT, Cassidy JP, et al. Acute pulmonary effects of Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder administered using a Gen2B inhaler compared to MedTone® C inhaler. *Diabetes Technology Meeting* 2010; poster.
- Amin N, Phillips M, Boss AH, et al. Pulmonary functions (over 2 years) in diabetic patients treated with Technosphere® insulin (TI) or usual antidiabetic treatment. Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes. 2010; Poster 290.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Angelo et al., Technosphere Insulin: Defining the Role of Technosphere Particles at the Cellular Level. *J. Diabetes Sci. Technol.*, vol. 3, Issue 3, pp. 545-554 (2009).

Angelo et al. Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder: Defining the mechanism of action. ADA 2008; 57: Poster 428-P.

Antosiewicz et al., Prediction of pH-dependent properties of proteins. *J. Mol. Biol.*, 238:415-436 (1994).

Arakawa et al., Preferential interactions determine protein solubility in three-component solutions: the MgCl<sub>2</sub> system. *Biochemistry*, 29:1914-1923 (1990).

Ashwell et al. "Twice-daily compared with once-daily insulin glargine in people with Type 1 diabetes using meal-time insulin aspart." 2006 Diabetes UK, *Diabetic Medicine*, 23, 879-886.

Ashwell et al., "Optimal timing of injection of once-daily insulin glargine in people with Type 1 diabetes using insulin lispro at meal-times" 2005 Diabetes UK, *Diabetic Medicine*, 23, 46-52.

Atherton, F. et al. "Synthesis of 2(R)-A3(S)-Acylamino-2-Oxo-1-Azetidinyl-oxo U-Acetic Acids." *Tetrahedron*, vol. 40, No. 6, Jan. 1, 1984, pp. 1039-1046.

AVANDIA Product Insert, Oct. 2008.

Baggio et al. "A recombinant human glucagon-like peptide (GLP)-1-Albumin Protein (Albugon) mimics peptidergic activation of GLP-1 receptor-dependent pathways coupled with satiety, gastrointestinal motility, and glucose homeostasis." *Diabetes* 53:2492, 2004.

Baggio et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1, but not glucose-dependent insulinotropic peptide, regulates fasting glycemia and nonenteral glucose clearance in mice." *Endocrinology* 141:3703, 2000.

Baggio et al. "Harnessing the therapeutic potential of glucagon-like peptide-1." *Treat Endocrinol* 1:117, 2002.

Drucker et al., Minireview: The glucagon-like peptides. *Endocrinology*, vol. 142, No. 2, pp. 521-527 (2001).

Balkan B et al. "Portal GLP-1 administration in rats augments the insulin response to glucose via neuronal mechanisms." *Am J. Physiol Regulatory Integrative Comp Physiol* 279:R1449, 2000.

Barnett AH et al. "An open, randomized, parallel-group study to compare the efficacy and safety profile of inhaled human insulin (Exubera) with glibenclamide as adjunctive therapy in patients with Type 2 diabetes poorly controlled on metformin." *Diabetes Care* 29(8):1818-1825, 2006.

Barnett et al., An open, randomized, parallel-group study to compare the efficacy and safety profile of inhaled human insulin (Exubera) with metformin as adjunctive therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes poorly controlled on a sulfonylurea. *Diabetes Care*, 29(6): 1282-1287 (2006).

Barragan et al. "Changes in arterial blood pressure and heart rate induced by glucagon-like peptide-1-(7-36) amide in rats." *Am J. Physiol* 266 (Endocrinol Metab 29):E459, 1994.

Bauer et al., "Assessment of beta-adrenergic receptor blockade after isoproterenol, a 5-HT<sub>1</sub>-receptor active compound, in healthy volunteer", *Clin. Pharmacol Ther* 53:76-83 (1993).

Bauer et al., "Pharmacodynamic effects of inhaled dry powder formulations of fenterol and colforsin in asthma", *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 53:76-83, 1993.

Baughman R, Cassidy J, Amin N, et al. A phase I, open-label study of the effect of albuterol or fluticasone on the pharmacokinetics of inhaled Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder in healthy subjects. ADA 2010; Poster 528.

Baughman R, Cassidy J, Levy B, et al. Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder pharmacokinetics unchanged in subjects who smoke. *Diabetes* 2008; 57: A128.

Baughman R, Haworth P, Litwin J, et al. No cardiac effects found with therapeutic and supratherapeutic doses of Technosphere® inhalation powder: results from a thorough QTc clinical study. ADA 2011. Poster 933-P.

Baughman, RA, Evans, SH, Boss, AH, et al. Technosphere insulin does not affect pulmonary function in a 6 month study of patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetologia* 2006;49:177-118.

Beers et al., Section 2—Chapter 13—Diabetes Mellitus, *The Merck Manual of Diagnosis and Therapy*, Merck Research Laboratories, pp. 165-177 (1999).

Behme et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 improved glycemic control in type 1 diabetes." *BMC Endocrine Disorders* 3:3, 2003.

Bellary et al. "Inhaled insulin: new technology, new possibilities." *Int J Clin Pract* 60:728, 2006.

Benita, Characterization of Drug-Loaded Poly(D,L-lactide) Microspheres. *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 73: 1721-1724 (1984).

Benito E et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1-(7-36) amide increases pulmonary surfactant secretion through a cyclic adenosine 3',5'-monophosphate-dependent protein kinase mechanism in rat type II pneumocytes." *Endocrinology* 139:2363, 1998.

Bensch et al., Absorption of intact protein molecules across the pulmonary air-tissue barrier, *Science* 156: 1204-1206 (1967).

Berge et al., "Pharmaceutical Salts", *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, Review Article, 66(1):1-19 (1977).

Bergental R, Kapsner P, Rendell M, et al., Comparative efficacy and safety of AFRESA® and a rapid-acting analog both given with glargine in subjects with T1 DM in a 52-week study ADA 2009; Poster 479.

Bergeron et al. "Macromolecular Self-Assembly of Diketopiperazine Tetrapeptides." *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 116, 8479-8484, 1994.

Bilheimer DW, Ren H, Boss AH. Analysis of cardiovascular adverse events in patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes enrolled in selected therapeutic trials in the phase 2/3 Technosphere® insulin development program. ADA 2011. Poster 922-P.

Billings CC, Smutney CC, Howard CP, et al. Handleability and characterization of inhalation profiles using the Gen2 delivery system in a pediatric population. *Diabetes Technology Meeting* 2010; poster.

Biodel's Intellectual Property position strengthened for ultra-rapid-acting insulin programs by notice of intent to grant from European Patent Office. *Newswire Feed*, published May 2, 2012.

Blazquez E et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36) amide as a novel neuropeptide." *Mol Neurobiol* 18:157, 1998.

Bloomgarden "Gut-derived incretin hormones and new therapeutic approaches." *Diabetes Care* 27:2554, 2004.

Boer et al., Design and application of a new modular adapter for laser diffraction characterization of inhalation aerosols. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics* 249, pp. 233-245 (2002).

Boer et al., Inhalation characteristics and their effects on in vitro drug delivery from dry powder inhalers. Part 1. Inhalation characteristics, work of breathing and volunteers' preference in dependence of the inhaler resistance. *Int. J. Pharm.* 130 (1996) 231-244.

Bojanowska "Physiology and pathophysiology of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1): the role of GLP-1 in the pathogenesis of diabetes mellitus, obesity and stress." *Med Sci Monit* 11:RA271, 2005.

Bonner-Weir S et al. "New sources of pancreatic beta-cells." *Nat Biotechnol* 23:857-61, 2005.

Definition of matrix from <http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/matrix>, retrieved by the Examiner on Mar. 5, 2015 and cited in Office Action issued on Mar. 26, 2015 in U.S. Appl. No. 12/471,260.

Boss et al. "Prandial Insulin: Is Inhaled Enough?" *Drug Development Research* 69(3):138-142 (2008).

Boss AH, Petrucci R, Lorber D. Coverage of prandial insulin requirements by means of an ultra-rapid-acting inhaled insulin. *Journal of diabetes science and technology* 2012;6:773-779.

Boss AH, Baughman RA, Evans SH, et al. A 3 month comparison in type 1 diabetes of inhaled Technosphere®/Insulin (TI) to Sc administered rapid-acting insulin analogue (RAA) as prandial insulin in a basal/prandial regimen. *Diabetes* 2006; 55:A97.

Boss AH, Evans SH, Firsov I, et al. Technosphere® insulin as effective as sc rapid acting insulin analogue in providing glycemic control in a 6-month study of patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Technology Meeting* 2006; poster.

Boss AH, Evans, SH, Ren, H, et al. Superior post prandial glucose control in patients with type 1 diabetes when using prandial technosphere insulin compared to NovoLog. *Diabetologia* 2006; Abstract 181.

Boss AH, Marino MT, Cassidy JP, et al. C-peptide correction method to determine exogenous insulin levels in pharmacokinetic studies using Technosphere® insulin. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

- Boss AH, Raskin P, Philips M, et al. Glycosylated hemoglobin and hypoglycaemia in patients with Type 2 diabetes mellitus: Technosphere® insulin and usual antihyperglycaemic regimen vs usual antihyperglycaemic regimen. *Diabetologia* 2010;53(suppl 1).
- Brandt D, Boss AH. The next generation insulin therapy. *OndrugDelivery* 2006 (published online).
- Brange et al., "Insulin Structure and Stability", *Pharm Biotechnol*, 5:315-50 (1993).
- Bray "Exanatide" *Am J Health-Sys Pharm* 63:411, 2006.
- Extended European Search report for European Application 14187552.6 mailed on Mar. 2, 2015.
- Bruce, D.G., et al. "Physiological importance of deficiency of early prandial insulin secretion in non-insulin-dependent diabetes." *Diabetes* 37:736-44, 1988.
- Bullock BP et al. "Tissue distribution of messenger ribonucleic acid encoding the rat glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor." *Endocrinology* 137:2968, 1996.
- Burcelin et al. "Encapsulated, genetically engineered cells, secreting glucagon-like peptide-1 for the treatment of non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus." *Ann N Y Acad Sci*. Jun. 18, 1999;875:277-85.
- Calles-Escandon, J. and Robbins, D.C. "Loss of early phase insulin release in humans impairs glucose tolerance and blunts thermic effect of glucose." *Diabetes* 36:1167-72, 1987.
- Camilleri, Clinical Practice: Diabetic Gastroparesis. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 356: 820-829 (2007).
- Campos et al. "Divergent tissue-specific and developmental expression of receptors for glucagon and glucagon-like peptide-1 in the mouse." *Endocrinology* 134:2156, 1994.
- Cassidy J P, Amin N, Marino M, et al. Insulin lung deposition and clearance following Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder administration. *Pharmaceutical Research* 2011; 28:2157-2164.
- Cassidy J, Amin N, Baughman R, et al. Insulin kinetics following Technosphere® insulin inhalation powder administration unchanged in albuterol-treated asthmatics. *ADA 2010*; Poster 522.
- Cassidy J, Baughman RA, Tonelli G, et al. Use of rapid acting insulin analog as the baseline infusion during glucose clamping improves pharmacokinetic evaluation. *ADA 2007*; 56: Abstract 602-P.
- Cassidy JP, Baughman RA, Schwartz SL, et al. AFRESA® (Technosphere® insulin) dosage strengths are interchangeable *ADA 2009*; Poster 433.
- Cassidy JP, Marino MT, Amin N, et al. Lung deposition and absorption of insulin from AFRESA® (Technosphere® insulin) *ADA 2009*; Poster 425.
- Cassidy JP, Potocka E, Baughman RA, et al. Pharmacokinetic characterization of the Technosphere® inhalation platform *Diabetes Technology Meeting 2009*, poster.
- Ely et al., Effervescent dry powder for respiratory drug delivery. *European Journal of Pharmaceutics and Biopharmaceutics* 65: 346-353 (2007).
- European Search report for European Application 14192154.4 mailed on Mar. 19, 2015.
- Cefalu "Novel routes of insulin delivery for patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes." *Ann Med* 33:579-586, 2001.
- Cefalu et al., Inhaled human insulin treatment in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Ann. Int. Med.*, 2001, 134(3): 203-207.
- Ceglia et al. "Meta-analysis: efficacy and safety of inhaled insulin therapy in adults with diabetes mellitus." *Ann Intern Med* 145:665, 2006.
- Definition of medicament from <http://medical-dictionary.thefreedictionary.com/medicament>, retrieved by the Examiner on Mar. 20, 2015 and cited in Office Action issued on Mar. 26, 2015 in U.S. Appl. No. 13/942,482.
- Diabetes Frontier*, vol. 10, No. 5, p. 647-657 (1999) (full Japanese article with translated English portion provided in separate attachment, portion translated in English is the bottom of p. 655 and the left column of p. 656).
- Cernea et al. "Noninjectable Methods of Insulin Administration." *Drugs of Today* 2006, 42 (6): 405-424.
- Chan et al., "Pharmacological Management of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Rationale for Rational Use of Insulin", *Mayo Clin Proc*, 2003, 78, 459-466.
- Chase et al., "Redefining the clinical remission period in children with type 1 diabetes", *Pediatric Diabetes*, 2004, 5, 16-19.
- Chan et al., "Pharmacological Management of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus: Rationale for Use of Insulin", *Mayo Clin Proc*, 2003, 78, 459-467.
- Cho et al., Targeting the glucagon receptor family for diabetes and obesity therapy. *Pharmacology & Therapeutics* 135: 247-278 (2012).
- Gillespie et al., Using carbohydrate counting in diabetes clinical practice. *Journal of the American Diabetic Association*, vol. 98, No. 8, p. 897-905 (1998).
- Chelikani et al., Intravenous infusion of glucagon-like peptide-1 potently inhibits food intake, sham feeding, and gastric emptying in rats. *Am J Physiol. Regul. Integr. Comp. Physiol.*, 288(6):R1695-706, 2005.
- Chemical Abstracts*, vol. No. 114(22), Abstract No. 214519x (1990).
- Chemicaland21.com. Solvents*. Dec. 12, 2008. Available from: <<http://web.archive.org/web/20081212035748/http://www.chemicalland21.com/info/SOLVENTS.htm>>.
- Chow et al., Particle Engineering for Pulmonary Drug Delivery. *Pharmaceutical Research*, vol. 24, No. 3, pp. 411-437 (2007).
- Clee et al. *Nature Genetics* 38:688-693, 2006.
- Cobble "Initiating and Intensifying Insulin Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes: Why, When, and How." *Am J Ther. Jan. 8*, 2009.
- Coffey et al. "Valuing health-related quality of life in diabetes." *Diabetes Care* 25:2238, 2002.
- Colagiuri et al., Are lower fasting plasma glucose levels at diagnosis of type 2 diabetes associated with improved outcomes? *Diabetes Care*, vol. 25, pp. 1410-1417 (2002).
- Combettes and Kargar, C, Newly Approved and Promising Antidiabetic Agents. *Therapie*, 2007, Jul.-Aug.: 62 (4): 293-310.
- Coors et al., Polysorbate 80 in medical products and nonimmunologic anaphylactoid reactions. *Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.*, 95(6): 593-599 (2005).
- Costello et al., "Zinc inhibition of mitochondrial aconitase and its importance in citrate metabolism in prostate epithelial cells", *Journ. Biol. Chem.* 272(46):28875-28881 (1997).
- Cricket TM Single-Use Inhalers [on-line]. Mannkind Technologies Website, posted in 2011, [retrieved on Jul. 30, 2012]. Retrieved from the Internet. <URL:mannkindtechnologies.com/DeviceTechnology/CricketSingleUseInhalers.aspx>.
- Crosby, J. "Dog Normals", <[http://vetmedicine.about.com/od/diseasesconditions/faqs/tp/TP\\_dogfacts.htm](http://vetmedicine.about.com/od/diseasesconditions/faqs/tp/TP_dogfacts.htm)>, copyright 2013.
- Cruetzfeldt et al. "Glucagonostatic actions and reduction of fasting hyperglycemia by exogenous glucagon-like peptide i(7-36) amide in type 1 diabetic patients." *Diabetes Care* 19:580, 1996.
- D'Alessio et al., Elimination of the action of glucagon-like peptide 1 causes an impairment of glucose tolerance after nutrient ingestion by healthy baboons. *J. Clin. Invest.*, 97:133-38 (1996).
- Database adisinsight, "Gucagon-like peptide-1 inhalation-Mannkind Corporation", Database accession No. 2009:1048 Abstract.
- Davis "Postprandial Physiology and the Pathogenesis of Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus." *Insulin*, vol. 3, Apr. 1, 2008, pp. 132-140.
- De Heer et al. "Sulfonylurea compounds uncouple the glucose dependence of the insulinotropic effect of glucagon-like peptide-1." *Diabetes* 56:438, 2007.
- Deacon "Therapeutic strategies based on glucagon-like peptide 1." *Diabetes. Sep.*;53(9):2181-9, 2004.
- Deacon et al., "Glucagon-like peptide 1 undergoes differential tissue-specific metabolism in the anesthetized pig", *Am. J. Physiol.* 271 (Endocrino. Metab. 34): E458-E464, 1996.
- Decode study group. "Glucose tolerance and mortality: comparison of WHO and American Diabetes Association diagnostic criteria." *Lancet*. Aug. 21, 1999;354(9179):617-21.
- DedicatedPhase, "Preclinical Trials and Research", <<http://www.dedicatedphase1.com/preclinical-research.html>>, copyright 2006-2011, p. 1.
- Definition of analog from <http://cancerweb.ncl.ac.uk/omd/about.html>, pp. 1-5. Accessed by Examiner on Jul. 7, 2005 and cited in Office Action issued on Jul. 26, 2013 in U.S. Appl. No. 12/830,557.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Delgado-Aros et al. "Effect of GLP-1 on gastric volume, emptying, maximum volume ingested and postprandial symptoms in humans." *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 282:G424, 2002.
- Diabetes: Counting Garbs if You Use Insulin, WedMD, <http://diabetes.webmd.com/carbohydrate-counting-for-people-who-use-insulin#mOct.1,2010>.
- Diez et al. "Inhaled insulin—a new therapeutic option in the treatment of diabetes mellitus" *Expert Opin. Pharmacother.*, 2003, 4, 191-200.
- Dorwald, F.A. *Side reactions in organic synthesis*. Wiley, (2005).
- Doyle et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1." *Recent Prog Norm Res.* 2001;56:377-99.
- Dreamboat TM Reusable Inhalers [on-line]. Mannkind Technologies Website, posted in 2011, Retrieved from the Internet: <URL: [mannkindtechnologies.com/DeviceTechnology/DreamBoatReusableInhalers.aspx](http://mannkindtechnologies.com/DeviceTechnology/DreamBoatReusableInhalers.aspx)>.
- Drucker "Development of glucagon-like peptide-1-based pharmaceuticals as therapeutic agents for the treatment of diabetes." *Curr Pharma Design* 7:1399, 2001.
- Drucker et al., "The incretin system: glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors in type 2 diabetes", *www.thelancet.com*, vol. 368, pp. 1696-1705, Nov. 11, 2006.
- Dungan et al., Glucagon-like peptide 1-based therapies for type 2 diabetes: a focus on exenatide. *Clinical Diabetes*, 23: 56-62 (2005).
- Dunn, "Zinc-ligand interactions modulate assembly and stability of the insulin hexamer", *Biometals*, 18(4):295-303 (2005).
- Edited by Fukushima, Masanori, "Arterial Sclerosis," *Merck Manual* 17th, Japanese Edition, NIKKEI BP Corp., p. 1659-1663, 1999.
- Edwards CMB et al. "Cardiovascular and pancreatic endocrine response to glucagon-like peptide-1(7-36) amide in the conscious calf." *Exp Physiol* 82:709, 1997.
- Edwards CMB et al. "Subcutaneous glucagon-like peptide-1(7-36) amide is insulinotropic and can cause hypoglycaemia in fasted healthy subjects." *Clinical Science* 96:719, 1998.
- Eggers et al., Molecular confinement influences protein structure and enhances thermal protein stability. *Protein Sci.*, 10:250-261 (2001).
- Ehlers et al. "Recombinant glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36 amide) lowers fasting serum glucose in a broad spectrum of patients with type 2 diabetes." *Horm Metab Res* 35:611, 2003.
- Eissele et al., Rat gastric somatostatin and gastrin release: interactions of exendin-4 and truncated glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) amide. *Life Sci.*, 55(8):629-634 (1994).
- Elliot et al., Parenteral absorption of insulin from the lung in diabetic children. *Austr. Paediatr. J.* 23: 293-297 (1987).
- Elrick et al. "Plasma insulin response to oral and intravenous glucose administration." *J Clin Endocr* 24:1076, 1964.
- Engelgau MM "Screening for type 2 diabetes." *Diabetes Care* 23:1563-1580, 2000.
- Engwerda et al., Improved pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic profile of rapid-acting insulin using needle-free jet injection technology. *Diabetes Care*, vol. 34, Aug. 2011, pp. 1804-1808.
- Erlanger et al., Phosphorous pentoxide as a reagent in peptide synthesis. *College of Physicians and Surgeons—Columbia University*, vol. 26, pp. 2534-2536 (1960).
- Exubera indications, dosage, storage, stability. [http://www.rxlist.com/cgi/generic4/exubera\\_ids.htm](http://www.rxlist.com/cgi/generic4/exubera_ids.htm), 2008.
- EXUBERA package insert, p. 1, 2008.
- Fadl et al., Effects of MDI spray angle on aerosol penetration efficiency through an oral airway cast. *Journal of Aerosol Science*, vol. 38, No. 8, pp. 853-864 (2007).
- Falsone et al., The Biginelli dihydropyrimidone synthesis using polyphosphate ester as a mild and efficient cyclocondensation/dehydration reagent. *Institute of Chemistry, Organic and Bioorganic Chemistry, Karl-Franzens-University*, pp. 122-134 (2001).
- Farr, S.J. et al. Pulmonary insulin administration using the AERx® system: physiological and physiochemical factors influencing insulin effectiveness in healthy fasting subjects. *Diabetes Tech. Ther.* 2:185-197, 2000.
- Fehmann et al. "Cell and molecular biology of the incretin hormones glucagon-like peptide-1 and glucose-dependent insulin releasing polypeptide." *Endocrine Reviews* 16:390, 1995.
- Festa et al., "LDL particle size in relation to insulin, proinsulin, and insulin sensitivity" *Diabetes Care*, 22 (10):1688-1693 (1999).
- Forst et al., "Metabolic Effects of Mealtime Insulin Lispro in Comparison to Glibenclamide in Early Type 2 Diabetes", *Exp. Clin. Endocrinol. Diabetes*, 2003, 111, 97-103.
- Fritsche et al. "Glimepiride Combined with Morning Insulin Glargine, Bedtime Neutral Protamine Hagedorm Insulin, or Bedtime Insulin Glargine in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes." *American College of Physicians* 2003.
- Galinsky et al., A synthesis of diketopiperazine's using polyphosphoric acid. *Journal of the American Pharmaceutical Association*, vol. 46, No. 7, pp. 391-393 (1957).
- Garber, "Premixed insulin analogues for the treatment of diabetes mellitus", *Drugs*, 66(1):31-49 (2006).
- Garg et al. "Improved glycemic control without an increase in severe hypoglycemic episodes in intensively treated patients with type 1 diabetes receiving morning, evening, or split dose insulin glargine." *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice* 66 (2004) 49-56.
- Garg SK, Kelly W, Freson B, et al. Treat-to-target Technosphere® insulin in patients with type 1 diabetes. *ADA* 2011; Abstract 941-P.
- Garg SK, McGill JB, Rosenstock J, et al. Technosphere® insulin vs insulin lispro in patients with type 1 diabetes using multiple daily injections. *ADA*, Abstract 917-P (2011).
- Glucagon for Injection (1999) glucagon for injection (rDNA origin), pp. 1-7.
- Glucagon-like peptide-1; [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glucagon-like\\_peptide-1](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glucagon-like_peptide-1) (accessed Apr. 24, 2015).
- GLUCOPHAGE Product Insert. Jan. 2009.
- GLUCOTROL Product Insert. Sep. 2006.
- Gnudi L, Lorber D, Rosenstock J, et al. Basal/bolus with prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin (TI) plus insulin glargine qd vs biphasic 70/30 insulin bid in type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled on insulin with/without oral agents. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Goke et al., Exendin-4 is a high potency agonist and truncated exendin-(9-39)-amide an antagonist at the glucagon-like peptide 1(7-36)-amide receptor of insulin-secreting beta-cells. *J. Biol. Chem.* 268(26):19650-19655 (1993).
- Golpon et al. "Vasorelaxant effect of glucagon-like peptide-(7-36) amide and amylin on the pulmonary circulation of the rat." *Regulatory Peptides* 102:81, 2001.
- Gonzalez et al., Actualización del tratamiento farmacológico de la diabetes mellitus tipo 2. *Del Sistema Nacional de Salud. Volumen* 32, No. 1, pp. 3-16 (2008)—full article in Spanish with English abstract.
- Gotfried M, Cassidy JP, Marino MT, et al. Lung deposition and absorption of insulin from Technosphere® insulin. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- International Search Report for International Application No. PCT/US2013/050392 filed on Jul. 12, 2013.
- International Search Report mailed on Nov. 21, 2013 for International Application No. PCT/US2013/057397 filed on Aug. 29, 2013.
- Grant M, Harris E, Leone-Bay A, Rousseau K. Technosphere®/Insulin: Method of action. *Diabetes Technology Meeting* 2006; Poster.
- Grant ML, Greene S, Stowell GW, et al. Mimicking endogenous peptide secretion by inhalation APS 2009; poster.
- Greene et al. "Effects of GLP-1 Technosphere(TM) powder: administered by pulmonary insufflation in male obese Zucker diabetic fat (ZDF) rats." *Diabetes Technology Meeting*, San Francisco, Oct. 2007.
- Greene et al., Greene's protective groups in organic synthesis. 4th ed., pp. 781-783 (2007).
- Gurrieri et al., Thermal condensation of some alpha-aminoacids with phthalic acid. *Thermochimica Acta*, 7 (1973) 231-239.
- Gutniak et al. "Antidiabetogenic action of glucagon-like peptide-1 related to administration relative to meal intake in subjects with type 2 diabetes." *J Int Med* 250:81, 2001.
- Gutniak et al. "Antidiabetogenic effect of glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36)amide in normal subjects and patients with diabetes mellitus." *NEJM* 326:1316, 1992.



(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Gutniak et al. "GLP-1 tablet in type 2 diabetes in fasting and postprandial conditions." *Diabetes Care* 20:1874, 1997.
- Gutniak et al. "Potential therapeutic levels of glucagon-like peptide I achieved in humans by a buccal tablet." *Diabetes Care* 19:843, 1996.
- Gutniak et al. "Subcutaneous injection of the incretin hormone glucagon-like peptide 1 abolishes postprandial glycemia in NIDDM." *Diabetes Care* 17:1039, 1994.
- Guyton et al., "Acute Control of Local Blood Flow", *Textbook of Medical Physiology*, Chapter 17, 10th Edition, W.B. Saunders Company, pp. 176-177, 2000.
- Gyore et al., *Thermal Analysis*, vol. 2—Proceeding Fourth ICTA Budapest 1974; 387-394.
- Haak "New developments in the treatment of type 1 diabetes mellitus." *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 107:Suppl 3: S108, 1999.
- Haffner et al., "Proinsulin and insulin concentrations I relation to carotid wall thickness", *Stroke* 29:1498-1503 (1998).
- Hagedorn et al. "Protamine Insulin", *JAMA*, 106:177-180 (1936).
- Haino, Takeharu et al. "On-beads Screening of Solid-Attached Diketopiperazines for Calix[5]Arene-Based Receptor." *Tetrahedron Letters*, 40(20), 3889-3892, 2003.
- Halozyne Press Release. Jun. 6, 2009.
- Hanley et al., "Cross-sectional and prospective associations between proinsulin and cardiovascular disease risk factors in a population experiencing rapid cultural transition" *Diabetes Care* 24(7): 1240-1247 (2001).
- Hassan et al. "A Randomized, Controlled Trial Comparing Twice-a-Day Insulin Glargine Mixed with Rapid-Acting Insulin Analogs Versus Standard Neutral Protamine Hagedorn (NPH) Therapy in Newly Diagnosed Type 1 Diabetes." *Pediatrics*, 121(3), e466-e472, 2008.
- Hassan et al. "In vivo dynamic distribution of 131I-glucagonlike peptide-1 (7-36) amide in the rat studied by gamma camera." *Nucl Med Biol* 26:413, 1999.
- Hausmann et al. "Inhaled insulin as adjunctive therapy in subjects with type 2 diabetes failing oral agents: a controlled proof of concept study." *Diabetes Obesity and Metabolism* 8:574, 2006.
- Hayasaka et al. "Proliferation of type II pneumocytes and alteration in their apical surface membrane antigenicity in pulmonary sarcoidosis." *Chest* 116:477, 1999.
- Heine "Unlocking the opportunity of tight glycaemic control. Promise ahead: the role of inhaled insulin in clinical practice." *Diabetes, Obesity and Metabolism* 7:S19, 2005.
- Heinemann "Variability of Insulin Absorption and Insulin Action." *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, vol. 4, No. 5, pp. 673-682, 2002.
- Heinemann L et al. "Time-action profile of inhaled insulin." *Diabetic Med* 14:63-72, 1997.
- Heinemann, L. "Intra-individual Variability of the Metabolic Effect of Inhaled Insulin Together with an Absorption Enhancer", *Diabetes Care*, vol. 23, No. 9, Sep. 2000, pp. 1343-1347.
- Heise et al. "The effect of insulin antibodies on the metabolic action of inhaled and subcutaneous insulin." *Diabetes Care* 28:2161, 2005.
- Herbst et al., *Insulin Strategies for Primary Care Providers*. *Clinical Diabetes*, vol. 20, No. 1, pp. 11-17 (2002).
- Heubner et al. "On inhalation of insulin" *Klinische Wochenschrift* 16:2342, 1924. Both original and translated documents included.
- Heyder "Particle Transport onto Human Airway Surfaces", *Eur. J. Respir. Dis*, Suppl. 119, 29-50 (1982).
- Heyder, "Alveolar deposition of inhaled particles in humans", *Am. Ind. Hyg. Assoc. J.* 43(11): 864-866 (1982).
- Hirsch, "Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus and the Use of Flexible Insulin Regimens" *American Family Physician*, Nov. 15, 1999, p. 1-16.
- Hirschberg B et al. "Islet transplantation: where do we stand now?" *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 19:175-8, 2003.
- Hite et al. "Exuberance over Exubera." *Clin Diabetes* 24(3):110-114, 2006.
- Hoet et al., Review: Nanoparticles—known and unknown health risks. *Journal of Nanobiotechnology*, vol. 2, No. 12, (15 pages) (2004).
- Hollander et al. "Efficacy and Safety of Inhaled Insulin (Exubera) Compared with Subcutaneous Insulin Therapy in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 27, No. 10, Oct. 2004, p. 2356-2362.
- Holst "Therapy of type 2 diabetes mellitus based on the actions of glucagon-like peptide-1." *Diabetes Metab Res Rev* 18:430, 2002.
- Holst et al. "On the effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 on blood glucose regulation in normal and diabetic subjects." *Ann NY Acad Sci.* Dec. 26, 1996 ;805:729-36.
- Howard C, Ren H, Rossiter A, et al. Reduced incidence and frequency of hypoglycemia in an integrated analysis of pooled data from clinical trials of subjects with type 1 diabetes using prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Howard CP, Gnudi L, Lorber D, et al. Prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin plus insulin glargine vs. bipart 70/30 insulin in type 2 diabetes inadequately controlled with/without oral agents. Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes. 2010; Poster 300.
- Howard CP, Lorber D, Ren H, et al. Reduced incidence and frequency of hypoglycemia in pooled data from trials of type 2 diabetes using prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin. Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes 2010; Poster 304.
- Howard CP, Petrucci R, Amin N, et al. Pulmonary function test remain similar in patients who received Technosphere® insulin and in patients currently receiving standard antidiabetic therapy. *AACE* 2010; Poster 267.
- Howard CP, Ren H, Rossiter A, Boss AH. Reduced incidence and frequency of hypoglycemia in pooled data from trials of type 1 diabetes using prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin. Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes. 2010; Poster 302.
- Howard CP, Ren H, Rossiter A, et al. Reduced incidence and frequency of hypoglycemia in an integrated analysis of pooled data from clinical trials of subjects with type 1 diabetes using prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin. *AACE* 2010; Poster 269.
- Howard CP, Rubin RR, Peyrot. M. Patient reported outcomes in adults with type 2 diabetes using mealtime AFRESA® (inhaled Technosphere® insulin) and basal insulin versus premixed insulin *ADA* 2009; Poster 551.
- <http://www.bilcaresolutions.com/en/products/pharma-packaging-innovations-pvc-aclar-films> <URL:<http://web.archive.org/web/20110127102552/http://www.bilcaresolutions.com/en/products/pharma-packaging-innovations-pvc-aclar-films>> published on Jan. 27, 2011 as per "Wayback Engine".
- <http://www.pmpnews.com/article/blister-packaging-materials> (May 26, 2009).
- Huda et al. "Gut peptides and the regulation of appetite." *Obesity Reviews* 7:163, 2006.
- Hui et al., The short half-life of glucagon-like peptide-1 in plasma does not reflect its long-lasting beneficial effects. *European Journal of Endocrinology*, 146: 863-869 (2002).
- Hussain et al. "State of insulin self-association does not affects its absorption from the pulmonary route." *Eur. J. Pharm. Sciences* 25:289-298, 2005.
- Ikeda, Kuniki et al. "Peptide Antibiotics. XXVI. Syntheses of Cyclodipeptides Containing N. delta.-p-aminobenzenesulfonyl Ornithine Residue." *Chemical & Pharmaceutical Bulletin*, (209), 1849-55, 1972.
- Imeryuz et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 inhibits gastric emptying via vagal afferent-mediated central mechanisms." *Am J Physiol* 273 (Gastrointest Liver Physiol 36):G920, 1997.
- Insulin is a natural product from <http://www.levemir.com/startingoninsulin/whatisinsulin.aspx>, pp. 1-3. Accessed by Examiner on Apr. 30, 2014 and in Non-Final Office Action dated May 22, 2014 for U.S. Appl. No. 13/797,657 and in Non-Final Office Action dated May 22, 2014 for U.S. Appl. No. 12/883,369.
- International Search Report for PCT International Application No. PCT/US2010/055323 filed on Nov. 3, 2010.
- Written Opinion mailed on Jul. 1, 2013 for International Application No. PCT/US2013/032162 filed on Mar. 15, 2013.
- International Search Report mailed on Jun. 21, 2010 for International Application No. PCT/US2010/027038 filed on Mar. 11, 2010.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Written Opinion for International Application No. PCT/US2011/060057 filed on Nov. 9, 2011.
- International Search Report mailed Mar. 18, 2013 for International Application No. PCT/US2012/061749 filed on Oct. 24, 2012.
- International Search Report mailed on Jun. 20, 2012 for International Application No. PCT/US2012/031695 filed on Mar. 30, 2012.
- International Search Report mailed on Nov. 19, 2014 for International Application No. PCT/US2014/049817 filed on Aug. 5, 2014.
- International Search Report for International Application No. PCT/US2010/020448 filed on Jan. 8, 2010.
- International Search Report mailed on Mar. 11, 2010 for International Application No. PCT/US2009/069745 filed on Dec. 29, 2009.
- International Search Report mailed on Oct. 17, 2011 for International Application No. PCT/US2010/026271 filed on Mar. 4, 2010.
- International Search Report for International Application No. PCT/US2010/038287 filed on Jun. 11, 2010.
- Ishibashi, Norio et al. "Studies on Flavord Peptides. Part V. A Mechanism for Bitter Taste Sensibility in Peptides." *Agricultural and Biological Chemistry*, 52(3), 819-27, 1988.
- Iwanij et al., Characterization of the Glucagon Receptor and its Functional Domains Using Monoclonal Antibodies. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry*, vol. 265, No. 34, pp. 21302-21308, 1990.
- Jain et al. "Insulin Therapy in Type 2 Diabetic Subjects Suppresses Plasminogen Activator Inhibitor (PAI-1) Activity and Proinsulin-like Molecules Independently of Glycaemic Control." *Diabetic Medicine*, vol. 10, No. 1, p. 27-32, 1993.
- Johnson et al., Peptide turn mimetics. *Biotechnology and Pharmacy*, p. 366-378 (1993).
- Labiris et al., Pulmonary drug delivery. Part I: Physiological factors affecting therapeutic effectiveness of aerosolized medications. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology* 56: 588-599 (2003).
- Johnson et al., "Turbuhaler a new device for dry powder terbutaline inhalation", *Allergy* 43(5):392-395 (1988).
- Johnson et al: RyR2 and calpain-10 delineate a novel apoptosis pathway in pancreatic islets. *J Biol Chem.*, 279 (23):24794-802, 2004.
- Johnson, Keith A., Preparation of peptide and protein powders for inhalation. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews* 1997; 26:3-15.
- Jones et al., An investigation of the pulmonary absorption of insulin in the rat. *Third European Congress of Biopharmaceutics and Pharmacokinetics*, (1987).
- Joseph et al. "Oral delivery of glucagon-like peptide-1 in a modified polymer preparation normalizes basal glycaemia in diabetic db/db mice." *Diabetologia* 43:1319-1328, 2000.
- Joy et al. "Incretin mimetics as emerging treatments for type 2 diabetes." *Annals Pharmacotherapy* 39:110, 2005.
- Juntti-Berggren et al. "The antidiabetic effect of GLP-1 is maintained during a 7-day treatment period and improves diabetic dyslipoproteinemia in NIDDM patients." *Diabetes Care* 19:1200-1206, 1996.
- Kanse et al. "Identification and characterization of glucagon-like peptide-1 7-36 amide-binding sites in the rat brain and lung." *FEBS Letters* 241:209, 1988.
- Kapitza C et al. "Impact of particle size and aerosolization time on the metabolic effect of an inhaled insulin aerosol." *Diabetes Tech Ther* 6:119, 2004.
- Kapsner P, Bergenstal RM, Rendell M, et al. Comparative efficacy and safety of Technosphere® insulin and a rapid-acting analog both given with glargine in subjects with type 1 diabetes in a 52-week study. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Katz et al. "Quantitative insulin sensitivity check index: a simple, accurate method for assessing insulin sensitivity in humans." *J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab.* 85:5402-2410, 2000.
- Kaur et al. "A Delineation of Diketopiperazine Self-Assembly Processes: Understanding the Molecular Events Involved in Ne-(Fumaroyl)diketopiperazine of L-Lys (FDKP) Interactions." *Molecular Pharmaceutics*, vol. 5, No. 2, 294-315, 2008.
- Kawai et al. "Evidence that glucagon stimulates insulin secretion through its own receptor in rats." *Diabetologia* 38:274, 1995.
- Kawamori et al. "Does hyperinsulinemia accelerate atherosclerosis?" *Department of Medicine, Juntendo University School*, vol. 13, No. 12, p. 954-960, 1994.
- Kelley, D. et al. "Impaired postprandial glucose utilization in non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus." *Metabolism* 43:1549-1557, 1994.
- Kenny AJ et al. "Dipeptidyl peptidase IV, a kidney brush-border serin peptidase." *Biochem J.* 155:169, 1976.
- Kim et al. "Development and characterization of a glucagon-like peptide 1-albumin conjugate. The ability to activate the glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor in vivo." *Diabetes* 52:751, 2003.
- Kinzig et al. "The diverse roles of specific GLP-1 receptors in the control of food intake and the response to visceral illness." *J Neurosci* 22:10470, 2002.
- Kirk et al. "Disparities in HbA1c levels between African-American and non-hispanic white adults with diabetes." *Diabetes Care* 29:2130, 2006.
- Kitabchi, Proinsulin and C-peptide: a review. May 26, 1977 (5):547-87, <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/403392>.
- Knop et al. "No hypoglycemia after subcutaneous administration of glucagon-like peptide-1 in lean type 2 diabetic patients and in patients with diabetes secondary to chronic pancreatitis." *Diabetes Care* 26:2581, 2003.
- Knop et al. "Reduced incretin effect in type 2 diabetes. Cause or consequence of the diabetic state?" *Diabetes* 56:1951, 2007.
- Kohler D et al. Non-radioactive approach for measuring lung permeability: inhalation of insulin. *Atmew Lungenkrkh* 13:230-232, 1987. (Original German and English translation attached).
- Kohler, "Aerosols for Systemic Treatment", *Lung (Suppl.)* 677-684 (1990).
- Komada et al., Intratracheal delivery of peptide and protein agents: absorption from solution and dry powder by rat lung. *J. Pharm. Sci.* 83(6): 863-867 (1994).
- Komatsu et al. "Glucagonostatic and insulinotropic action of glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36)-amide." *Diabetes* 38:902, 1989.
- Koning et al., Relationship between inspiratory flow through simulated dry powder inhalers and peak maximal inspiratory pressure. *Dry powder inhalation: technical and physiological aspects, prescribing and use*. Chapter 3, 2001, pp. 43-56.
- Kontny et al., Issues Surrounding MDI Formulation Development with Non-CFC Propellants, *J. Aerosol Med* 4(3), 181-187 (1991).
- Kopple et al. "A convenient synthesis of 2,5-piperazinediones." *J Org Chem* p. 962, 1967.
- Kraft KS, Grant M. Preparation of macromolecule-containing drug powders for pulmonary delivery *Methods in Molecular Biology* 2009;480:165-174.
- Kreymann B et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 7-36: a physiological incretin in man." *The Lancet*, Dec. 5, 1987, p. 1300.
- Krssak, M. et al. "Alterations in postprandial hepatic glycogen metabolism in type 2 diabetes." *Diabetes* 53:3048-3056, 2004.
- Kwon et al. "Signaling elements involved in the metabolic regulation of mTOR by nutrients, incretins, and growth factors in islets." *Diabetes* 53:S225, 2004.
- Lankat-Buttgereit B et al. "Molecular cloning of a cDNA encoding for the GLP-1 receptor expressed in rat lung." *Exp Clin Endocrinol* 102:241, 1994.
- Lebovitz "Therapeutic options in development for management of diabetes: pharmacologic agents and new technologies." *Endocr Pract* 12:142, 2006.
- Lee et al. "Synthesis, characterization and pharmacokinetic studies of PEGylated glucagon-like peptide-1." *Bioconjugate Chem* 16:377, 2005.
- Lee et al., "Development of an Aerosol Dosage Form Containing Insulin", *J. Pharm. Sci.* 65(4), 567-572 (1976).
- Leone-Bay et al. "Evaluation of novel particles as an inhalation system for GLP-1." *Diabetes, Obesity and Metabolism*. 11:1050-1059, 2009.
- Leone-Bay A, Grant M. Technosphere® Technology: A Platform for inhaled protein therapeutics. *OndrugDelivery* 2006 (published online).
- Leone-Bay A, Grant M. Technosphere®/insulin: mimicking endogenous insulin release. In: Rathbone M, Hadgraft J, Roberts M,

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

- et al, eds. *Modified Release Drug Delivery*, 2e. New York, NY: Informa Healthcare USA, Inc; 2008.
- Kieffer et al. "The glucagon-like peptides." *Endocrine Reviews* 20:876, 1999.
- Rosenstock et al. "Efficacy and Safety of Technosphere Inhaled Insulin Compared With Technosphere Powder Placebo in Insulin-Naive Type 2 Diabetes Suboptimally Controlled with Oral Agents." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 31, No. 11, pp. 2177-2182, 2008.
- Rosenstock et al., "Reduced hypoglycemia risk with insulin glargine: a meta-analysis comparing insulin glargine with human NPH insulin in type 2 diabetes", *Diabetes Care*, 28(4):950-5 (2005).
- Rosenstock J, Baughman RA, Ribera-Schaub T, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo controlled study of the efficacy and safety of inhaled Technosphere® insulin in patients with type 2 diabetes (T2DM). *Diabetes* 2005;54: Abstract 357-OR.
- Rosenstock J, Lorber D, Petrucci R, et al. Basal/bolus with prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin (TI) plus insulin glargine qd vs bipart 70/30 insulin bid in T2 DM inadequately controlled on insulin with/without oral agents ADA 2009; Poster 466.
- Rosenstock J, Loriger DL, Gnudi L, et al. Prandial inhaled insulin plus basal insulin glargine versus twice daily bipart insulin for type 2 diabetes: a multicentre randomised trial. *Lancet* 2010;375:2244-2253.
- Rossiter A, Amin N, Harris R, et al. Pulmonary safety of inhaled Technosphere® insulin therapy in adults with diabetes using high-resolution computerized tomography of the chest. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Rossiter A, Howard C, Amin N, et al. Technosphere® insulin: Safety in type 2 diabetes mellitus. ADA 2010; Poster 523.
- Rubin RR, Peyrot M. Psychometric properties of an instrument for assessing the experience of patients treated with inhaled insulin: The inhaled insulin treatment questionnaire (INTQ) *Health & Quality of Life Outcomes* 2010;8:32.
- Rubin RR, Peyrot M; Patient reported outcomes in adults with type 1 diabetes using mealtime AFRESA® (inhaled Technosphere® insulin) or rapid acting insulin with basal insulin ADA 2009; Poster 1881.
- Ryan EA et al. "Successful islet transplantation. Continued insulin reserve provides long-term glycemic control." *Diabetes* 51:2148-2157, 2002.
- Sajeesh et al., Cyclodextrin-insulin complex encapsulated polymethacrylic acid based nanoparticles for oral insulin delivery. *International Journal of Pharmaceuticals*, 2006, 325, pp. 147-154.
- Sakr, A new approach for insulin delivery via the pulmonary route: design and pharmacokinetics in non-diabetic rabbits. *International Journal of Pharmaceuticals*, 86: 1-7 (1992).
- Salib, Utilization of sodium alginate in drug microencapsulation. *Pharmazeutische Industrie*, 40(11a): 1230-1234 (1978).
- Saraceni C et al. "Effects of glucagon-like peptide-1 and long-acting analogues on cardiovascular and metabolic function." *Drugs R D* 8:145, 2007.
- Sarrach et al., "Binding and entrapment of insulin by liposomes made of lecithin-phosphatidic acid in acid solution" *Pharmazie* 40:642-645, 1985 (German and English Abstract).
- Savage et al., "Effects of peptide YY (PYY) on mouth to caecum intestinal transit time and on the rate of gastric emptying healthy volunteers", *Gut*, vol. 28, pp. 166-170, 1987.
- Sawhney et al., Bioerodible hydrogels based on photopolymerized poly(ethylene glycol)-co-poly(a-hydroxy acid) diacrylate macromers. *Macromolecules*, 26: 581-587 (1993).
- Schaffer et al. "Assembly of high-affinity insulin receptor agonists and antagonists from peptide building blocks." *PNAS* 100:4435-4439, 2003.
- Schepp et al., *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 269:183-91, 1994.
- Scherbaum "Unlocking the opportunity of tight glycaemic control. Inhaled insulin: clinical efficacy." *Diabetes Obesity and Metabolism* 7:S9-S13, 2005.
- Schirra et al. "Gastric emptying and release of incretin hormones after glucose ingestion in humans." *J Clin Invest* 97:92-103, 1996.
- Schluter et al., "Pulmonary Administration of Human Insulin in volunteers and Type I Diabetics", *Diabetes*, 33, (Suppl) 298 (1984).
- Schneider et al., "Stimulation by proinsulin of expression of plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 in endothelial cells", *Diabetes* 41(7):890-895 (1992).
- Schon, Istvan et al. "Formation of Aminosuccinyl Peptides During Acidolytic Deprotection Followed by their Tranformation to Piperazine-2, 5-dione Derivatives in Neutral Media." *International Journal of Peptide & Protein Research*, 14(5), 485-494, 1979.
- Schroder, "Crystallized carbohydrate spheres as a slow release matrix for biologically active substances", *Biomaterials* 5:100-104, 1984.
- Scrocchi et al. "Glucose intolerance but normal satiety in mice with a null mutation in the glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor gene." *Nature Medicine* 2:1254-1258, 1996.
- Sesiah & Balaji, "Early Insulin Therapy in Type 2 Diabetics", *Int. J. Diabetes in Developing Countries*, 2003, 23, 90-93.
- Seville, P.C. et al., Preparation of dry powder dispersions for non-viral gene delivery by freeze-drying and spray drying. *J. Gene Medicine* 2002; 4:428-437.
- Shah et al. "Lack of suppression of glucagon contributes to postprandial hyperglycemia in subjects with type 2 diabetes mellitus." *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 85:4053, 2000.
- Shelly et al. "Polysorbate 80 hypersensitivity." *The Lancet* 345:1312, 1995.
- Shojania et al. "Effect of quality improvement strategies for type 2 diabetes on glycemic control." *JAMA* 296:427, 2006.
- Silverstein et al., "Care of Children and Adolescents with Type 1 Diabetes, A Statement of the American Diabetes Association", *Diabetes Care*, Jan. 2005, vol. 28, p. 186-212.
- Singh et al., Use of 125I-[Y39]exendin-4 to characterize exendin receptors on dispersed pancreatic acini and gastric chief cells from guinea pig. *Regul. Pept.* 53 : 47-59 (1994).
- Simms JR, Carballo I, Auge CR, et al. Assessment of immunotoxic effects on humoral and cellular immune parameters following repeated inhalation of Technosphere insulin in the rat. *Diabetes* 2005;54:Abstract 2078-PO.
- Skyler, Pulmonary insulin: current status. *Diabetes Voice*, vol. 51, Issue I, p. 23-25, 2006.
- Skyler "Pulmonary Insulin Delivery—State of the Art 2007." *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, vol. 9, Supplement 1, pp. S1-S3. 2007.
- Smith et al. "New-onset diabetes and risk of all-cause and cardiovascular mortality." *Diabetes Care* 29:2012, 2006.
- Smutney CC, Friedman EM, Amin N. Inspiratory efforts achieved in use of the Technosphere® insulin inhalation system. *Diabetes Technology Meeting 2008; Poster SMUT8052*.
- Smutney CC, Friedman EM, Amin N. Inspiratory efforts achieved in use of the Technosphere® insulin inhalation system. *Journal of Diabetes Science and Technology* 2009 3(5):1175-1189.
- Smutney CC, Polidoro JM, Adamo B, et al. In-vitro performance improvement realized in a next generation dry powder delivery system. *Diabetes Technology Meeting 2009; poster*.
- Smutney CC, Polidoro JM, Adamo B, Shah S. In vitro performance improvement realized in a next generation dry powder delivery system. *Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes 2010; Poster 122*.
- Smutney CC, Polidoro JM. Easy-to-use next-generation pulmonary insulin delivery system. ADA 2010; Abstract 2093.
- Smutney CC, Polidoro JM. Improvements realized in a next-generation pulmonary insulin delivery system. ADA 2010; Abstract 2097.
- Sodium chloride is a natural product from <http://www.wqpmag.com/potassium-chloride-vs-sodium-chloride>, pp. 1-3. Accessed by Examiner on May 16, 2014 and in Non-Final Office Action dated May 22, 2014 for U.S. Appl. No. 13/797,657 and in Non-Final Office Action dated May 22, 2014 for U.S. Appl. No. 12/883,369.
- Standl et al. "Good Glycemic Control With Flexibility in Timing of Basal Insulin Supply." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 28, No. 2, Feb. 2005.
- Stanley et al. "Gastrointestinal satiety signals III. Glucagon-like peptide 1, oxyntomodulin, peptide YY and pancreatic peptide." *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 286:G693, 2004.
- Steinberg et al. "A new approach to the safety assessment of pharmaceutical excipients." *Reg Toxicol Pharmacol* 24:149, 1996.

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

- Steiner, K. et al. "The relative importance of first- and second-phase insulin secretion in countering the action of glucagon on glucose turnover in the conscious dog." *Diabetes* 31:964-972, 1982.
- Steiner S, Rave K, Heise T, et al. Pharmacokinetic properties and bioavailability of inhaled drug powder Technosphere™/insulin. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 2000; 108:S161.
- Steiner S, Rave K, Heise T, et al. Technosphere™/insulin: Bioavailability and pharmacokinetic properties in healthy volunteers. *Diabetologia* 2000;43:Abstract 511-P.
- Steiner SS, Burrell BB, Feldstein R, et Al. Pulmonary delivery of Technosphere™/insulin: Increased bioefficacy and bioavailability in clinical trials using the PDC Medtone™ inhaler. *Proceed Int'l Symp Control Rel Bioact Mater* 2000; 27:1000-1001.
- Stowell et al. "Development of GLP-1 Technosphere(TM) powder: an inhaled GLP-1 product." *Diabetes Technology Meeting*, San Francisco, Oct. 2007.
- Strack "Inhaled Human Insulin." *Drugs of Today* 2006, 42 (4): 207-221.
- Sturis et al., GLP-1 derivative liraglutide in rats with beta-cell deficiencies: influence of metabolic state on beta-cell mass dynamics. *British Journal of Pharmacology*, 140 : 123-132 (2003).
- Svartengren et al., Added External Resistance Reduces Oropharyngeal Deposition and Increases Lung Deposition of Aerosol Particles in Asthmatics. *Am. J. Respir. Crit. Care Med.*, vol. 152, pp. 32-37, 1995.
- Sympatecs. Dry Dispersion for Laser Diffraction and Image Analysis, 2011. XP-002586530.
- Tack Cees J. et al., Forced Titration to Different Doses of Technosphere Insulin Demonstrates Reduction in Postprandial Glucose Excursions and Hemoglobin A1c in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes. *Journal of Diabetes Science and Technology*, vol. 2, Issue 1, pp. 47-57, Jan. 2008.
- Tack CJ, Boss AH, Baughman RA, et al. A randomized, double blind, placebo controlled study of the forced titration of prandial Technosphere®/Insulin in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes* 2006;55:Abstract 428-P.
- Tack CJ, Christov V, deGalan BE, et al. Randomized forced titration to different doses of Technosphere® insulin demonstrates reduction in postprandial glucose excursions and hemoglobin A1c in patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Diabetes Sci Technol* 2008;2:47-57.
- Tang-Christensen et al. "Central administration of GLP-1-(7-36) amide inhibits food and water intake in rats." *Am J Physiol* 271 (Regulatory Integrative Comp Physiol 40):R848, 1996.
- Teeter et al. "Dissociation of lung function changes with humoral immunity during inhaled human insulin therapy." *Am J Resp Crit Care Med* 173:1194, 2006.
- The American Diabetes Association "Insulin Administration" *Diabetes Care*, vol. 27, Supplement 1, S106-S109 (2004).
- The DECODE study group. "Glucose tolerance and mortality: comparison of WHO and American Diabetes Association diagnostic criteria." *Lancet*. Aug. 21, 1999;354(9179):617-21.
- The Lancet. 1989, vol. 333, p. 1235-1236.
- Thorens "Expression cloning of the pancreatic b-cell receptor for the glucagon-incretin hormone glucagon-like peptide-1." *PNAS* 89:8641, 1992.
- Thorens B et al. "Cloning and function expression of the human islet GLP-1 receptor: demonstration that exendin-4 is an agonist and exendin-(9-39) an antagonist of the receptor." *Diabetes* 42:1678, 1993.
- Todd et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1): a trial of treatment in non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus." *Eur J Clin Invest* 27:533, 1997.
- Todd et al. Subcutaneous glucagon-like peptide-1 improves postprandial glucemic control over a 3-week period in patients with early type 2 diabetes. *Clinical Science* 95:325, 1998.
- Toft-Nielsen et al. "Determinants of the effectiveness of glucagon-like peptide-1 in type 2 diabetes." *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 86:3853, 2001.
- Toft-Nielsen et al. "Exaggerated secretion of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) could cause reactive hypoglycaemia." *Diabetologia* 41:1180, 1998.
- Toft-Nielsen et al. "The effect of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) on glucose elimination in healthy subjects depends on the pancreatic glucoregulatory hormones." *Diabetes* 45:552, 1996.
- Tornusciolo D.R. et al., *Biotechniques* 19(5):800-805, 1995. Simultaneous detection of TDT-mediated dUTP-biotin nick end-labeling (TUNEL)-positive cells and multiple immunohistochemical markers in single tissue sections.
- Triantafyllidis et al., Structural, compositional and acidic characteristics of nanosized amorphous or partially crystalline ZSM-5 zeolite based materials. *Microporous and Mesoporous Materials*, 75:89-100 (2004).
- Tu N, Kramer DA, Baughman RA. Inhaled Technosphere® Insulin improves glycemic control without weight gain. *Diabetes* 2007;56:Abstract 471-P.
- Tuley et al., Experimental observations of dry powder inhaler dose fluidisation. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics*, 358, pp. 238-247 (2007).
- Utah Valley University. Saponification. © 2009. Available from: <<http://science.uvu.edu/ochem/index.php/alphabetical/s-t/saponification/printpage/>>.
- Vahl et al. "Effects of GLP-1-(7-36)NH<sub>2</sub>, GLP-1-(7-37), and GLP-1-(9-36)NH<sub>2</sub> on intravenous glucose tolerance and glucose-induced insulin secretion in healthy humans." *J Clin Endocrinol Metabol* 88:1772, 2003.
- Van Alfen-Van Der Velden et al. "Successful treatment of severe subcutaneous insulin resistance with inhaled insulin therapy." *Pediatric Diabetes* 2010; 11:380-382.
- Vara E et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36) amide stimulates surfactant secretion in human type II pneumocytes." *Am J Resp Crit Care Med* 163:841, 2001.
- Vella A et al. "Effect of glucagon-like peptide 1(7-36) amide on glucose effectiveness and insulin action in people with type 2 diabetes." *Diabetes* 49:611, 2000.
- Vella A et al. "The gastrointestinal tract and glucose tolerance." *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 7:479, 2004.
- Vendrame et al. "Prediabetes: prediction and prevention trials." *Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am*, 2004, vol. 33, pp. 75-92.
- Verdich C, et al., A meta-analysis of the effect of glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36) amide on ad libitum energy intake in humans. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.*, 86:4382-4389, 2001.
- Vilsboll et al. "Reduced postprandial concentrations of intact biologically active glucagon-like peptide-1 in type 2 diabetic patients." *Diabetes* 50:609, 2001.
- Vilsboll et al. "Similar elimination rates of glucagon-like peptide-1 in obese type 2 diabetic patients and healthy subjects." *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:220, 2003.
- Vilsboll et al., "Evaluation of  $\beta$ -Cell Secretory Capacity Using Glucagon-Like Peptide 1", *Diabetes Care*, vol. 23, No. 6, pp. 807-812, Jun. 2000.
- Vilsboll et al., "Incretin secretion in Relation to Meal Size and Body Weight in Healthy Subjects and People with Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes Mellitus", *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, vol. 88, No. 6, pp. 2706-2713, 2003.
- Vilsboll T et al. "Reduced postprandial concentrations of intact biologically active glucagon-like peptide-1 in type 2 diabetic patients." *Diabetes* 50:609, 2001.
- Vilsboll T et al. "Similar elimination rates of glucagon-like peptide-1 in obese type 2 diabetic patients and healthy subjects." *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 88:220, 2003.
- Volund "Conversion of insulin units to SI units." *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, Nov. 1993, 58(5), pp. 714-715.
- Wachters-Hagedoorn et al. "The rate of intestinal glucose absorption is correlated with plasma glucose-dependent insulinotropic polypeptide concentrations in healthy men." *J Nutr* 136:1511, 2006.
- Wang et al., Glucagon-like peptide-1 is a physiological incretin in rat. *J. Clin. Invest.*, 95 : 417-421 (1995).
- Wang et al., Glucagon-like peptide-1 regulates proliferation and apoptosis via activation of protein kinase B in pancreatic INS-1 beta cells. *Diabetologia*, 47:478-487, 2004.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Wareham et al., "Fasting Proinsulin Concentrations Predict the Development of Type 2 Diabetes", *Diabetes Care*, 1999, 22, 262-70.
- Waterhouse et al., "Comparative assessment of a new breath-actuated inhaler in patients with reversible airways obstruction", *Respiration* 59:155-158 (1992).
- WebMD (retrieved from <http://www.webmd.com/pain-management/tc/pain-management-side-effects-of-pain-medicines> on Jan. 21, 2012, 4 pages).
- Wei et al., "Tissue-specific expression of the human receptor for glucagon-like peptide-1: brain and pancreatic forms have the same deduced amino acid sequence." *FEBS Letters* 358:219, 1995.
- Weir et al., "Glucagonlike peptide 1 (7-37) actions on endocrine pancreas." *Diabetes* 38:338, 1989.
- Weiss, SR et al., "Inhaled insulin provides improved glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus inadequately controlled with oral agents." *Arch Intern Med* 163:2277-2282, 2003.
- Weissberger, "Mannkind: Overlooked Biotech with Excellent Prospects (Part V)," <http://www.investorvillage.com/smbd.asp?mb=2885&mn=45817&pt=msg&mid=5021385> (posted on Jan. 19, 2008, accessed on Oct. 18, 2012).
- West, Solid State Chemistry and its Applications. Wiley, New York, 358 (1998).
- Wettergren A et al., "Truncated GLP-1 (proglucagon 78-107-Amide) inhibits gastric and pancreatic functions in man." *Digestive Diseases and Sciences* 38:665, 1993.
- Wigley et al., Insulin across respiratory mucosae by aerosol delivery. *Diabetes* 20(8): 552-556 (1971).
- Willms B et al., "Gastric emptying, glucose responses, and insulin secretion after a liquid test meal: effects of exogenous glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1)-(7-36) amide in type 2 (noninsulin-dependent) diabetic patients." *J. Clin Endocrinol Metab* 81:327, 1996.
- Wilson BR et al., "Technospheres(TM) for pulmonary and nasal applications." *Respiratory Drug Delivery VIII*, 2002, p. 545.
- Wilson et al., Spray-drying, a viable technosphere formulation process option to lyophilization, [http://www.aapsj.org/abstracts/AM\\_2004/AAPS2004-002724.PDF](http://www.aapsj.org/abstracts/AM_2004/AAPS2004-002724.PDF), 1 page, 2004.
- Witchert, Low molecular weight PLA: A suitable polymer for pulmonary administered microparticles. *J. Microencapsulation*, 10(2): 195-207 (1993).
- Wright et al., Inhaled Insulin: Breathing new life into diabetes therapy. *Nursing*, vol. 37, No. 1, p. 46-48 (2007).
- Wong et al., "From cradle to grave: pancreatic b-cell mass and glucagon-like peptide-1." *Minerva Endocrinologica* 31:107, 2006.
- Wuts et al., "The Role of Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis," John Wiley, New York, 2nd Ed. 1991.
- Yan et al., Analgesic action of microinjection of neurokinin A into the lateral reticular nucleus and nucleus raphe magnus in rats. *Acta Physiologica Sinica*, vol. 48, No. 5, pp. 493-496 (1996)—abstract.
- Yang et al., Division and differentiation of natural antibody-producing cells in mouse spleen. *PNAS*, 104(11): 4542-4546 (2007).
- Yoshida et al., Absorption of insulin delivered to rabbit trachea using aerosol dosage form. *J. Pharm. Sci.* 68(5): 670-671 (1979).
- Yoshioka et al., "Serum proinsulin levels at fasting and after oral glucose load in patients with Type 2 (non-insulin dependent) diabetes mellitus", *Diabetologia*, 1988, 31, 355-60.
- Yu W, Marino MT, Cassidy JP, et al. Insulin antibodies associated with Technosphere® insulin. ADA 2010; Abstract 216-OR.
- Yusta B et al., "GLP-1 receptor activation improves b-cell function and survival following induction of endoplasmic reticulum stress." *Cell Metabolism* 4:391, 2006.
- Zander et al., Effect of 6-week course of glucagon-like peptide 1 on glycaemic control, insulin sensitivity, and beta-cell function in type 2 diabetes: a parallel-group study. *Lancet*, 359:824-830, 2002.
- Zethelius et al., "Proinsulin is an Independent Predictor of Coronary Heart Disease", *Circulation* 105:2153-2158 (2002).
- Zimmerman, K., "Respiratory System: Fats, Function, and Diseases", <[www.livescience.com/22616-respiratory-system.html](http://www.livescience.com/22616-respiratory-system.html)>, copyright 2013, p. 1.
- Zisser et al., "In Patients Using Technosphere Insulin. Variation in PPG Stayed Within ADA-recommended Targets Despite Large Variations in Glucose Load." Mannkind Corporation (2010), ADA 2010; Poster 554.
- Zisser H, Jovanovic L, Markova K, et al. Technosphere® insulin effectively controls postprandial glycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes Technology and Therapeutics* 2012;14:997-1001.
- Wasada, Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1). *Nihon Rinsho*, vol. 62, No. 6, pp. 1175-1180 (2004) (full Japanese article with English abstract).
- Pfuetzner A, Rave K, Heise T, et al. Inhaled Technosphere™/insulin results in low variability in metabolic action in type 2 diabetic patients. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 2000; 108:S161.
- Pfuetzner A, Rave K, Heise T, et al. Low variability in metabolic action in type 2 diabetic patients with inhaled Technosphere/insulin. *Diabetologia* 2000; 43:Abstract 774.
- Phillips M, Amin N, Boss AH, et al. Pulmonary functions (over 2 years) in diabetic subjects treated with Technosphere® insulin or usual antidiabetic treatment. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Pohl R, Muggenberg BA, Wilson BR, et al. A dog model as predictor of the temporal properties of pulmonary Technosphere/Insulin in humans. *Respiratory Drug Delivery* 2000; VII: 463-465.
- Potocka E, Amin N, Cassidy J, et al. Insulin pharmacokinetics following dosing with Technosphere® insulin in subjects with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Current Medical Research and Opinion* 2010; 26:2347-2353.
- Potocka E, Baughman R A, Derendorf H. Population pharmacokinetic model of human insulin following different routes of administration. *Journal of Clinical Pharmacology* 2011;51:1015-1024.
- Potocka E, Baughman R, Derendorf H. Population Pharmacokinetic Model of Regular Human Insulin Following Different Routes of Administration. *AAPS Journal*. 2009; 11(51). Available from: <http://www.aapsj.org>. Presented at the 2009 AAPS (American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists) National Biotechnology Conference, Jun. 21-24, Seattle, WA.
- Potocka E, Baughman RA, Derendorf J. A population PK/PD model of Technosphere® insulin administered to healthy and type 2 diabetics. ADA 2010; Poster 624.
- Potocka E, Baughman RA, Schwartz SL, et al. Pharmacokinetics of AFRESA® unchanged in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary function ADA 2009; Poster 437.
- Potocka E, Cassidy J P, Haworth P, et al. Pharmacokinetic characterization of the novel pulmonary delivery excipient fumaryl diketopiperazine. *Journal of diabetes science and technology* 2010;4:1164-1173.
- Potocka E, Cassidy JR Haworth P, et al. Pharmacokinetic characterization of fumaryl diketopiperazine. Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes 2010; Poster 291.
- Potocka E, Hovorka R, Baughman R, et al. Characterization of metabolism parameters following Technosphere® insulin and insulin Lispro. ADA 2010; Poster 1561.
- Potocka E, Hovorka R, Baughman RA, et al. AFRESA™ suppresses endogenous glucose production earlier than a rapid-acting analog (Lispro) and inhaled Exubera® ADA 2009; Oral 232.
- Potocka E, Hovorka R, Baughman RA, et al. Technosphere® insulin suppresses endogenous glucose production earlier than a rapid-acting analog (lispro) and an inhaled insulin (exubera). *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Prabhu et al., "A study of factors controlling dissolution kinetic of zinc complexed protein suspensions in various ionic species", *Int. J. Pharm.* 217(1-2):71-8 (2001).
- Pulmonary Delivery: Innovative Technologies breathing new life into inhalable therapeutics, *Ondrug Delivery*, MannKind, pp. 1-24 (2006).
- Quattrin et al., "Efficacy and Safety of Inhaled Insulin (Exubera) Compared with Subcutaneous Insulin Therapy in Patients with Type 1 Diabetes." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 27, No. 11, Nov. 2004, p. 2622-2627.
- Quddusi et al., "Differential effects of acute and extended infusions of glucagon-like peptide-1 on first- and second-phase insulin secretion in diabetic and nondiabetic humans." *Diabetes Care* 26:791, 2003.

(56)

## References Cited

## OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Rachman et al. "Normalization of insulin responses to glucose by overnight infusion of glucagon-like peptide 1 (7-36) amide in patients with NIDDM." *Diabetes* 45:1524, 1996.
- Raju et al., Nasaseazines A and B: a new dimeric diketopiperazine framework from a marine-derived actinomycete, *Streptomyces* sp. *Organic letters*, vol. 11, No. 17, pp. 3862-3865 (2009).
- Raskin P, Heller S, Honka M, et al. Pulmonary function over 2 years in diabetic patients treated with prandial inhaled Technosphere® Insulin or usual antidiabetes treatment: A randomized trial. *Diabetes, Obesity and Metabolism* 2012;14:163-173.
- Raskin P, Phillips M, Amin N, et al. Hypoglycemia in patients with type 1 diabetes incorporating prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin into their usual diabetes treatment regimen vs continuing their usual diabetes management. AACE 2010; Poster 283.
- Raskin P, Phillips MD, Rossiter A, et al. A1C and hypoglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus incorporating prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin into their usual antihyperglycemic regimen vs continuing their usual antihyperglycemic regimen. ADA 2010; Abstract 359-OR.
- Raufman et al., Exendin-3, a novel peptide from *Heloderma horridum* venom, interacts with vasoactive intestinal peptide receptors and a newly described receptor on dispersed acini from guinea pig pancreas. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266(5) : 2897-2902 (1991).
- Raufman et al., Truncated glucagon-like peptide-1 interacts with exendin receptors on dispersed acini from guinea pig pancreas. *J. Biol. Chem.* 267(30) : 21432-21437 (1992).
- Raun et al. "Liraglutide, a long-acting glucagon-like peptide-1 analog, reduces body weight and food intake in obese candy-fed rats, where as a dipeptidyl peptidase-IV inhibitor, vildagliptin, does not." *Diabetes* 56:8, 2007.
- Rave et al. "Coverage of Postprandial Blood Glucose Excursions with Inhaled Technosphere Insulin in Comparison to Subcutaneously Injected Regular Human Insulin in Subjects with Type 2 Diabetes." *Diabetes Care*, vol. 30, No. 9, pp. 2307-2308, Sep. 2007.
- Rave et al. "Dose Response of Inhaled Dry-Powder Insulin and Dose Equivalence to Subcutaneous Insulin Lispro." *Diabetes Care* 28:2400-2405, 2005.
- Rave et al. "Inhaled Technosphere Insulin in Comparison to Subcutaneous Regular Human Insulin: Time Action Profile and Variability in Subjects with Type 2 Diabetes." *Journal of Diabetes Science and Technology*, vol. 2, Issue 2, pp. 205-212, Mar. 2008.
- Rave et al. "Time-action profile of inhaled insulin in comparison with subcutaneously injected insulin lispro and regular human insulin." *Diabetes Care* 28:1077, 2005.
- Rave K, Heise T, Pfuetzner A, et al. Assessment of dose-response characteristics for a new pulmonary insulin formulation and inhaler. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 2000; 108:S161.
- Rave K, Potocka E, Boss AH, et al. Pharmacokinetics and linear exposure of AFRESA™ compared with the subcutaneous injection of regular human insulin *Diabetes, Obesity and Metabolism* 2009; 11:715-720.
- Razavi et al. "TRPV1+ sensory neurons control beta cell stress and islet inflammation in autoimmune disease." *Cell* 127:1123, 2006. Retrieved from website: <http://groups.molbiosci.northwestern.edu/holmgren/Glossary/Definitions/Def-P/placebo.html>, 1 page, Retrieved on Mar. 12, 2013.
- Richardson et al. "Technosphere Insulin Technology." *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, vol. 9, Supplement 1, pp. S65-S72, 2007.
- Richardson PC, Potocka E, Baughman RA, et al. Pharmacokinetics of Technosphere® insulin unchanged in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Diabetologia* 2009; 52 (suppl 1).
- Richter et al. "Characterization of glucagon-like peptide-1(7-36)amide receptors of rat membranes by covalent cross-linking." *FEBS Letters* 280:247, 1991.
- Richter et al. "Characterization of receptors for glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36)amide on rat lung membranes." *FEBS Letters* 267:78, 1990.
- Riddle "Combining Sulfonylureas and Other Oral Agents." *Am J Med*, 2000, vol. 108(6A), pp. 15S-22S.
- Riddle et al. "Emerging therapies mimicking the effects of amylin and glucagon-like peptide 1." *Diabetes Care* 29:435, 2006.
- Ritzel et al. "Pharmacokinetic, insulinotropic, and glucagonostatic properties of GLP-1 (7-36 amide) after subcutaneous injection in healthy volunteers. Dose-response-relationships." *Diabetologia* 38:720, 1995.
- Rosen et al., Substance P microinjected into the periaqueductal gray matter induces antinociception and is released following morphine administration. *Brain Research*, 1001: 87-94 (2004).
- Rosenmund et al., Diketopiperazines from Leuchs Anhydrides. *Angew Chem Intern. Edit. Vol. , No. 2* (1970).
- Rosenstock "Dual therapy with inhaled human insulin (Exubera(R)) as add-on to metformin (with stopping sulfonurea) is better than triple therapy with rosiglitazone add-on to combination metformin and sulfonurea in poorly controlled Type 2 diabetes." *Diabetes* 57:supplement 1:A557, Abstract 2018-PO, 2008.
- Li et al. "GLP-1; a novel zinc finger protein required in somatic cells of the gonad for germ cell development." *Dev Biol* 301:106, 2007.
- Li, Jun. Chapter 15: Drug Therapy of Metabolic Diseases. *Clinical Pharmacotherapy*, People's Medical Publishing House, 1st Edition, pp. 333-335 (2007).
- Lim, "Microencapsulation of Living Cells and Tissues", *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 70: 351-354 (1981).
- Liu et al., "Pulmonary delivery of free and liposomal insulin", *Pharmaceuticals Res.* 10:228-232, 1993.
- Lorber D, Howard CP, Ren H, et al. Reduced incidence and frequency of hypoglycemia in an integrated analysis of pooled data from clinical trials of subjects with type 2 diabetes using prandial inhaled Technosphere® insulin. AACE 2010; Poster 270.
- Luque et al. "Glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) and glucose metabolism in human myocytes." *J. Endocrinol* 173:465, 2002.
- Luzi, L. and DeFronzo, R.A. "Effect of loss of first-phase insulin secretion on hepatic glucose production and tissue glucose disposal in humans." *Am. J. Physiol.* 257 (Endocrinol. Metab. 20):E241-E246, 1989.
- Luzio, S.D., et al. "Intravenous insulin simulates early insulin peak and reduces post-prandial hyperglycaemia/hyperinsulinaemia in type 2 (non-insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus." *Diabetes Res.* 16:63-67, 1991.
- Malhotra et al., *Regulatory Peptides*, 41:149-56, 1992.
- Mannkind Corporation "Postprandial hyperglycemia: clinical significance, pathogenesis and treatment." MannKind Corporation Monograph. 2009.
- Mannkind Corporation, *Pulmonary Delivery: Innovative Technologies Breathing New Life into Inhalable Therapeutics*, www.ondrugdelivery.com, 2006.
- Mannkind Corporation. *Technosphere Technology: A Platform for Inhaled Protein Therapeutics. Pulmonary Delivery*, (www.ondrugdelivery.com), pp. 8-11, 2006.
- Marino MT, Cassidy JP, Smutney CC, et al. Bioequivalence and dose proportionality of Afrezza® inhalation powder administered using a Gen2 inhaler compared to the MedTone® inhaler. *Diabetes Technology Meeting 2010*; poster.
- Marino MT, Cassidy JP, Smutney CC, et al. Improvement in bioavailability of FDKP with the NexGen2A device: Implications for delivery of pulmonary insulin. *Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes 2010*; Poster 108.
- Marino MT, Cassidy JP, Smutney CC, et al. Improvement in bioavailability of FDKP and insulin with the NGDSB device. *Third International Conference on Advanced Technologies and Treatments for Diabetes 2010*; Poster 107.
- Marino MT. A pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic model of inhaled insulin with application to clinical trial simulation. ADA 2010; Abstract 2105-PO.
- Marino MT, Cassidy JP, Baughman RA, et al. C-peptide correction method to determine exogenous insulin levels in pk studies using AFRESA® (Technosphere® insulin [TI]) ADA 2009; Poster 1451.
- Marshall "Preventing and detecting complications of diabetes." *BMJ* 333:455, 2006.

(56)

**References Cited****OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

Mastrandrea "A breath of life for inhaled insulin: severe subcutaneous insulin resistance as an indication." *Pediatric Diabetes* 2010: 11: 377-379.

Mathiowitz, Morphology of Polyanhydride Microsphere Delivery Systems, *Scanning Microscopy*, 4: 329-340 (1990).

Mathiowitz, Novel microcapsules for delivery systems. *Reactive Polymers*, 6: 275-283 (1987).

Mathiowitz, Polyanhydride microspheres as drug carriers I, hot-melt microencapsulation. *J. Controlled Medicine*, 5: 13-22 (1987).

Mathiowitz, Polyanhydride microspheres as drug carriers II, microencapsulation by solvent removal. *J. Appl. Polymer Sci.*, 35: 755-774 (1988).

Mathiowitz, Polyanhydride microspheres IV, morphology and characterization systems made by spray drying. *J. App. Polymer Sci.*, 45: 125-134 (1992).

Matsui et al. "Hyperplasia of type II pneumocytes in pulmonary lymphangioleiomyomatosis. Immunohistochemical and electron microscope study." *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 124:1642, 2000.

Matthews DR et al. "Homeostasis model assessment: insulin resistance and beta-cell function from fasting plasma glucose and insulin concentrations in man." *Diabetologia*. Jul. 1985;28(7):412-9.

McElduff A et al. "Influence of acute upper respiratory tract infection on the absorption of inhaled insulin using the AERx(R) insulin diabetes management system." *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 59:546, 2005.

McMahon et al., "Effects of basal insulin supplementation on disposition of mixed meal in obese patients with NIDDM", *Diabetes*, vol. 38, pp. 291-303 (1989).

Meier et al. "Absence of a memory effect for the insulinotropic action of glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1) in healthy volunteers." *Horm Metab Res* 35:551, 2003.

Meier et al. "Secretion, degradation, and elimination of glucagon-like peptide-1 and gastric inhibitor polypeptide in patients with chronic renal insufficiency and healthy control subjects." *Diabetes* 53:654, 2004.

Meier et al. "The glucagon-like peptide-1 metabolite GLP-1-(9-36) amide reduces postprandial glycemia independently of gastric emptying and insulin secretion in humans." *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 290:E1118, 2006.

Mendes et al., A non-dimensional functional relationship for the fine particle fraction produced by dry powder inhalers, *Aerosol Science* 38, pp. 612-624 (2007).

Mentlein et al., Dipeptidyl peptidase IV hydrolyses gastric inhibitory polypeptide, glucagon-like peptide-1 (7-36) amide, peptide histidine methionine and is responsible for their degradation in human serum. *Eur J Biochem.*, 214:829-835, 1993.

Merck Manual 17th, Japanese Edition, NIKKEI BP Corp., 1999, p. 167-179.

Mitchell et al. "Intranasal Insulin: PK Profile Designed Specifically for Prandial Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes." *Drug Development Research* 69(3):143-152 (2008).

Montrose-Rafizadeh et al., *Diabetes*, 45(Suppl. 2):152A, 1996.

Moren, *Aerosols in Medicine* (2nd Ed.), Elsevier, pp. 321-350 (1993).

Mudaliar et al., *Insulin Therapy in Type 2 Diabetes. Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics*, vol. 30, No. 4, pp. 1-32 (2001).

Nagai et al., "Powder Dosage Form of Insulin for Nasal Administration", *J. Control Ref.*, 1:15-22 (1984).

Narayan et al. "Impact of recent increase in incidence on future diabetes burden." *Diabetes Care* 29:2114, 2006.

Naslund E et al. "GLP-1 slows solid gastric emptying and inhibits insulin, glucagon, and PYY release in humans." *Am J Physiol (Regulatory Integrative Comp Physiol)* 46(R910), 1999.

Naslund E et al. "Prandial subcutaneous injections of glucagon-like peptide-1 cause weight loss in obese human subjects." *Br J Nutrition* 91:439, 2004.

Marino MT, Cassidy JP, Smutney CC, et al. Improvement in bioavailability of FDKP with the NexGen2A device: Implications for delivery of pulmonary insulin. *Diabetes Technology Meeting 2009*; poster.

\* cited by examiner

FIG. 1

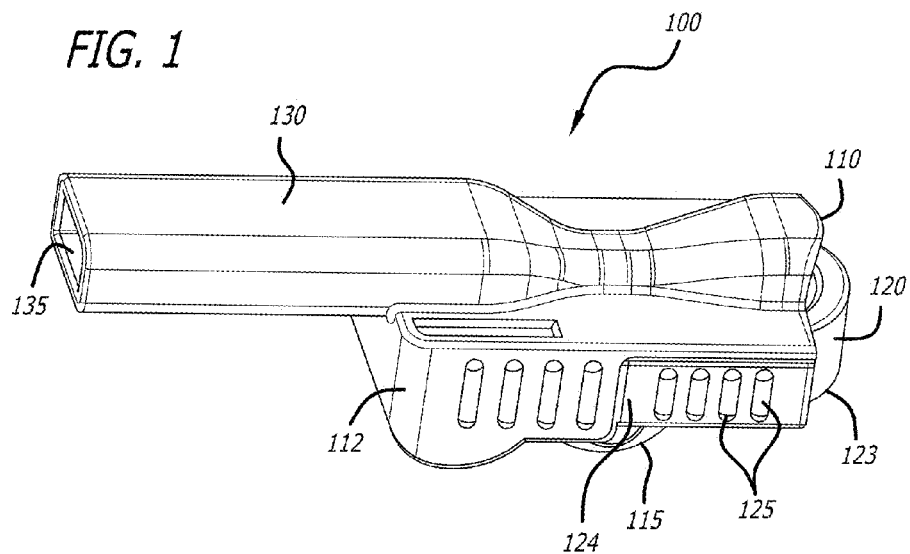
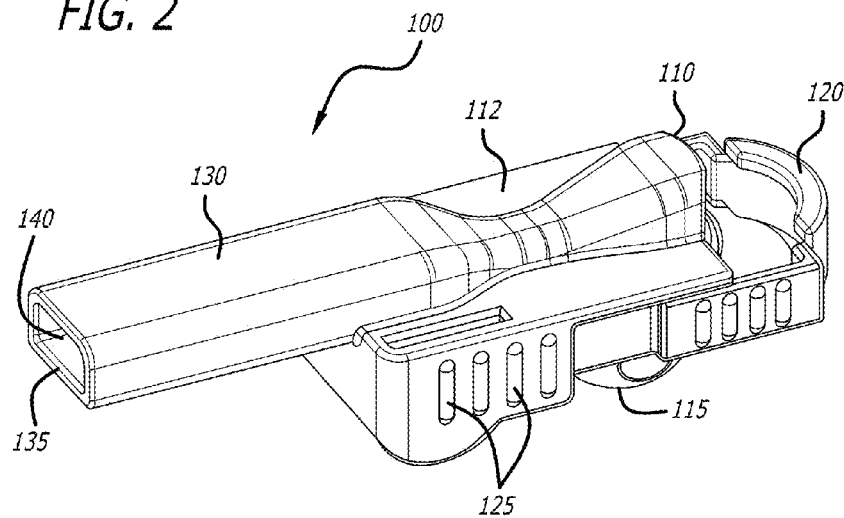


FIG. 2





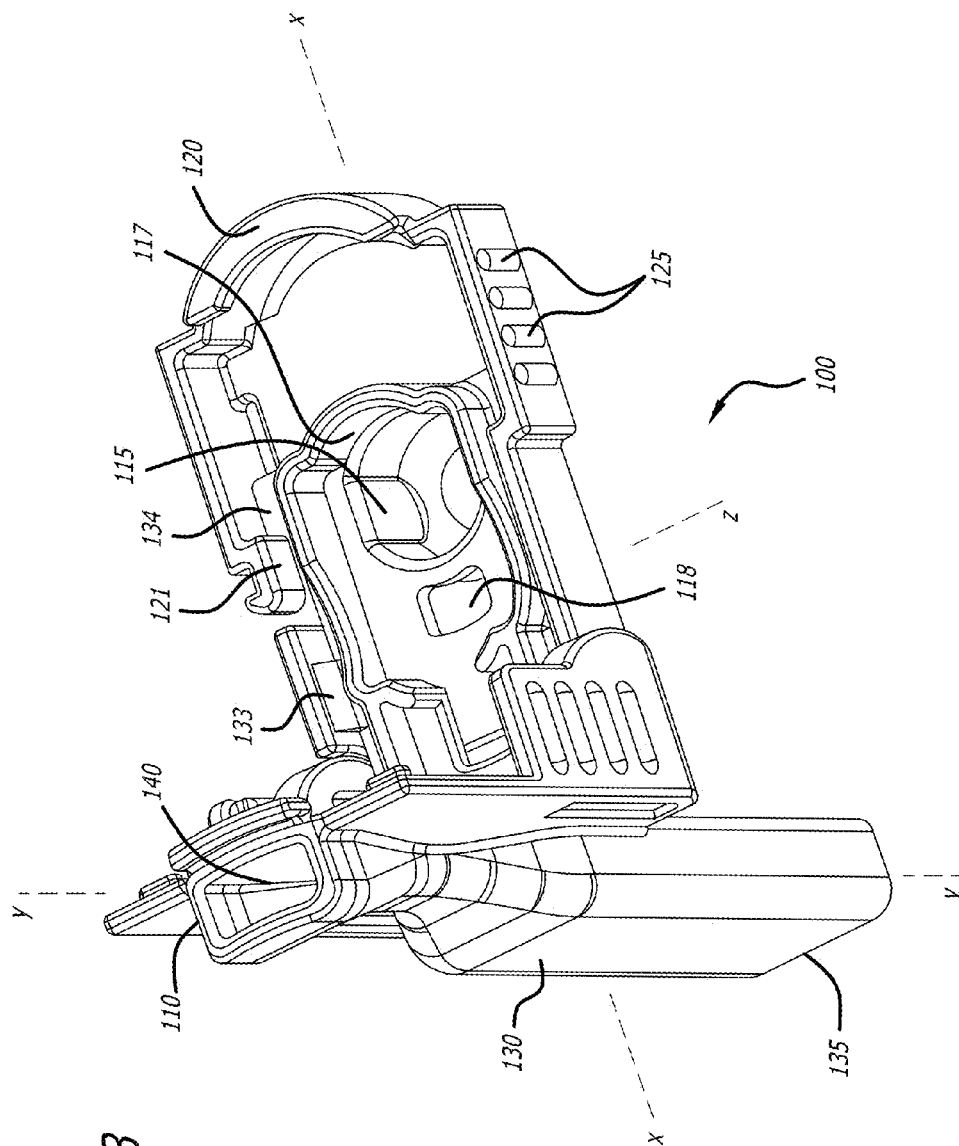
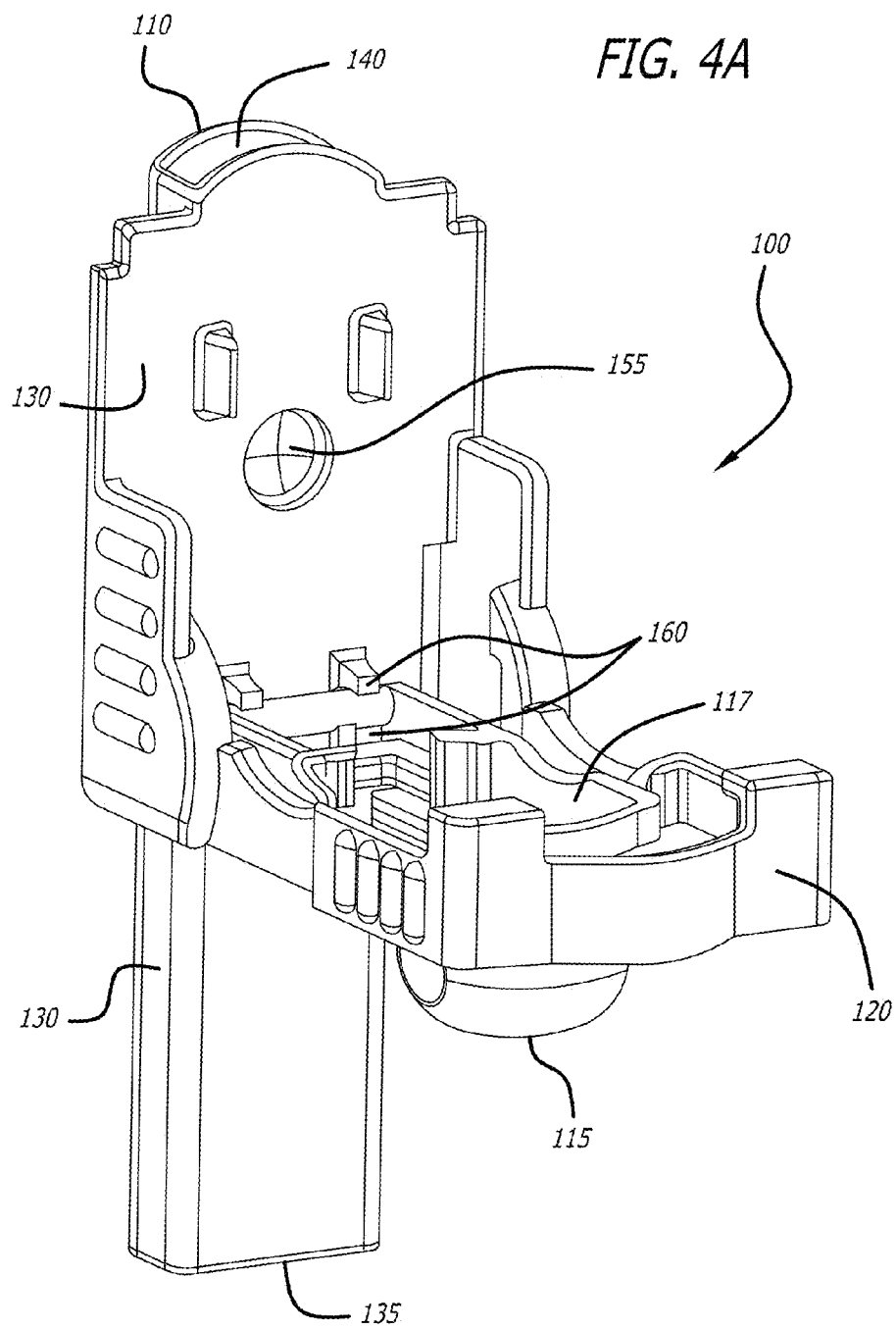
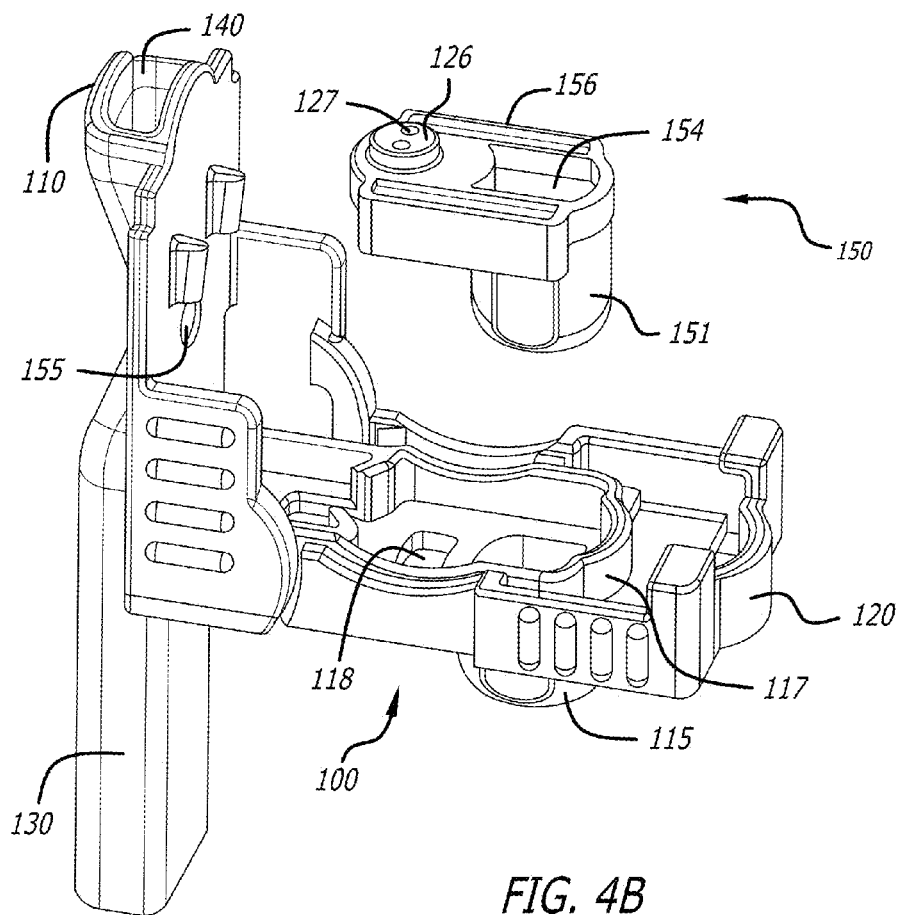
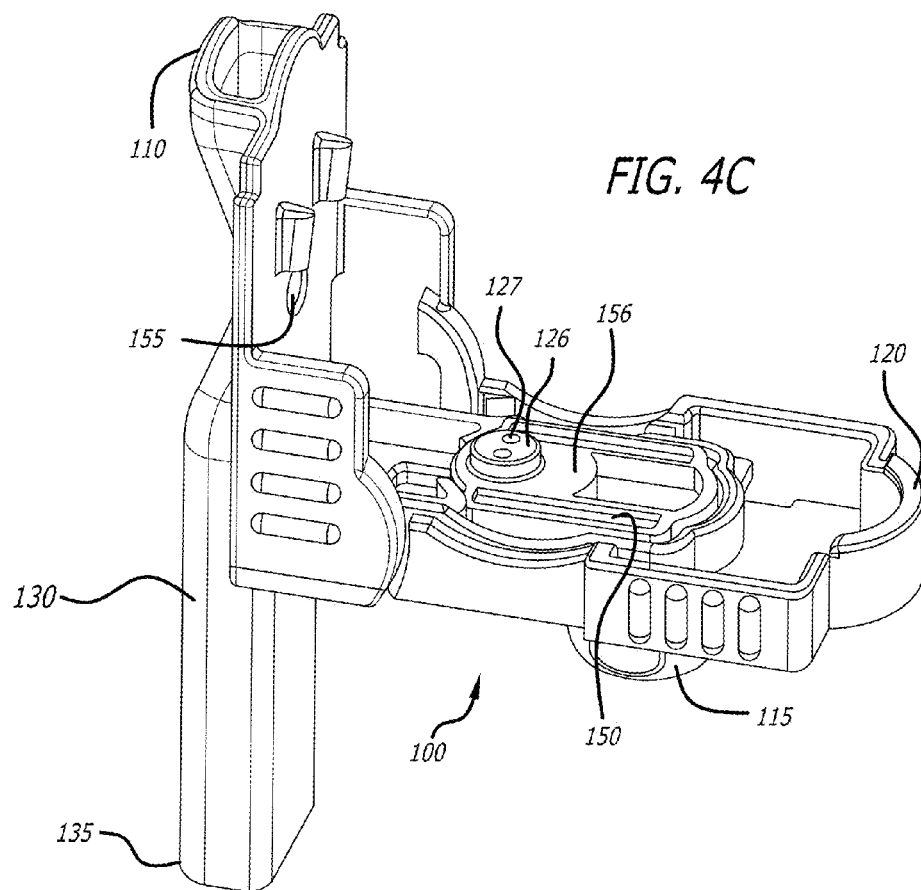


FIG. 3







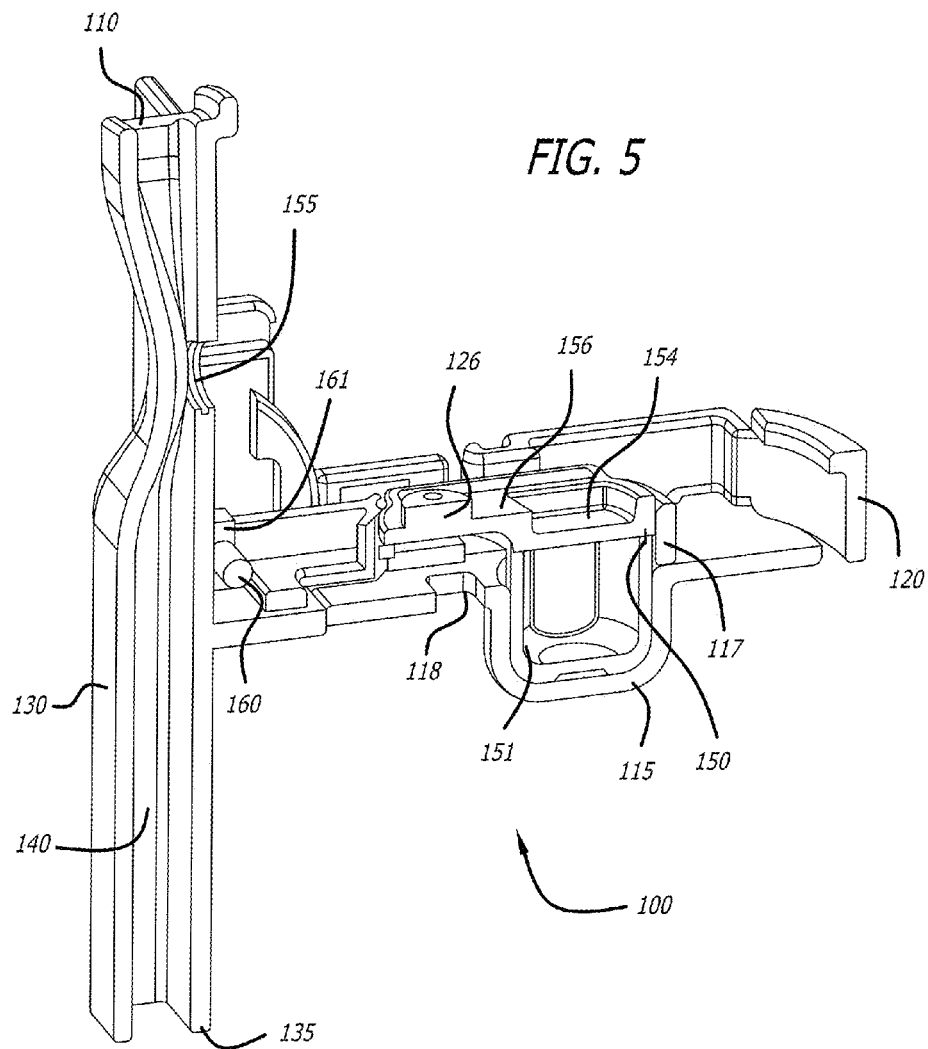
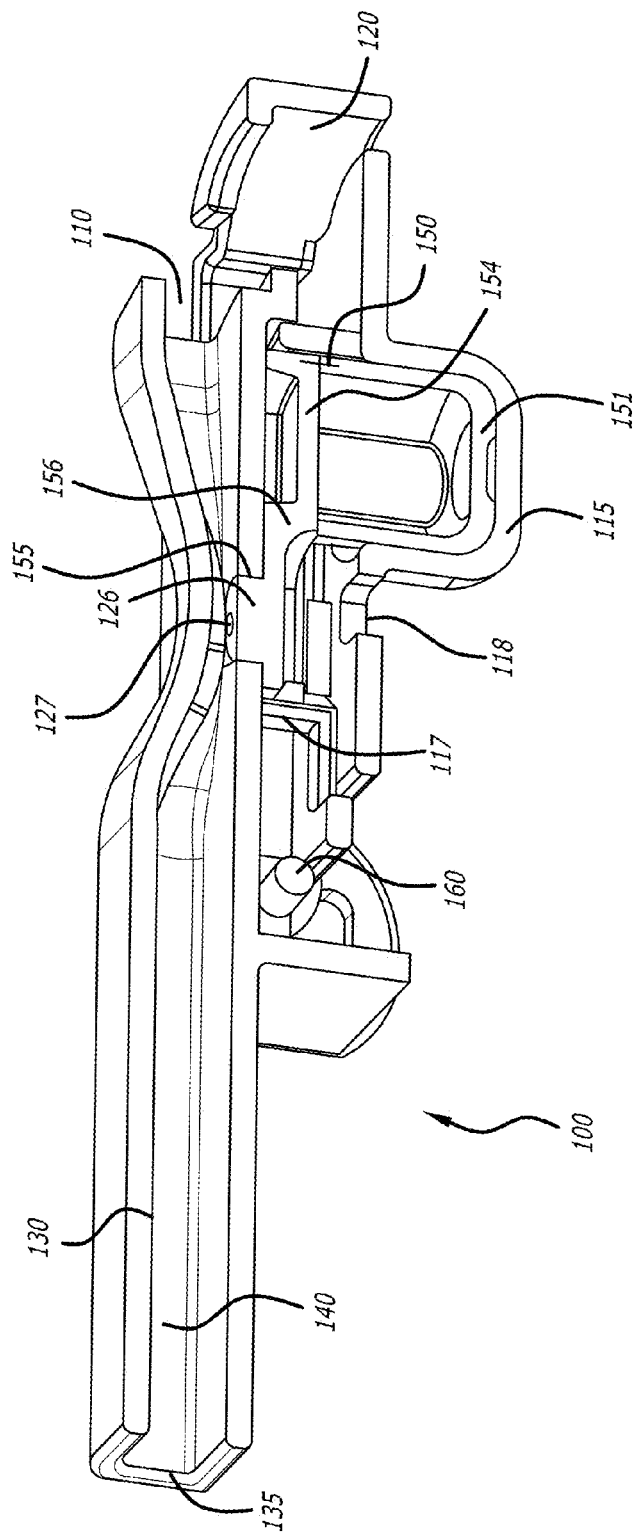


FIG. 6



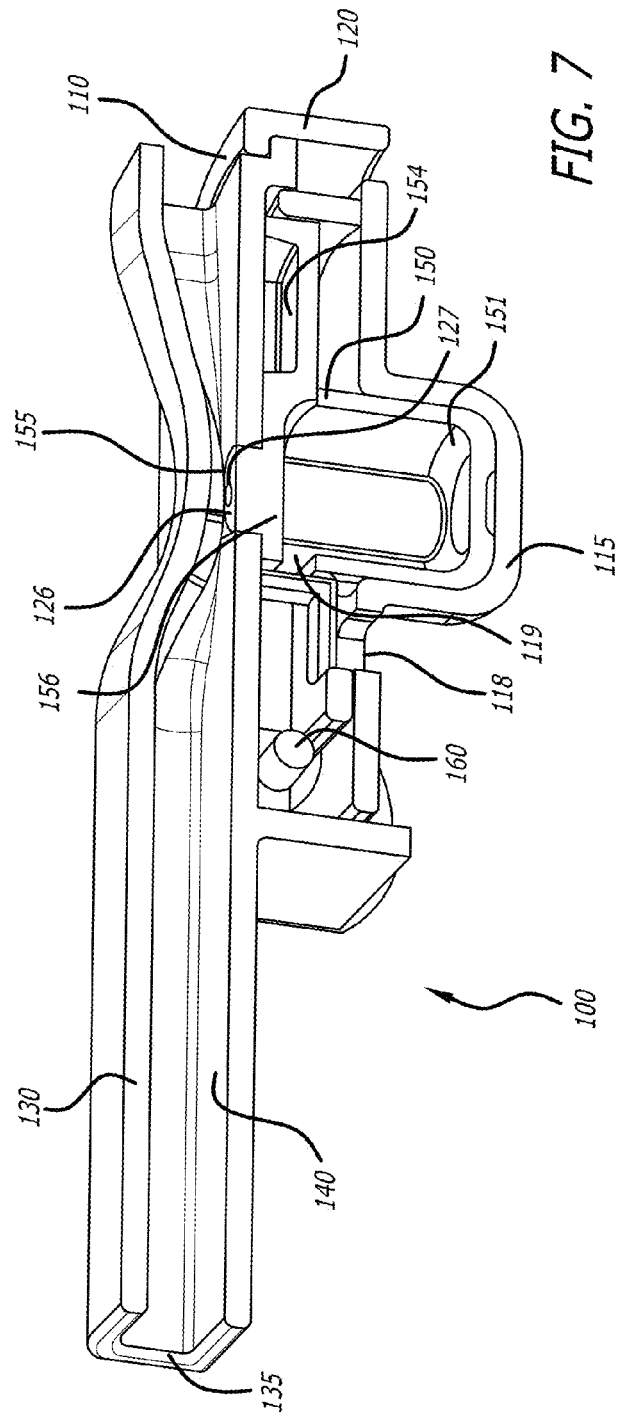


FIG. 7

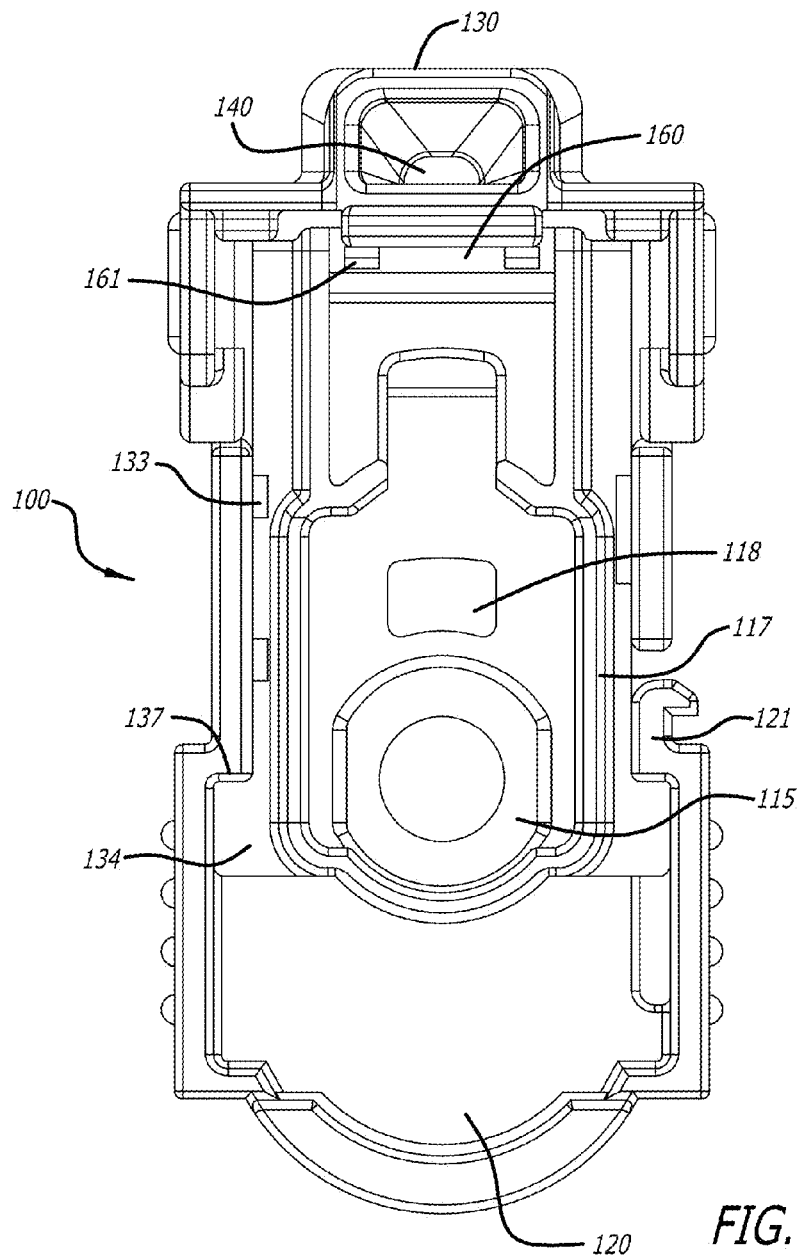
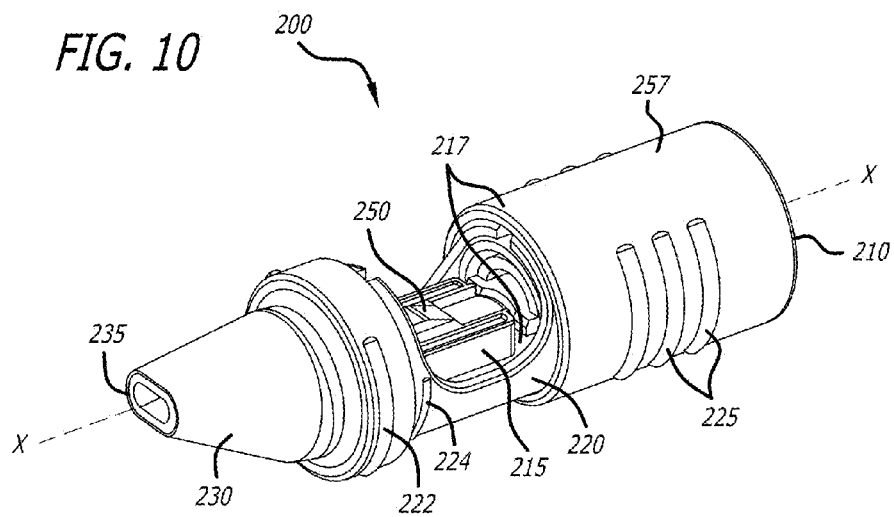
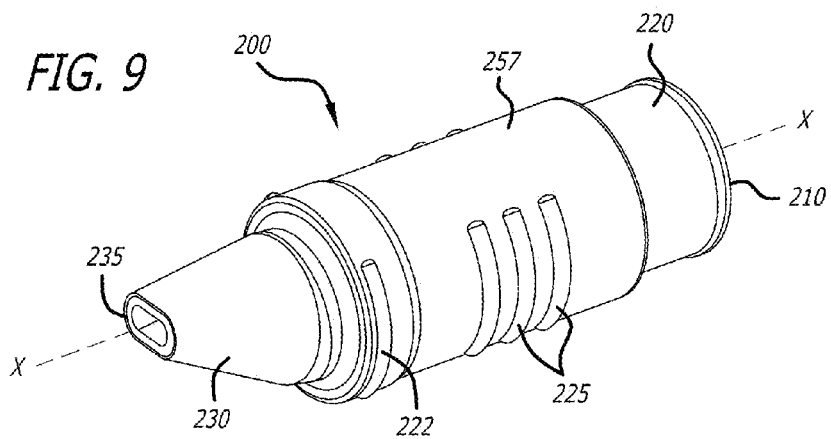
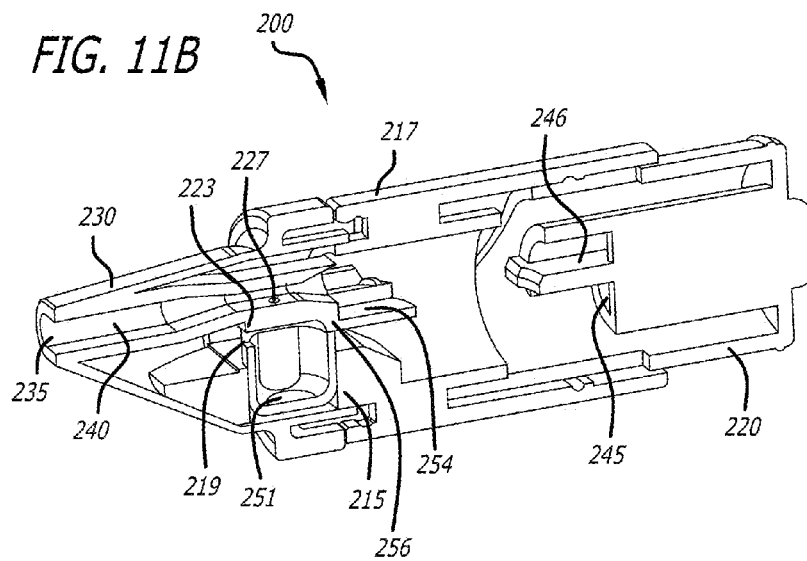
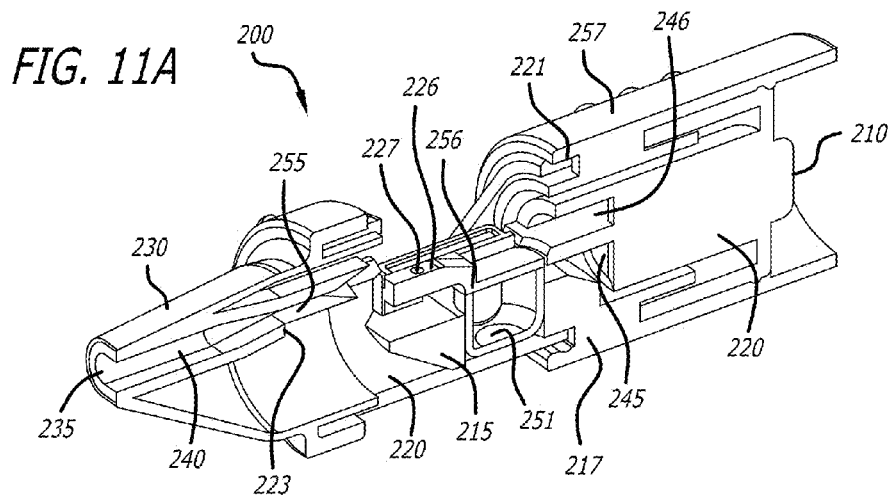
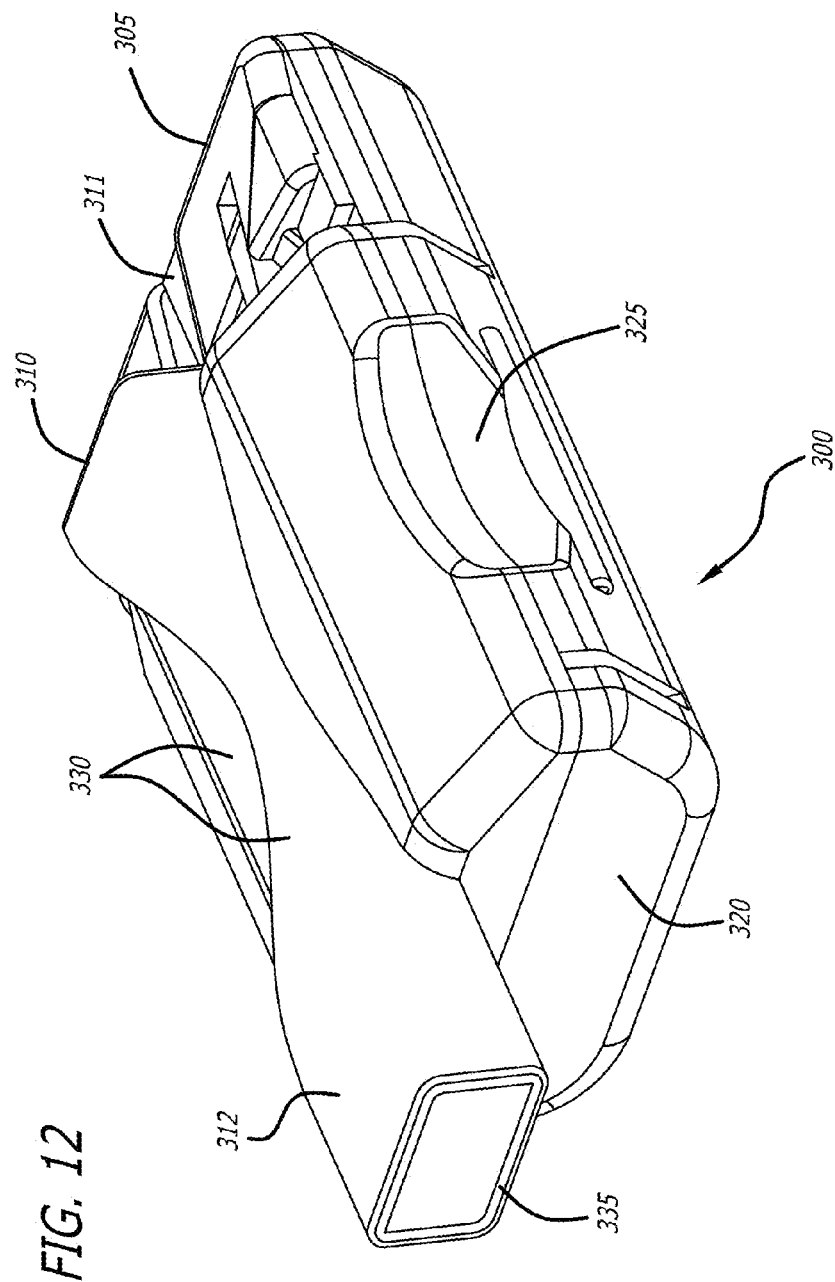


FIG. 8









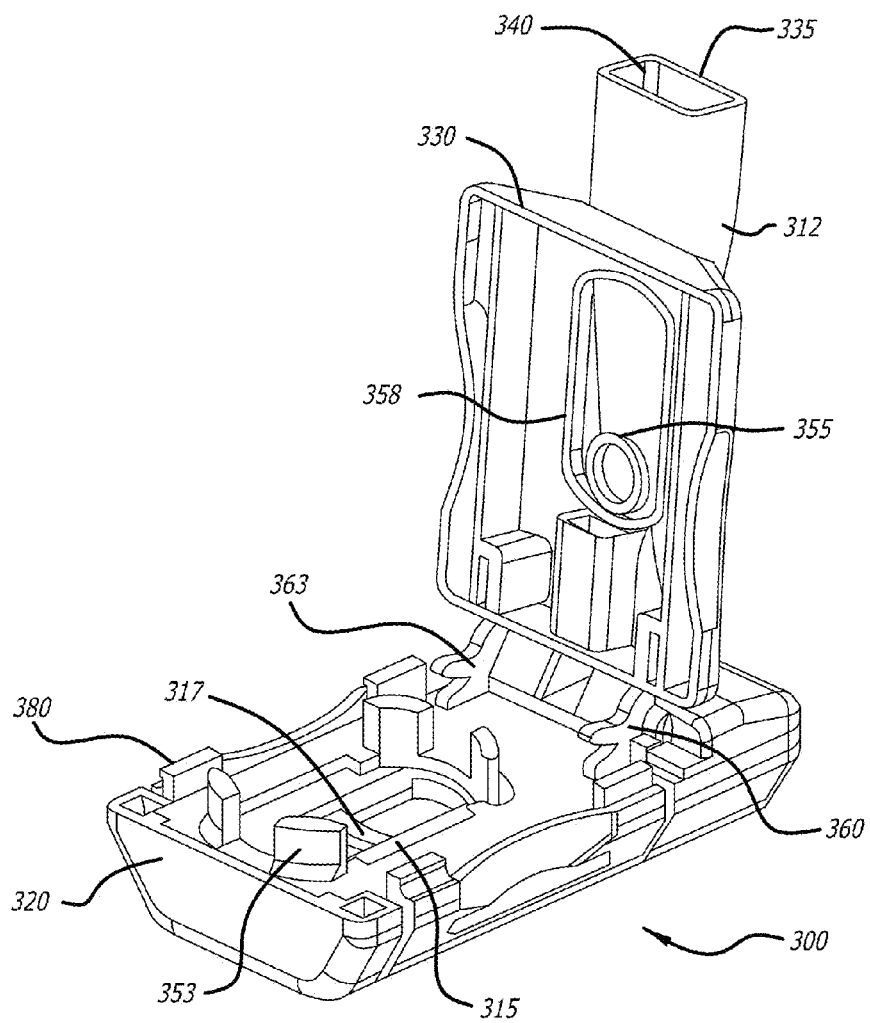


FIG. 13

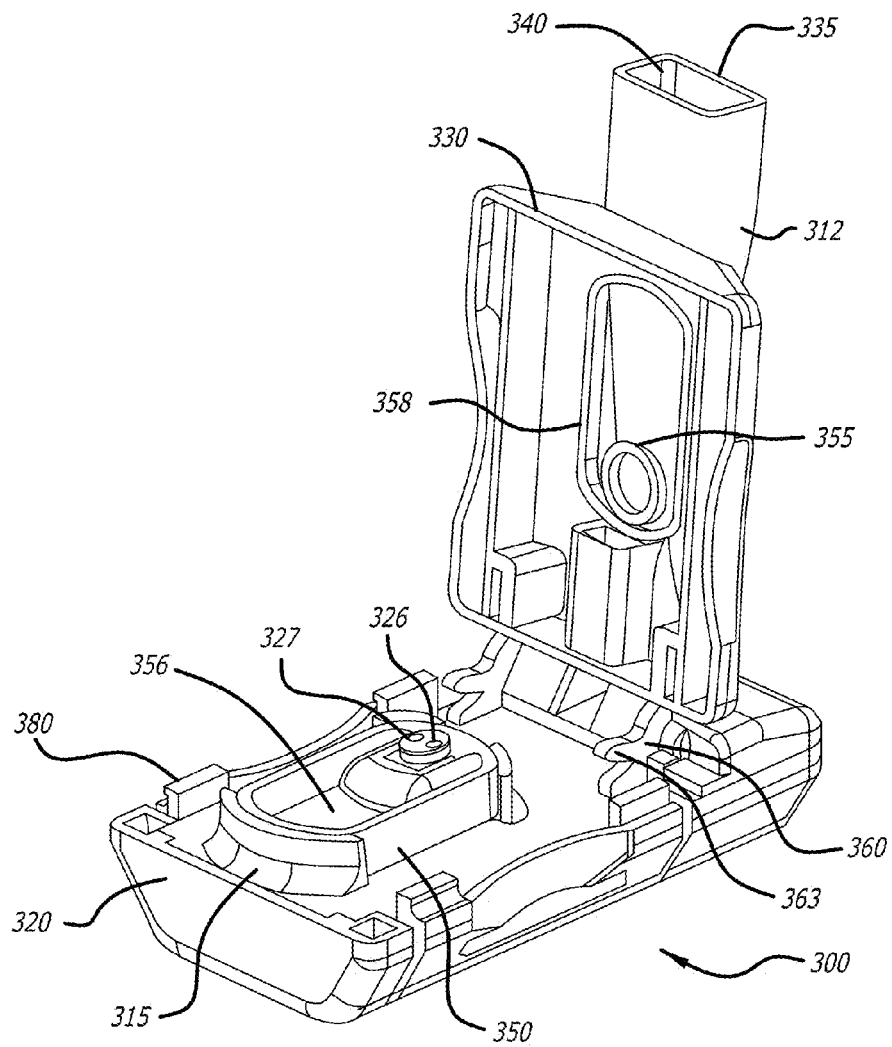
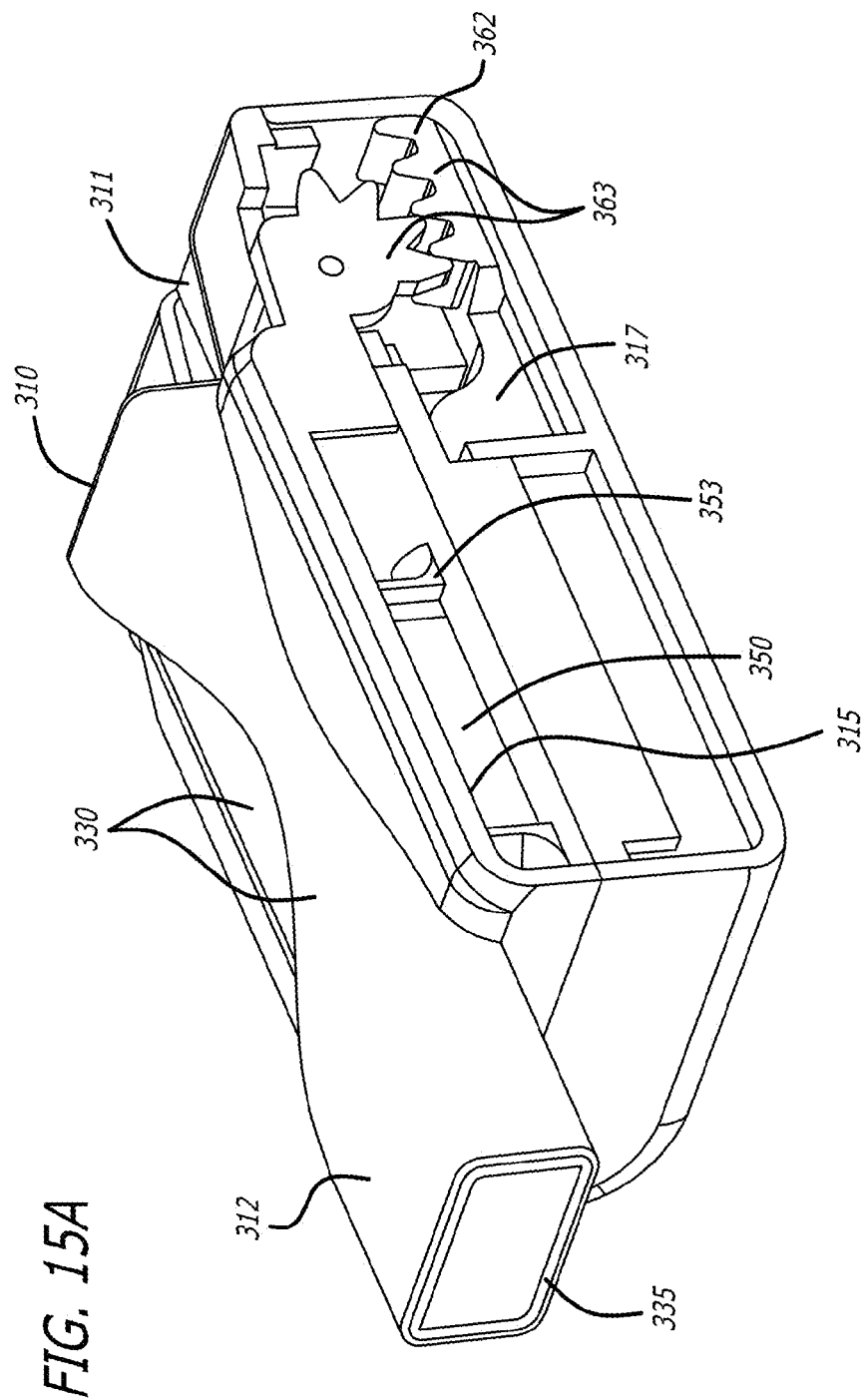
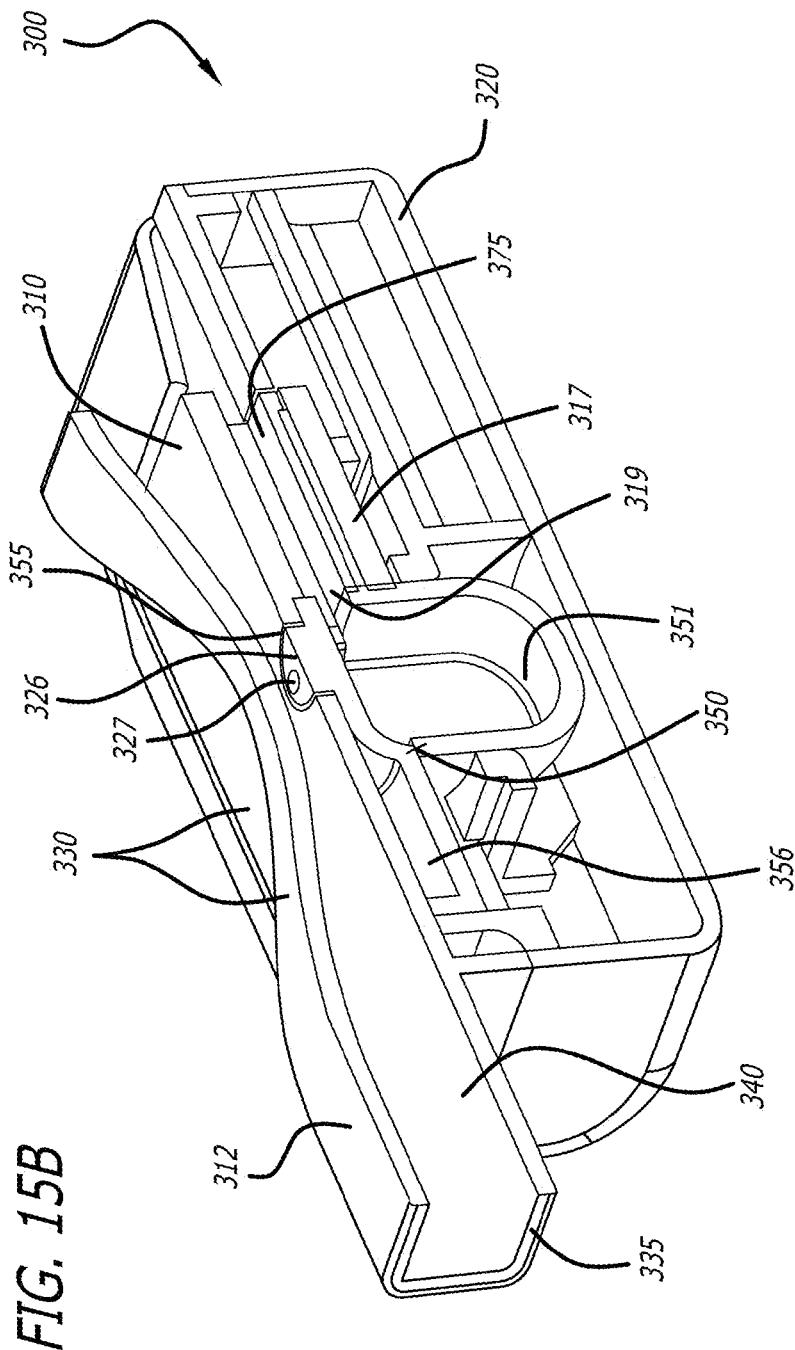
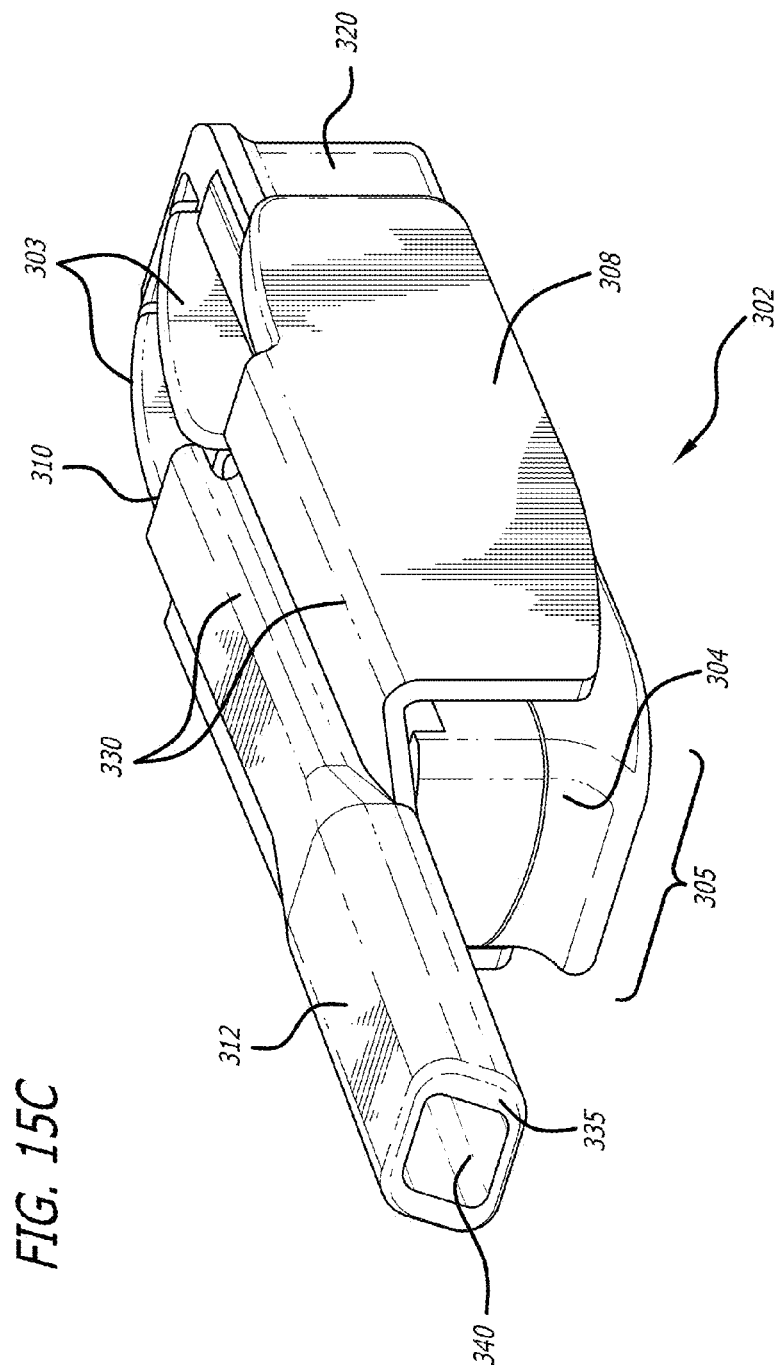


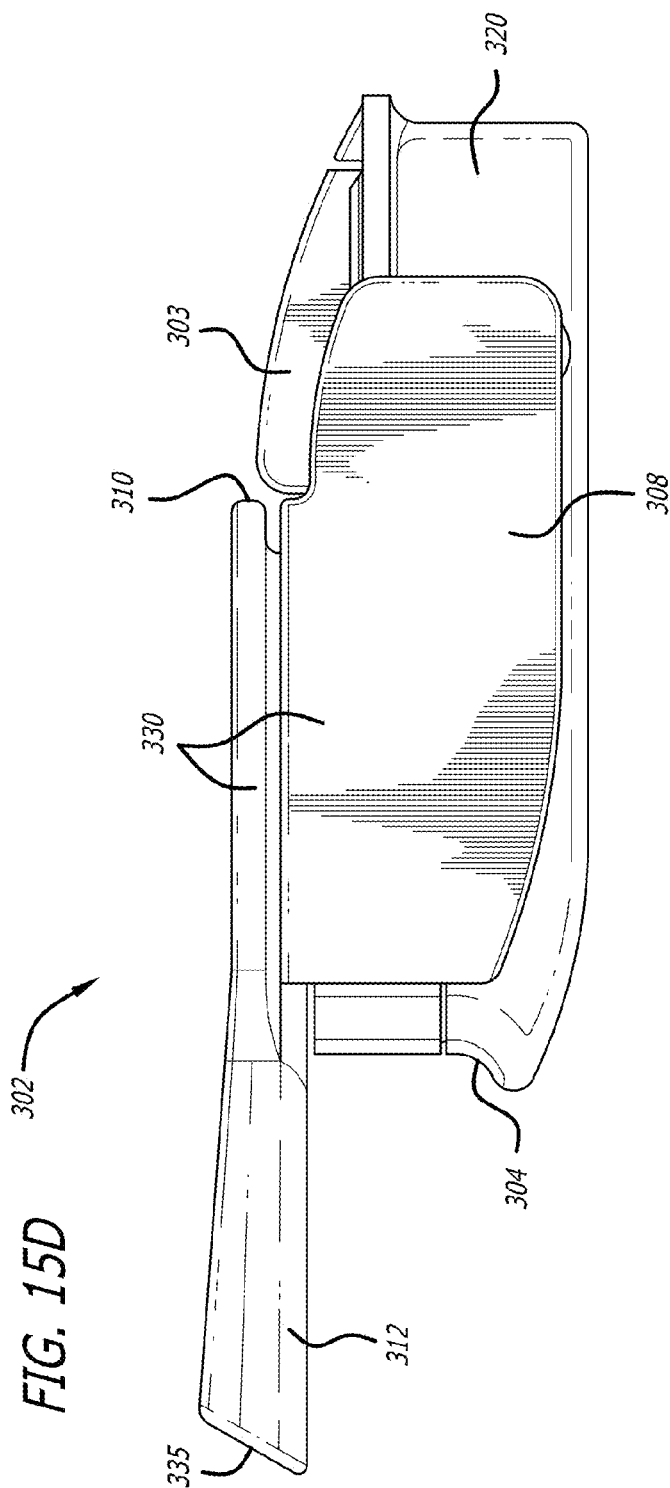
FIG. 14

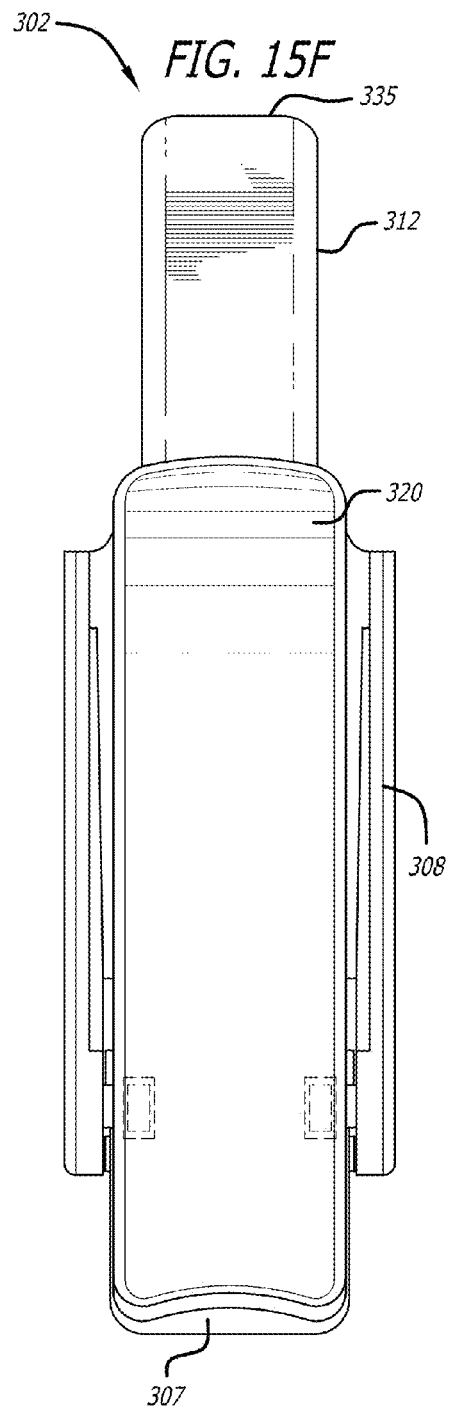
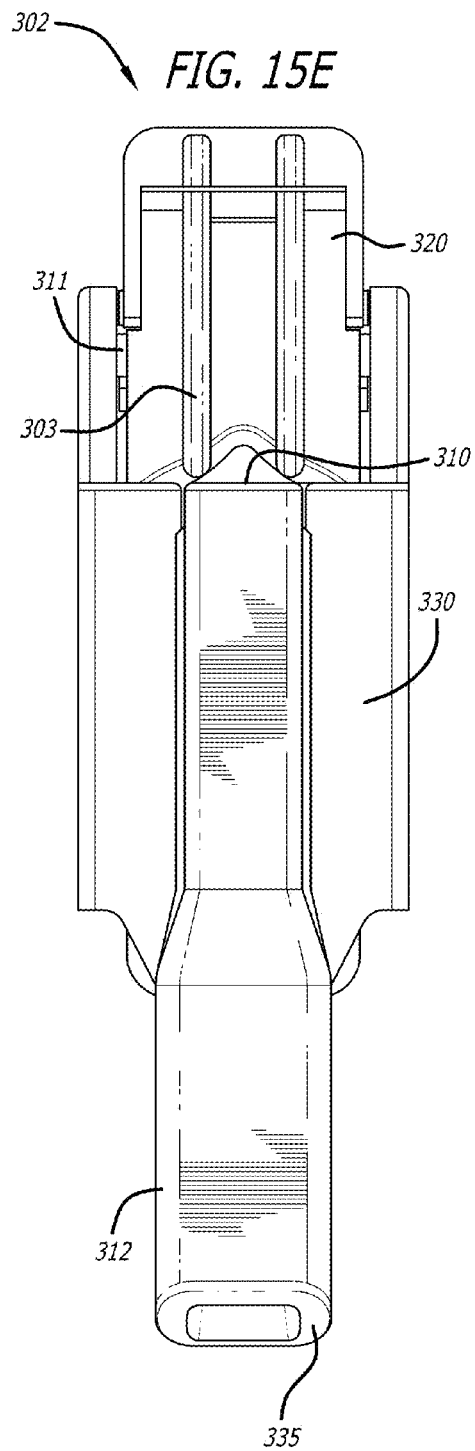


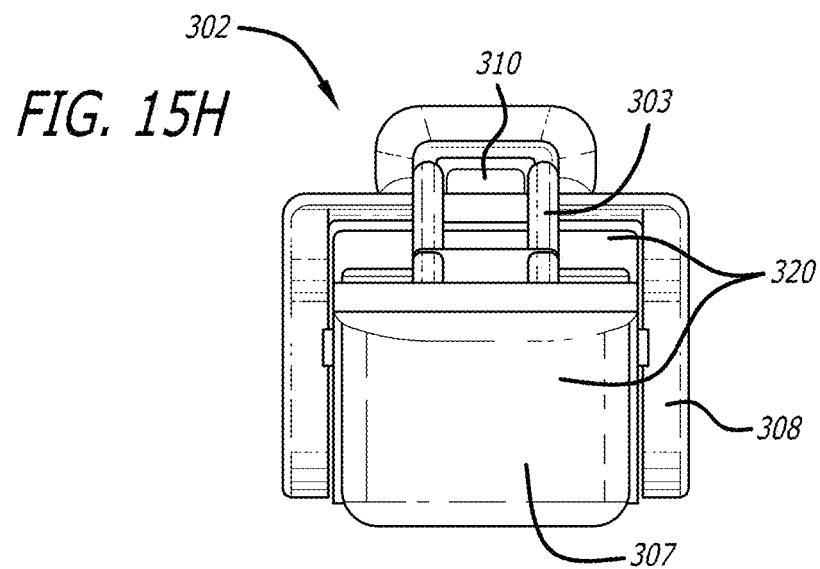
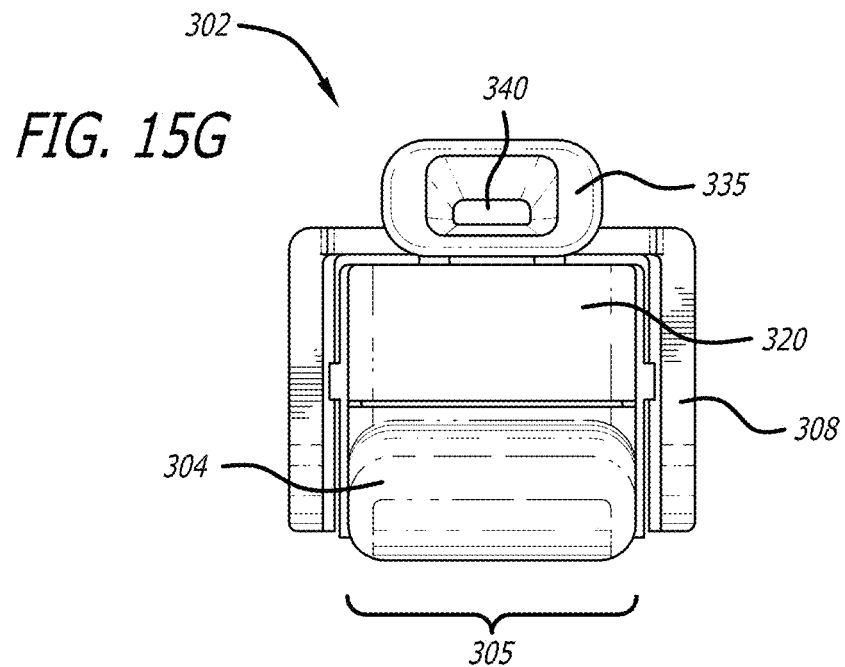












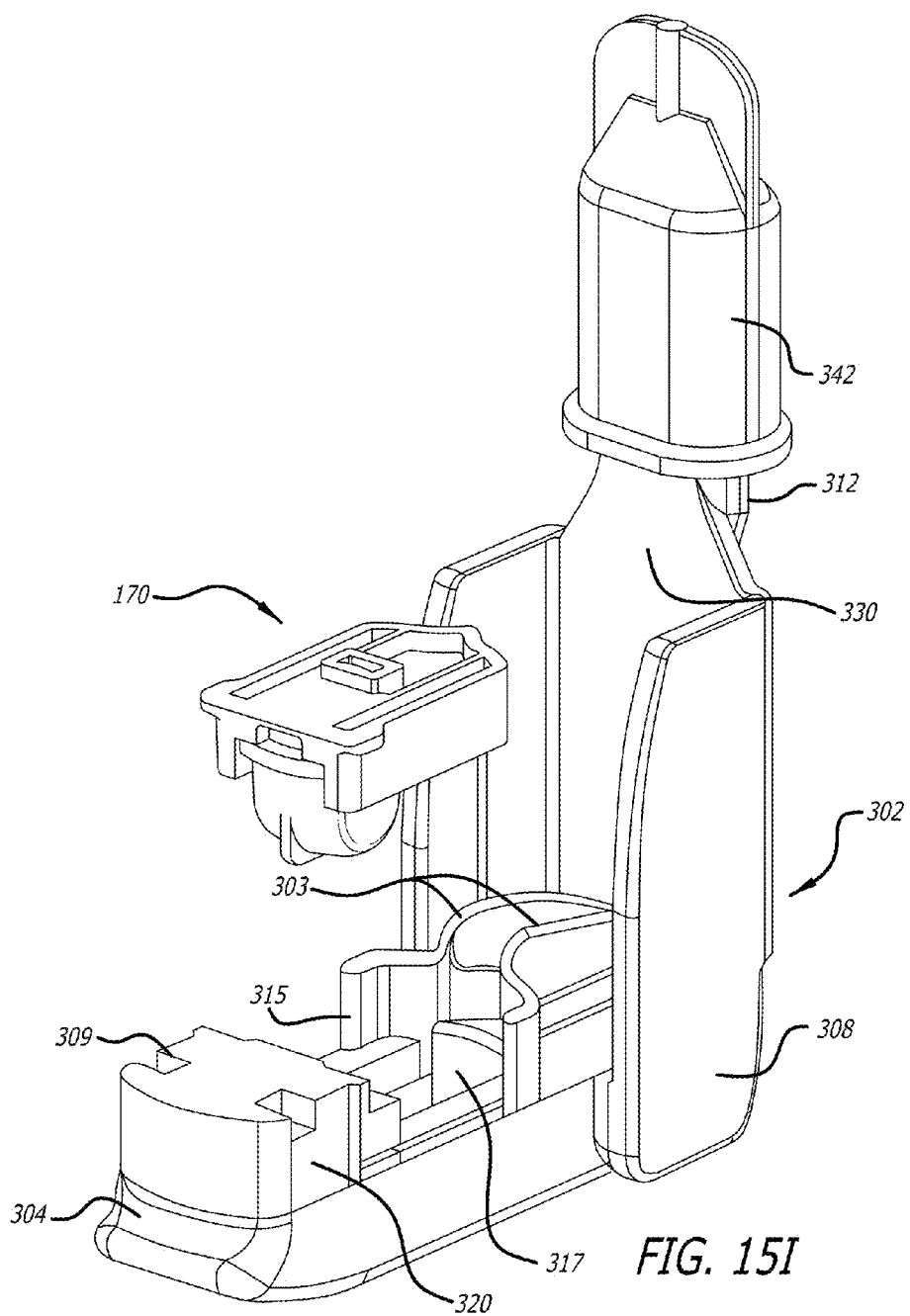
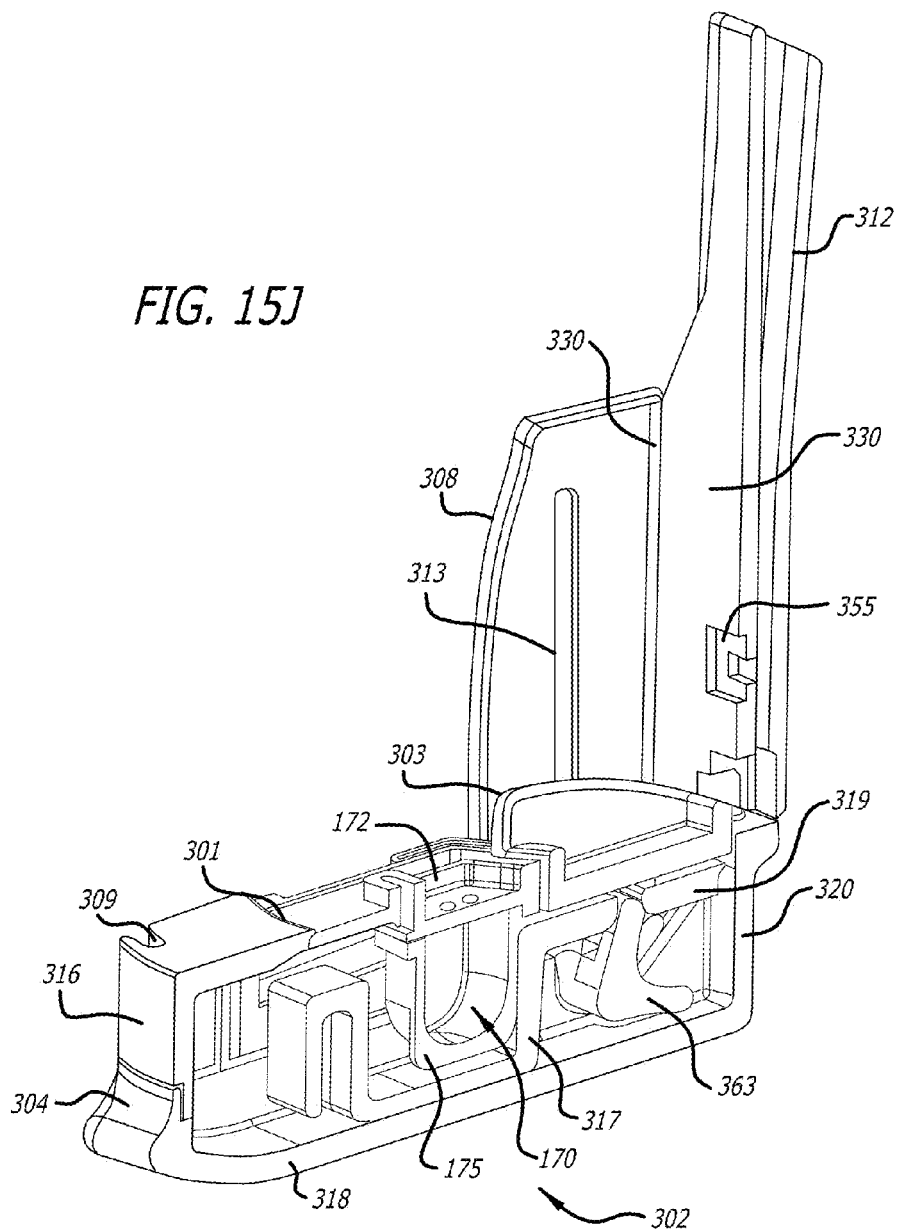


FIG. 15J



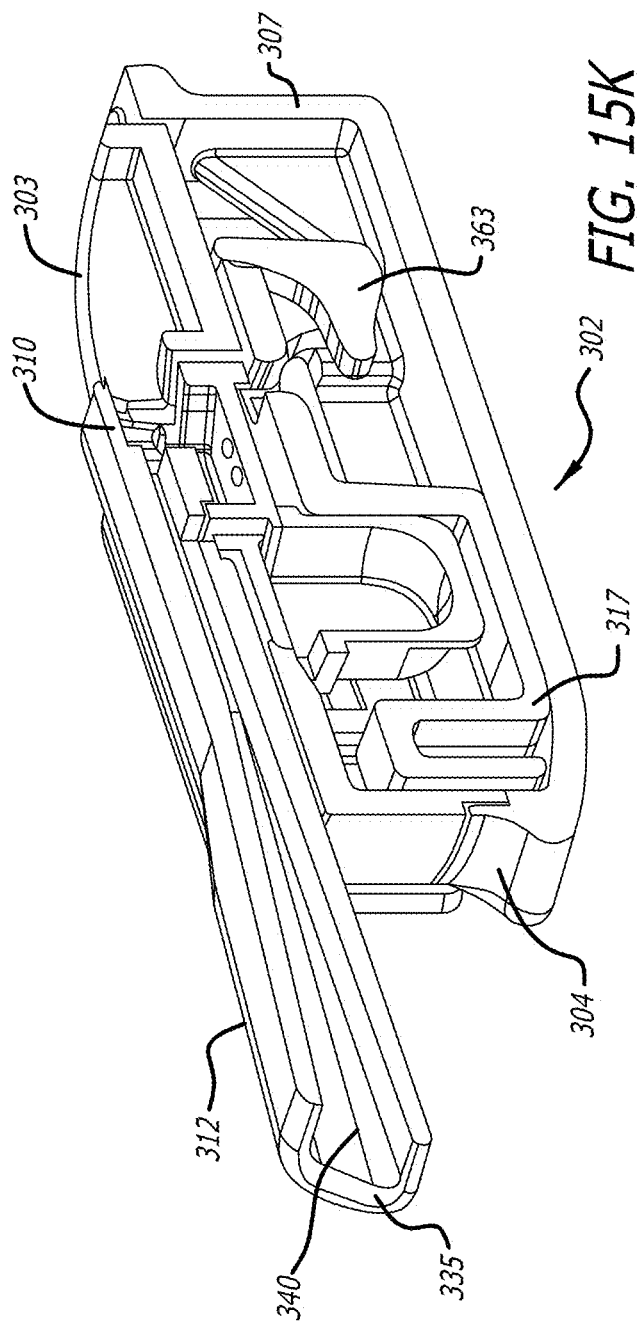


FIG. 16

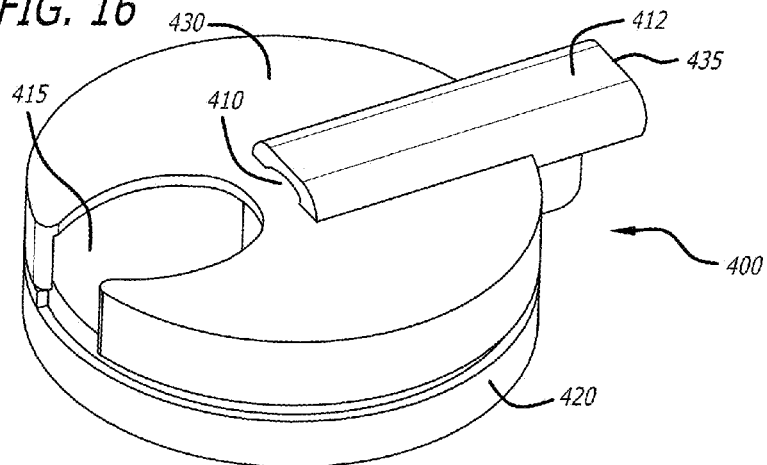


FIG. 17

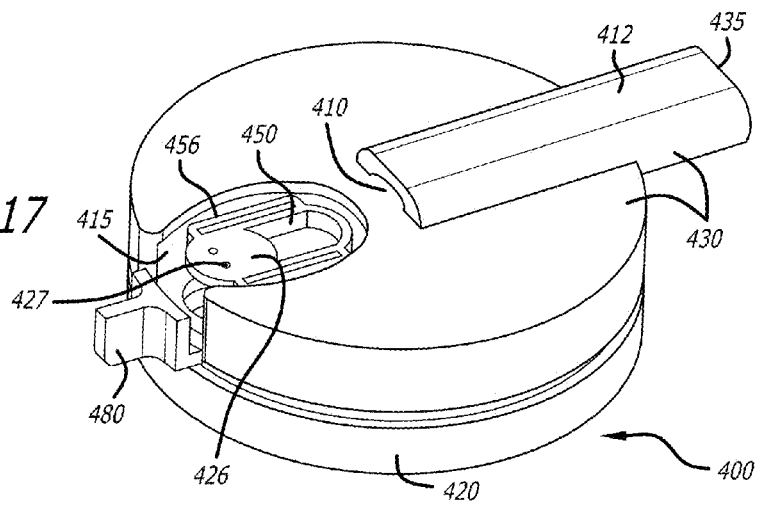
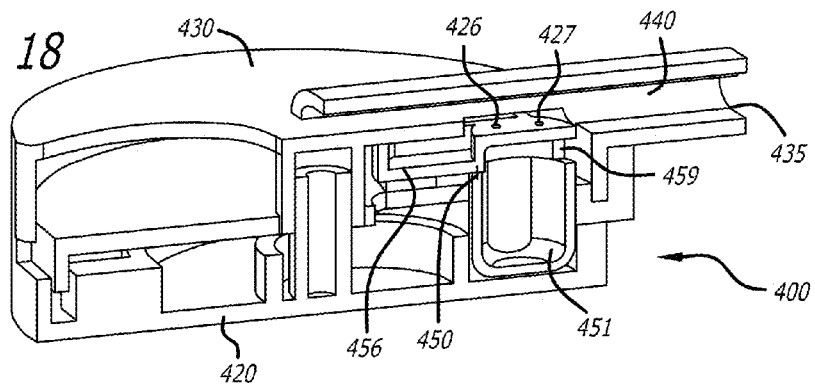
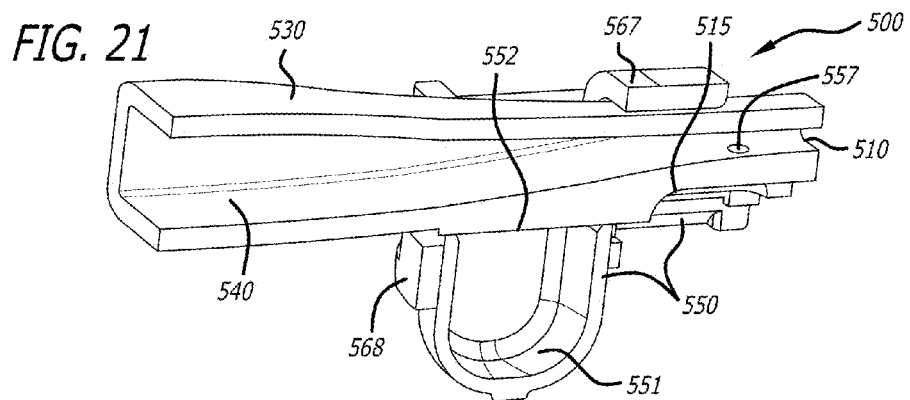
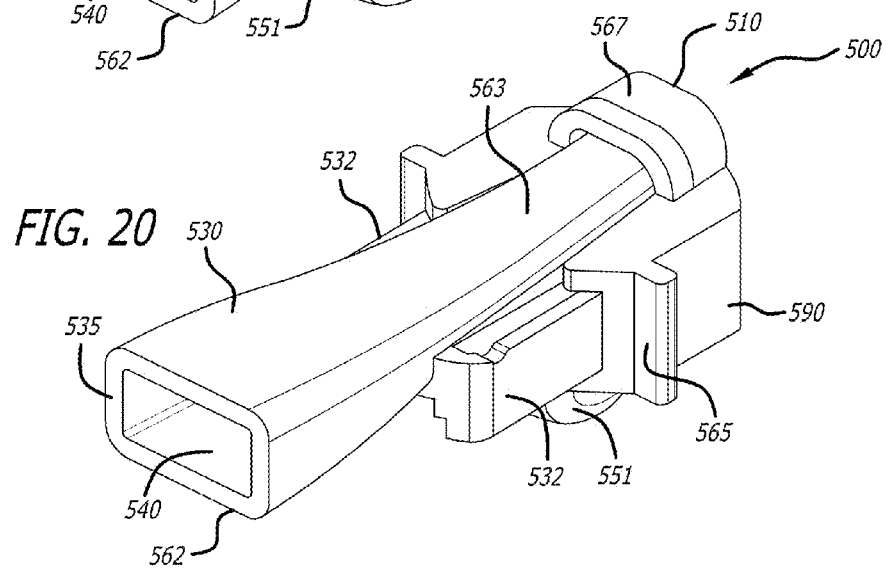
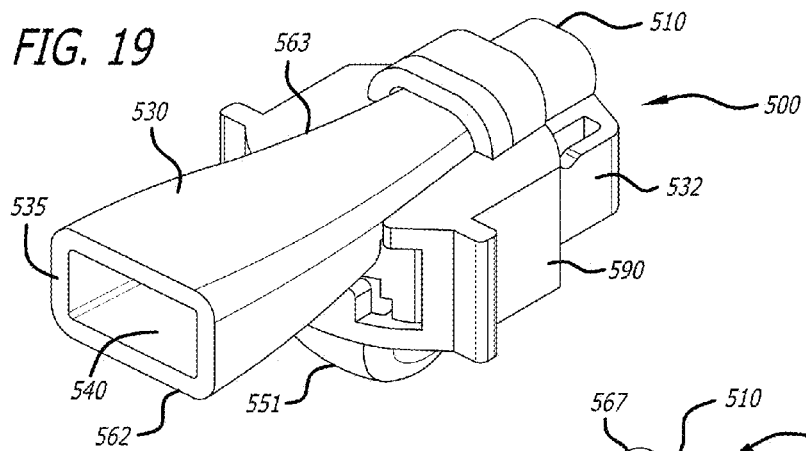
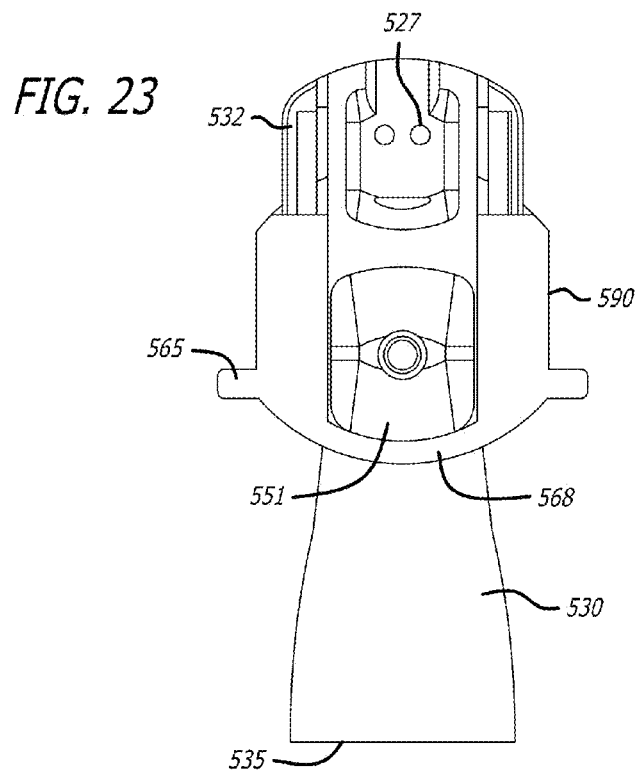
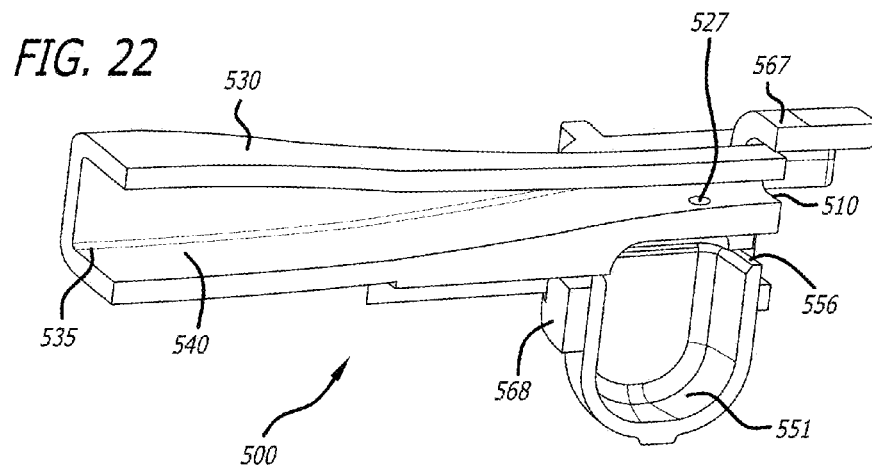


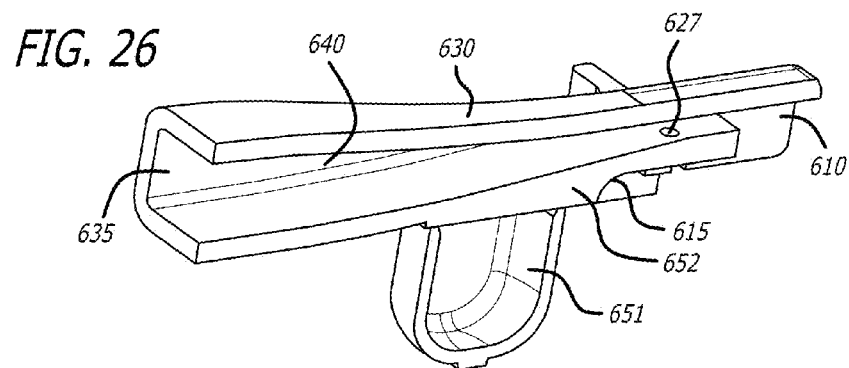
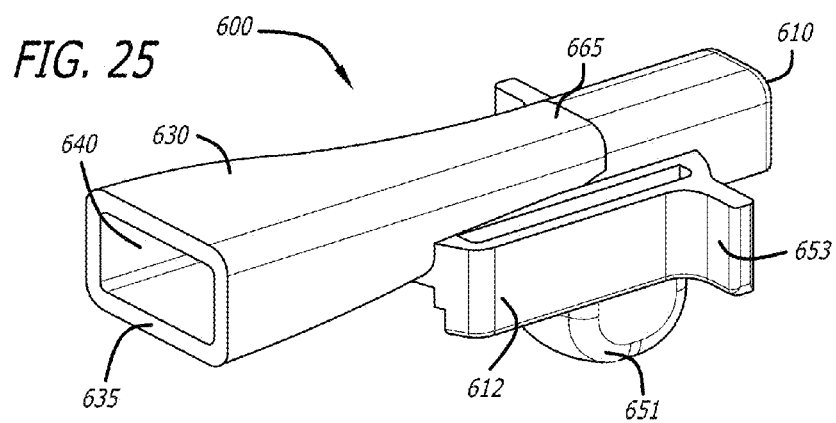
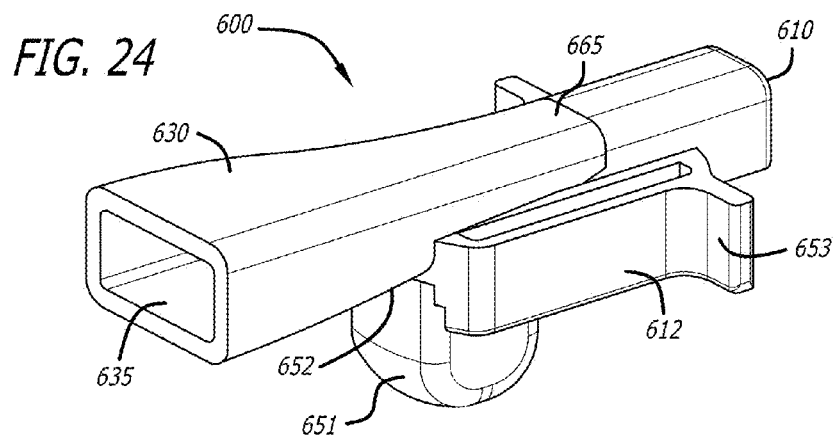
FIG. 18

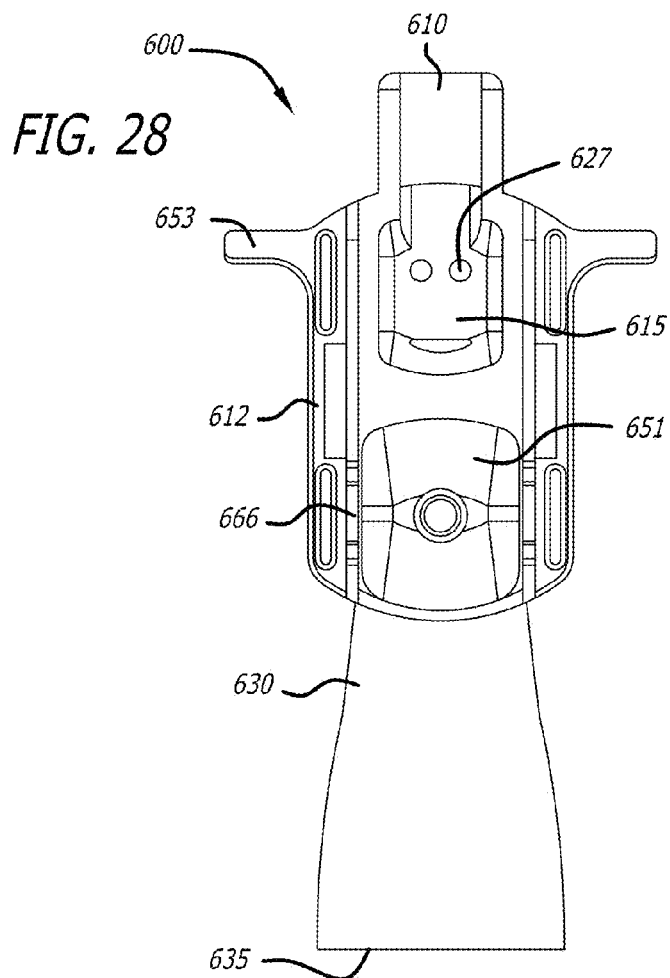
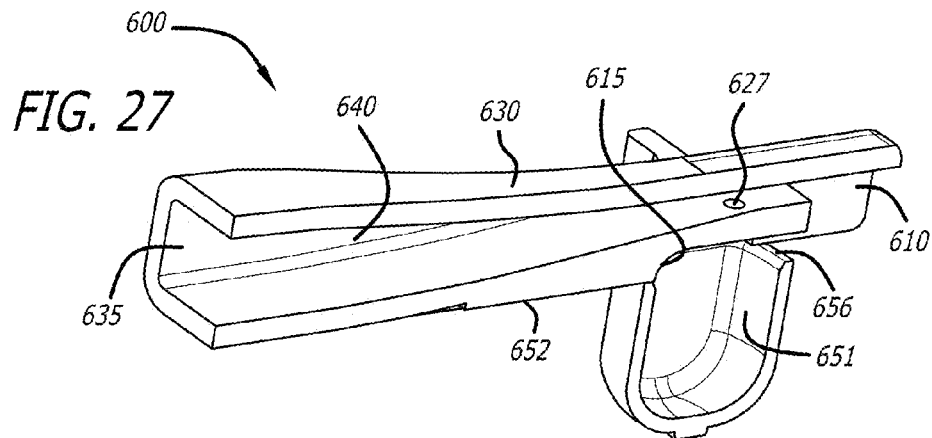


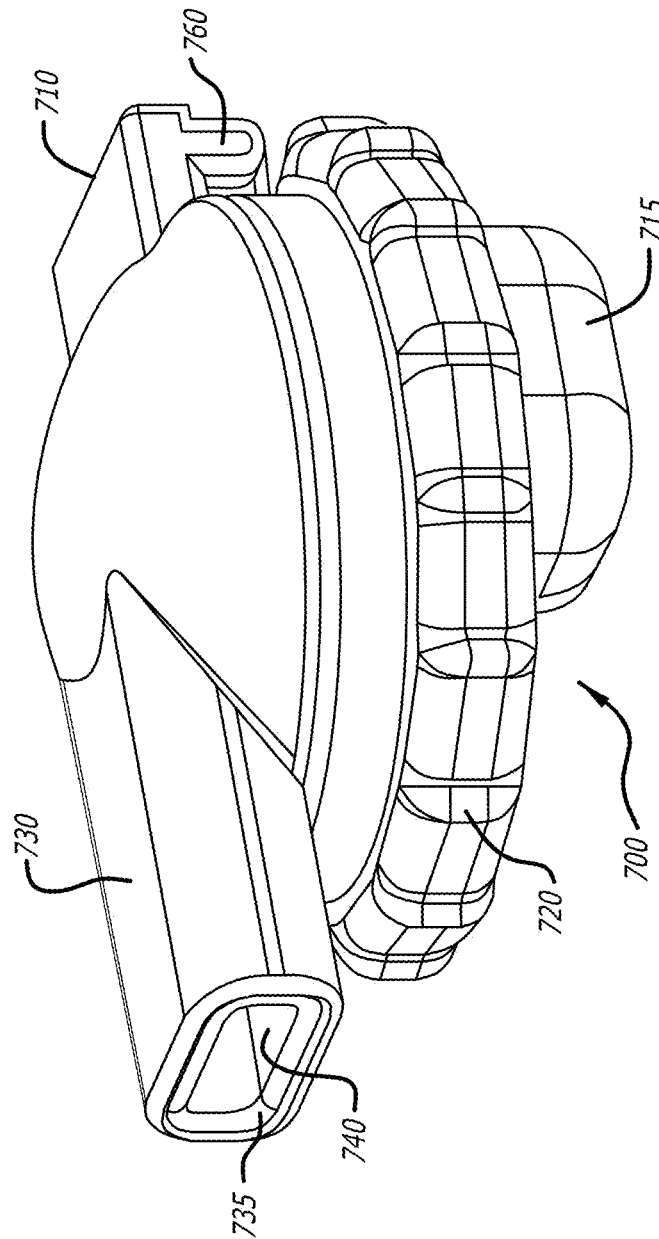












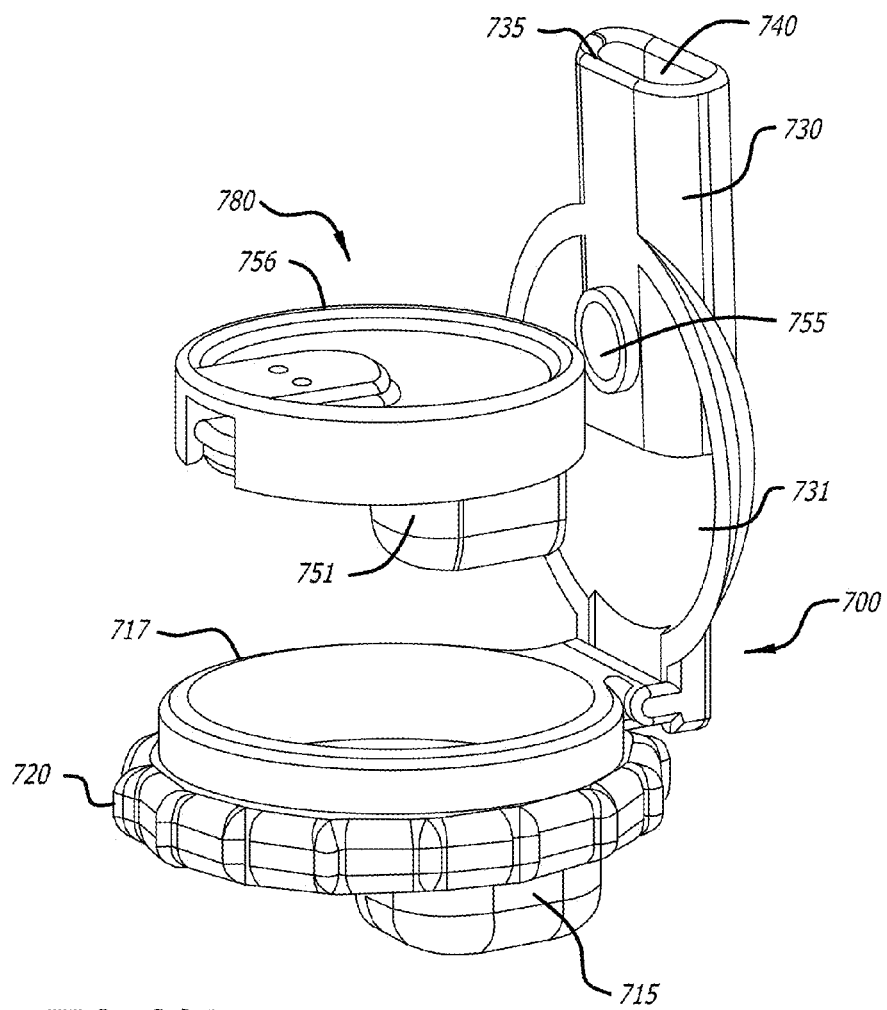


FIG. 30A

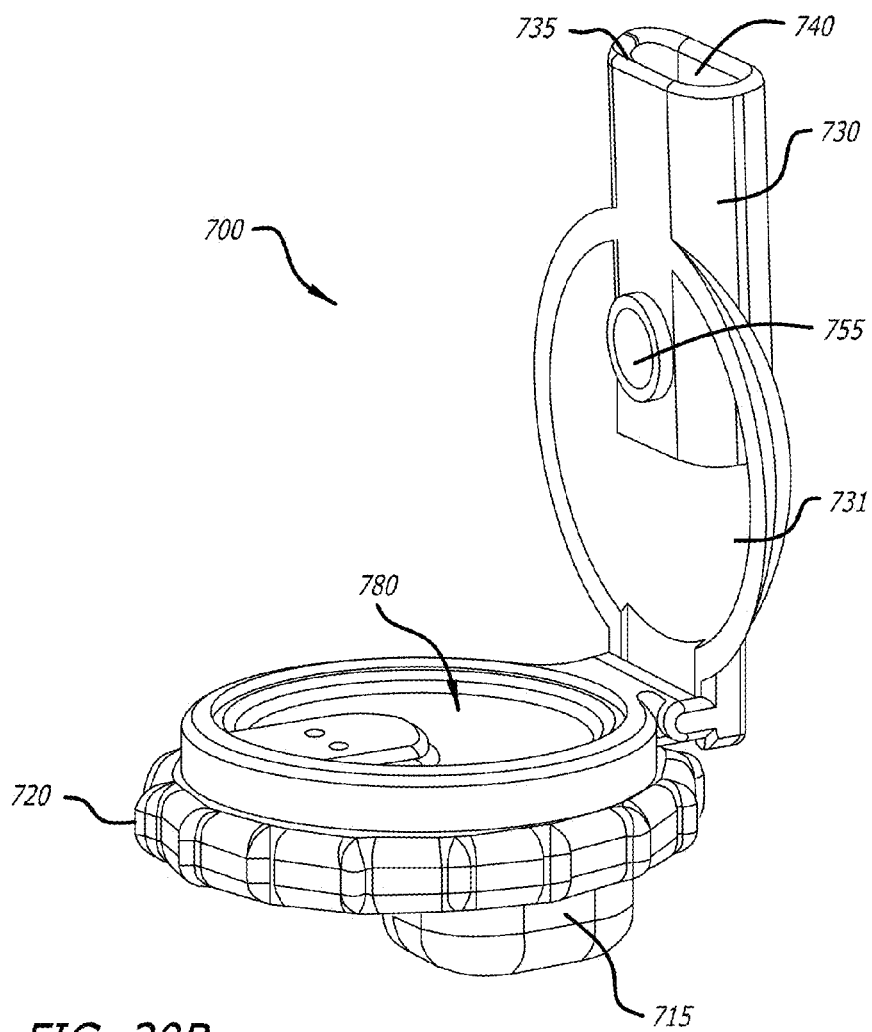


FIG. 30B

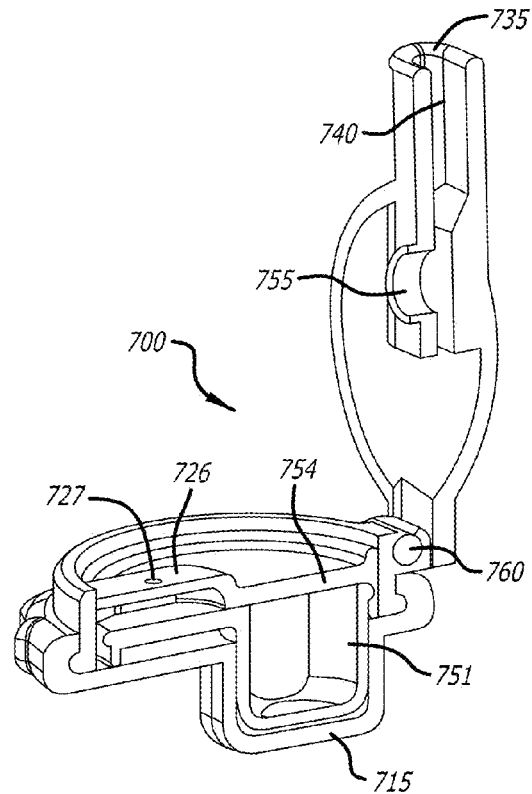


FIG. 31

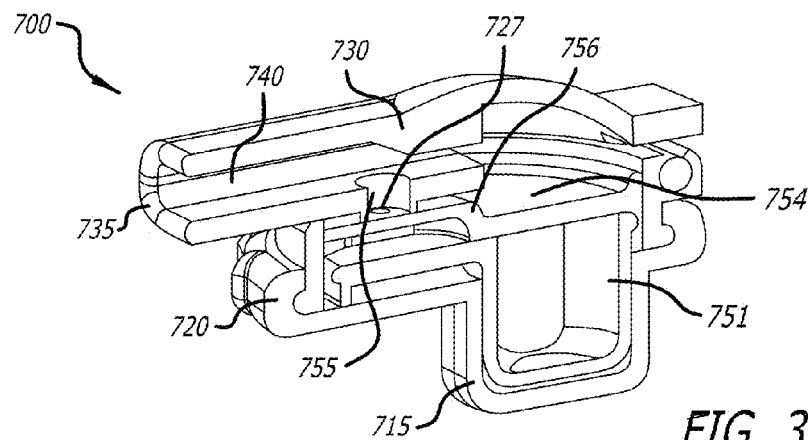
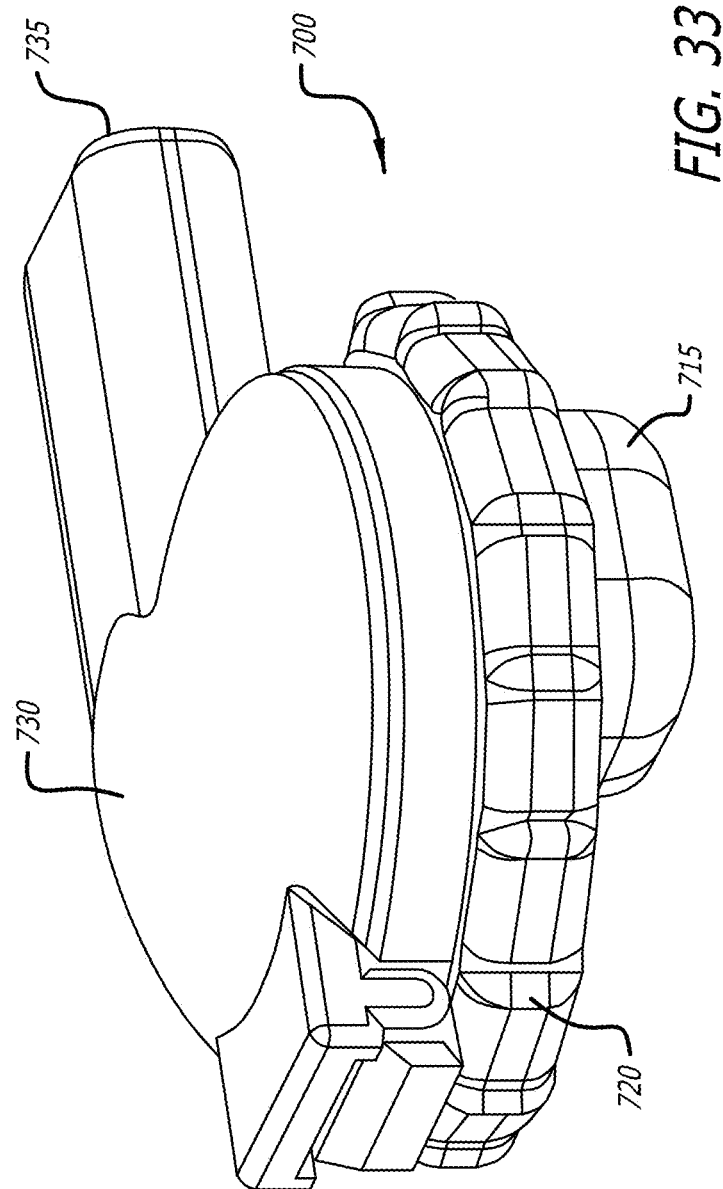


FIG. 32





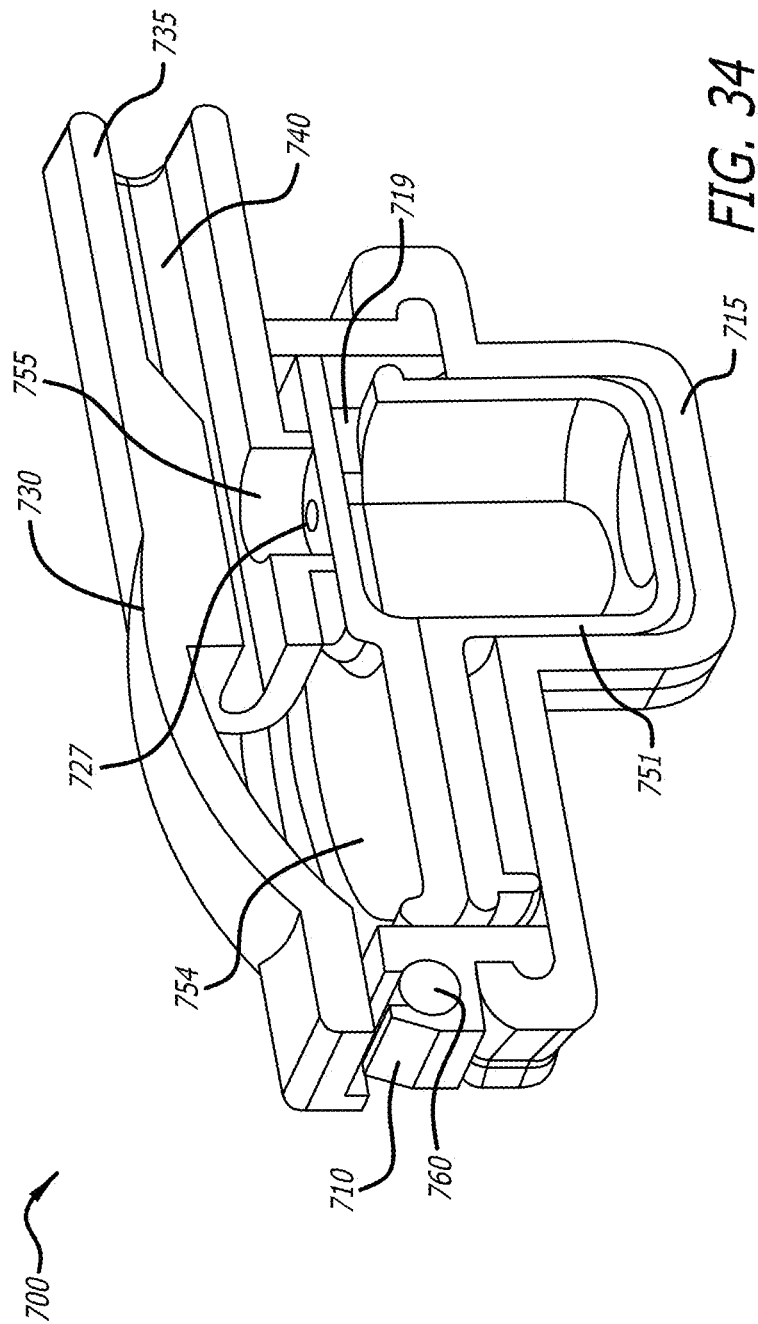


FIG. 35

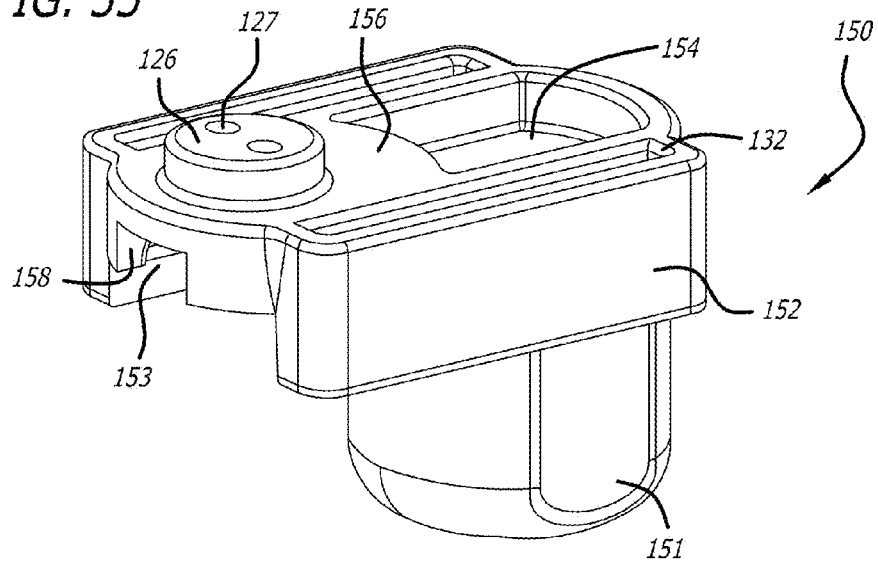
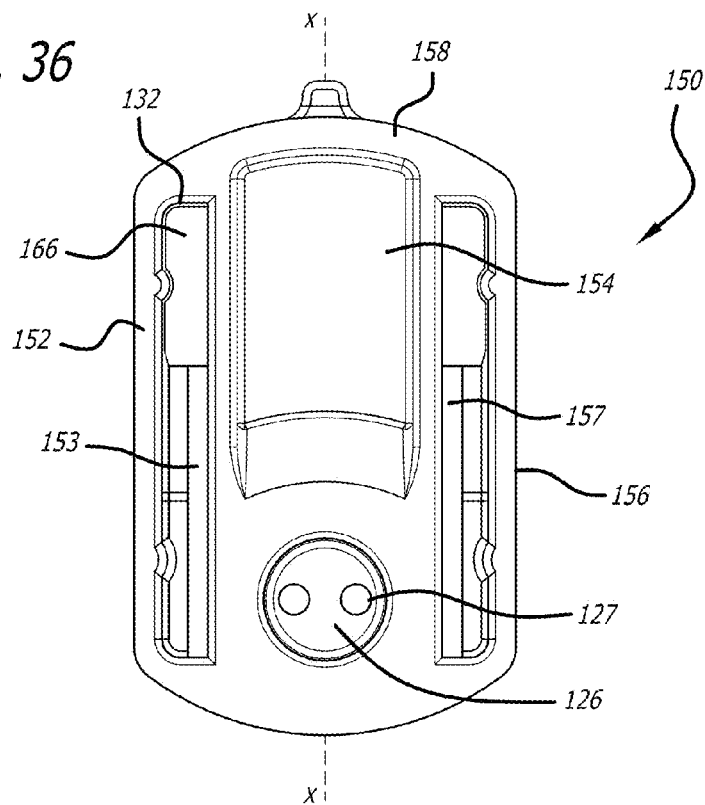


FIG. 36



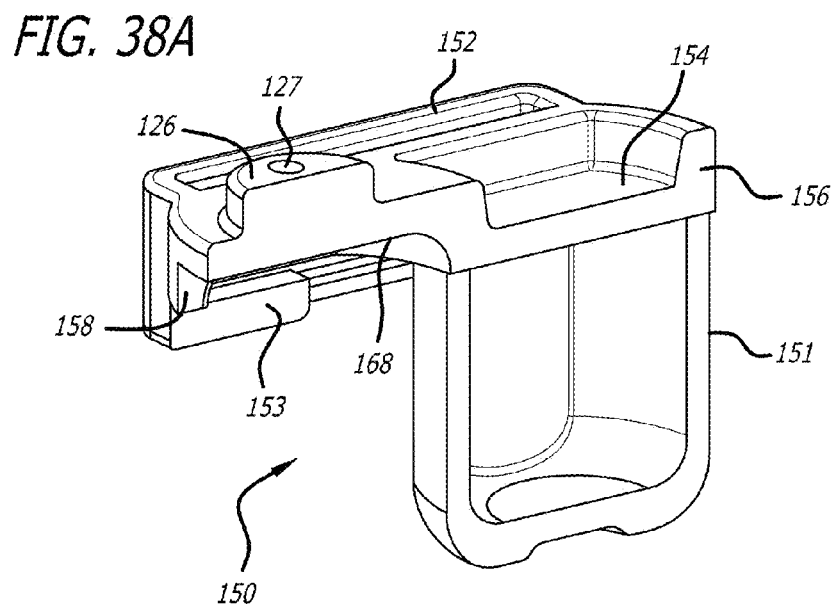
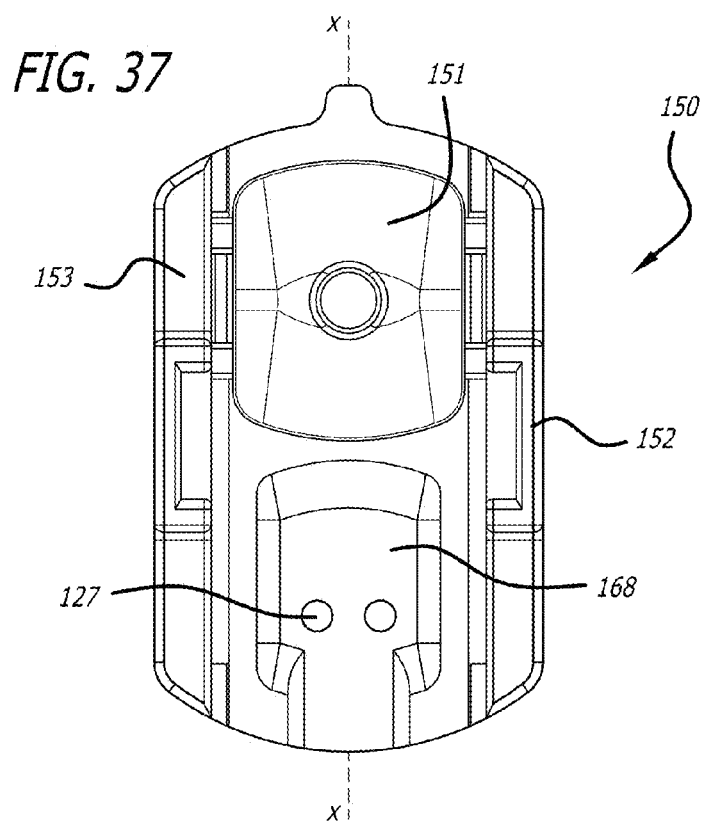


FIG. 38B

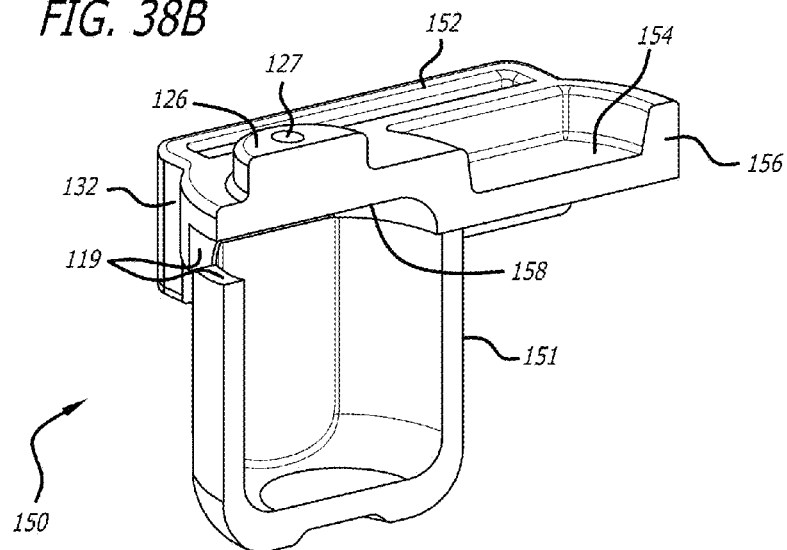
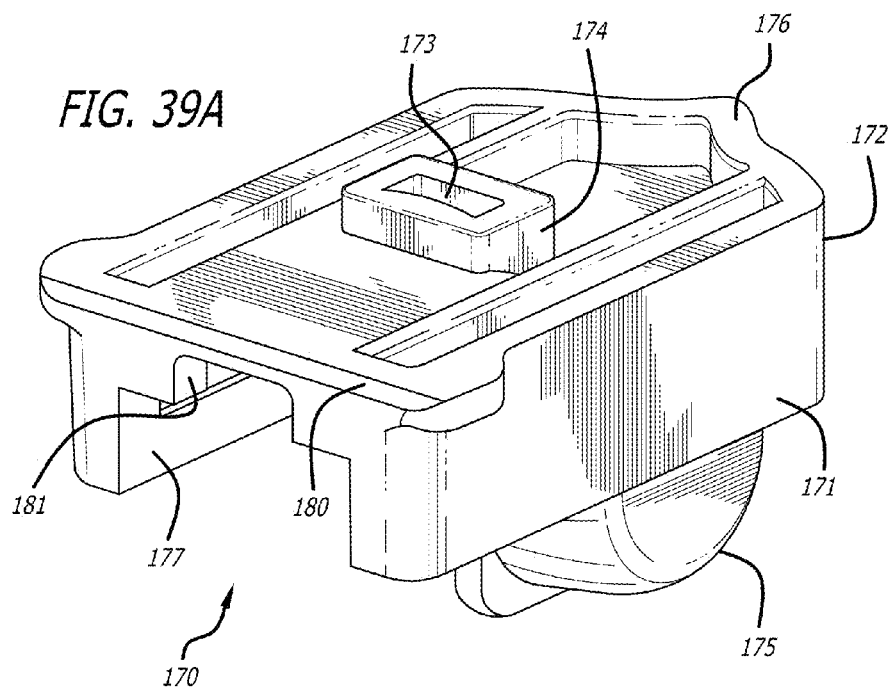
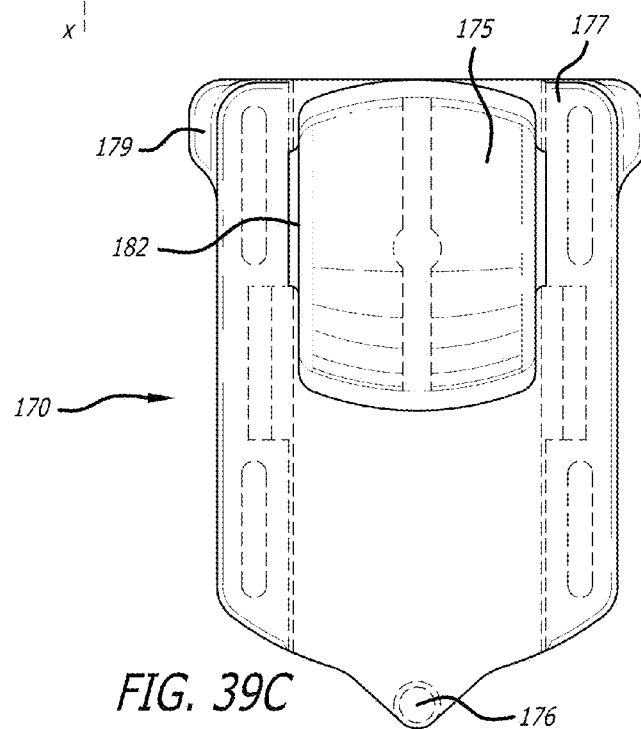
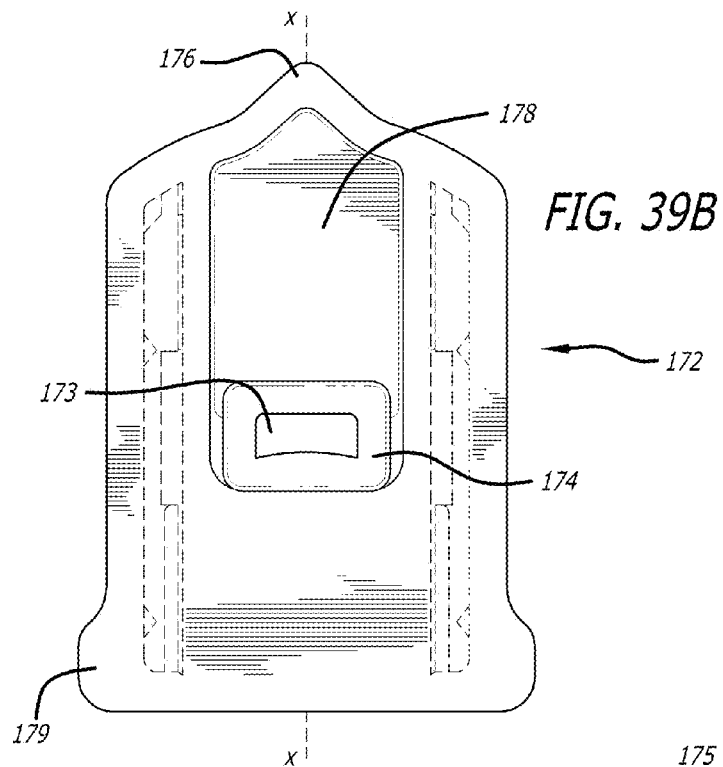


FIG. 39A





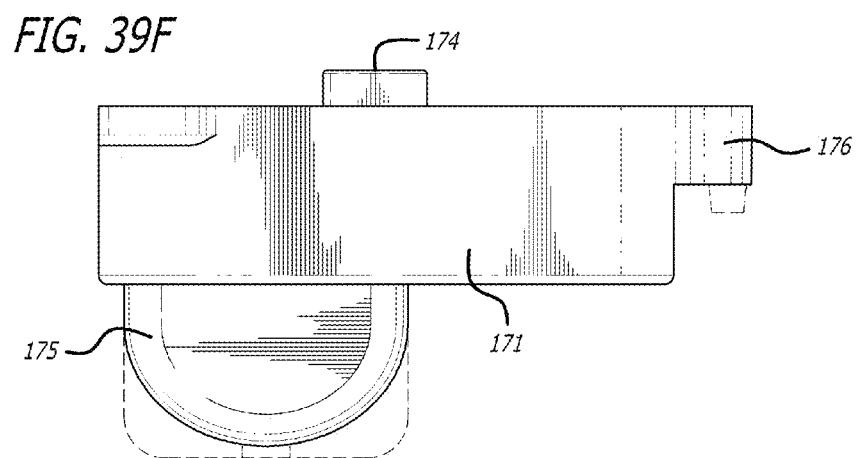
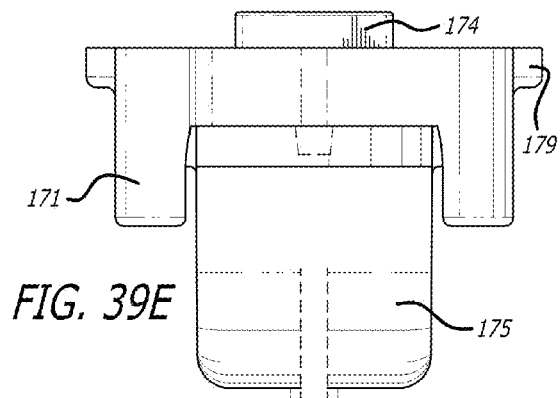
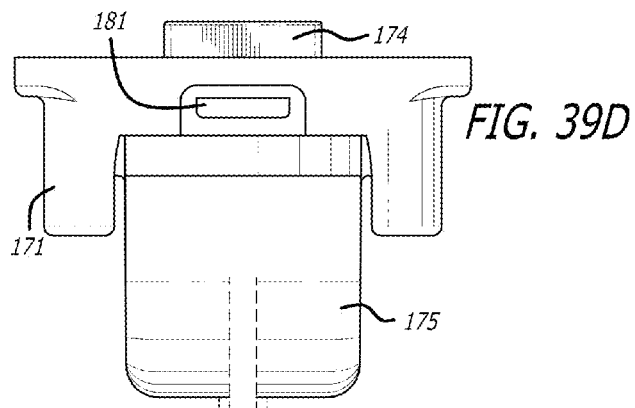


FIG. 39G

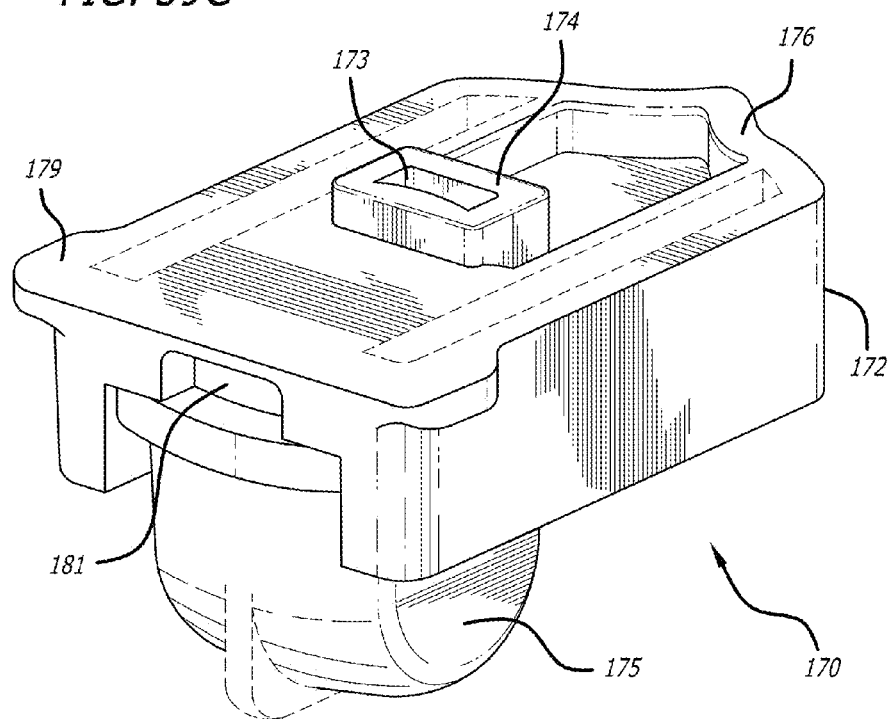


FIG. 39H

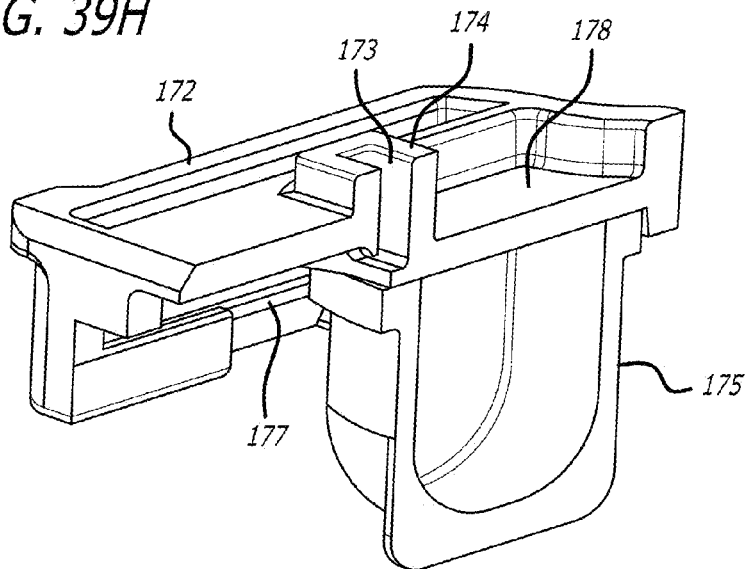


FIG. 39I

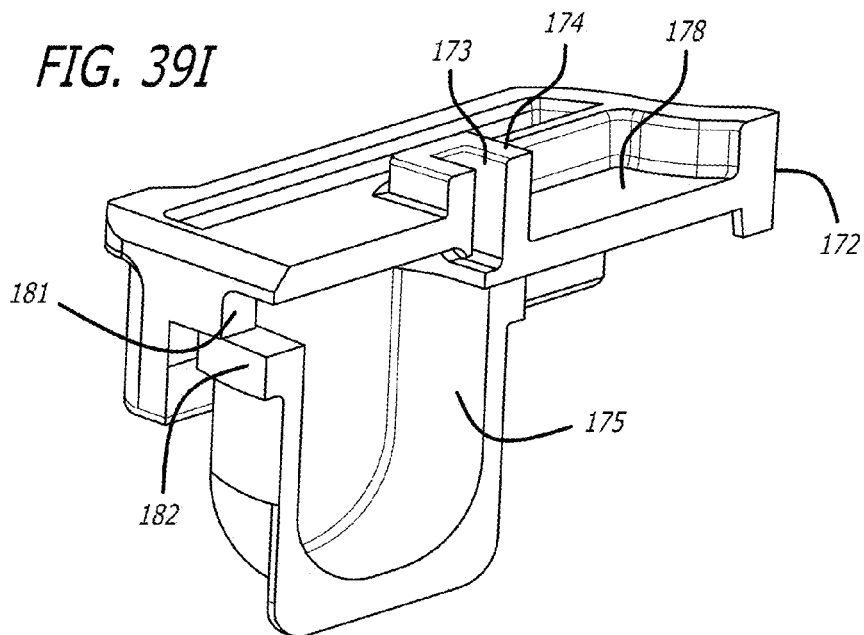




FIG. 40

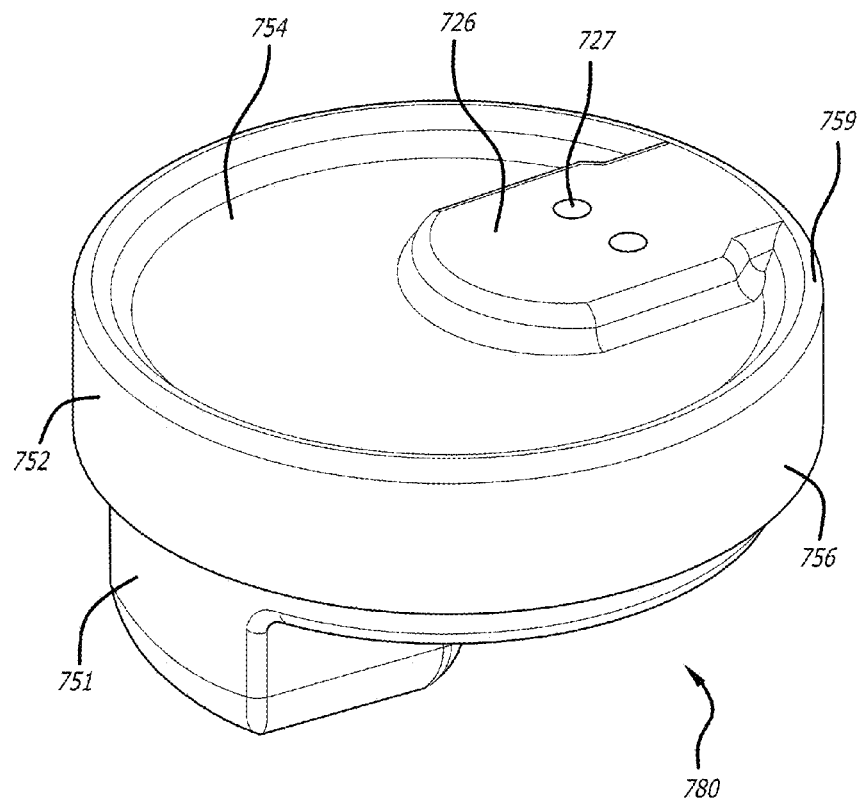


FIG. 41

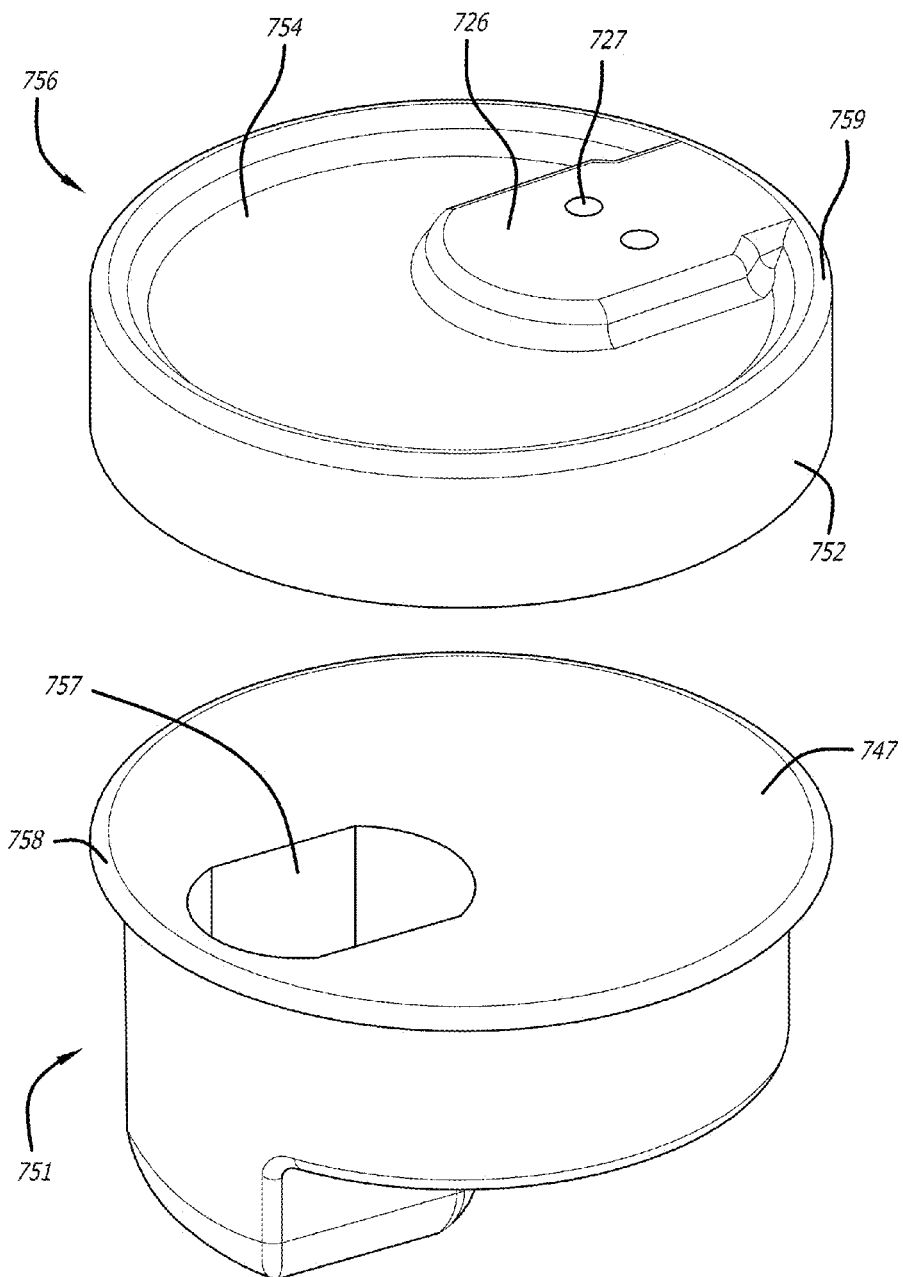
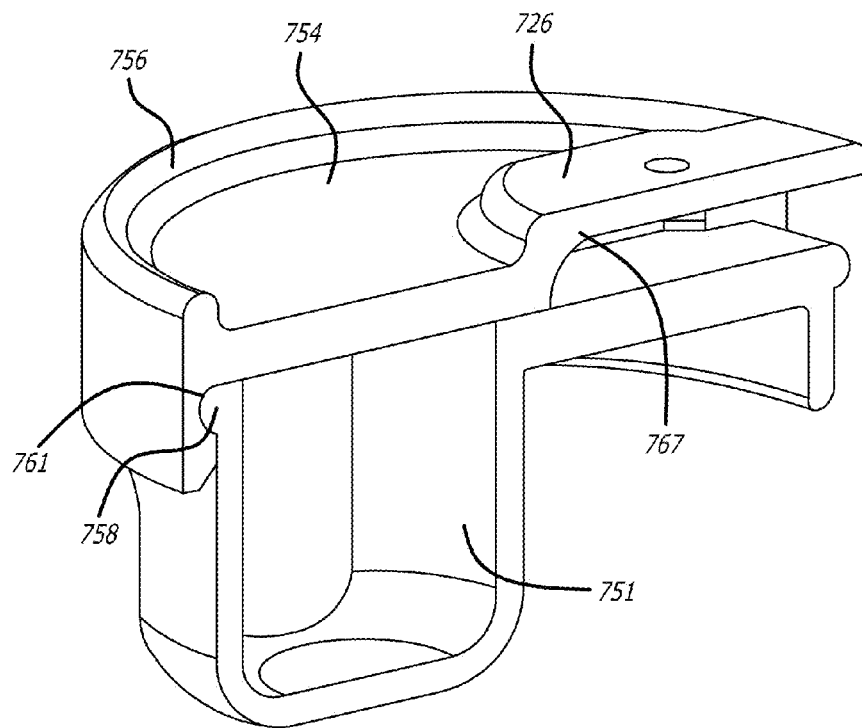
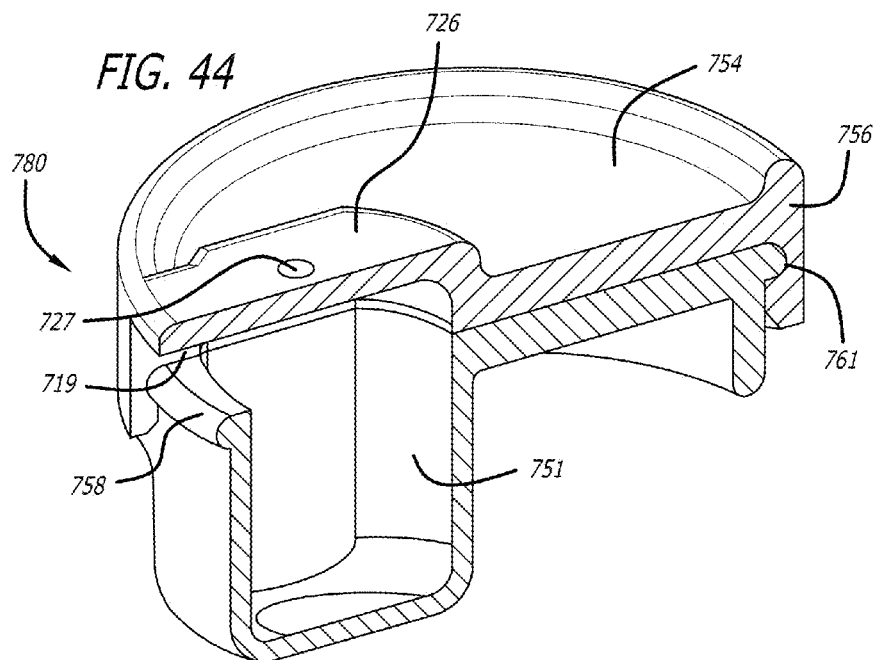
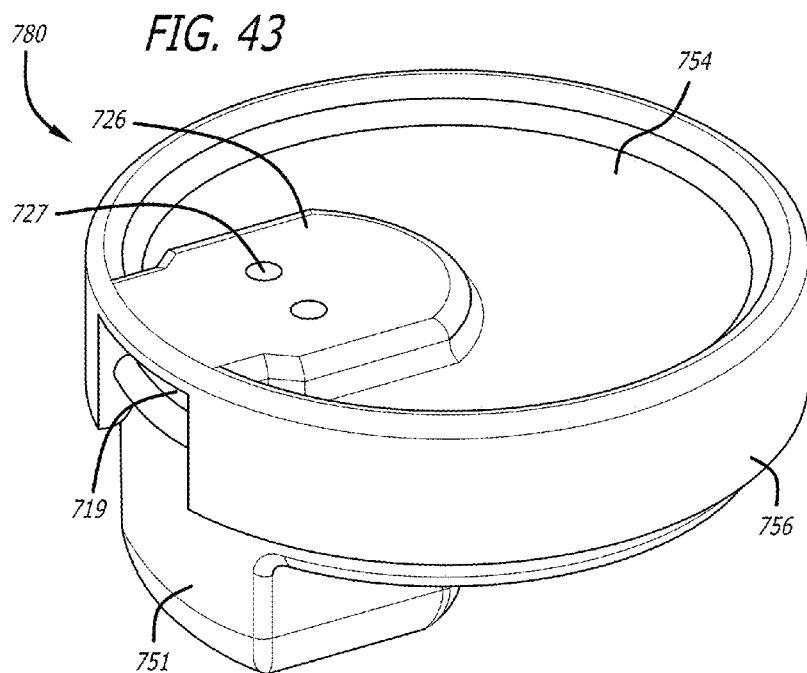


FIG. 42





4678

1951300-00106CON2

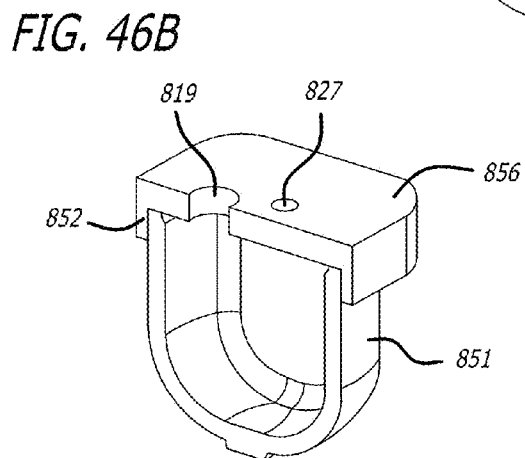
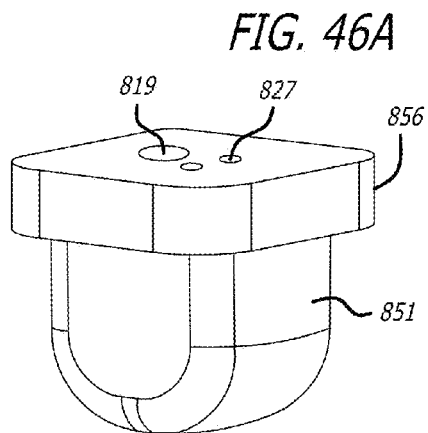
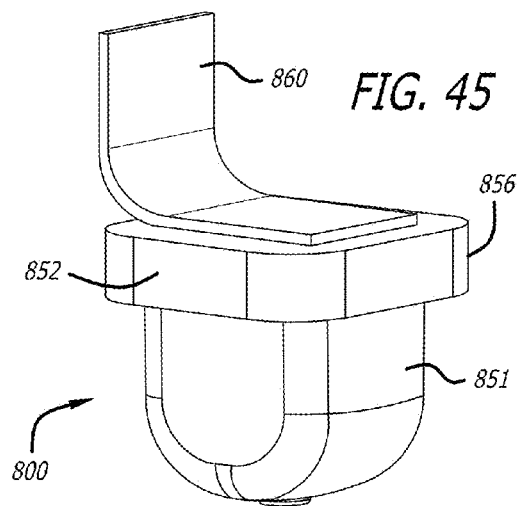


FIG. 47A

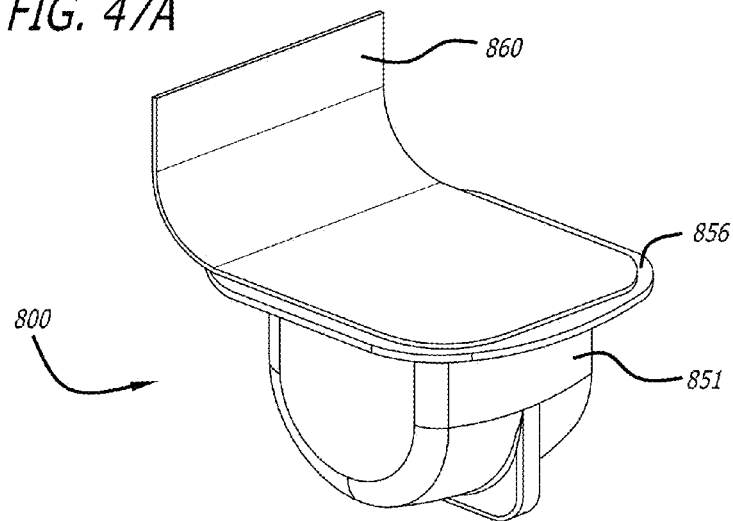
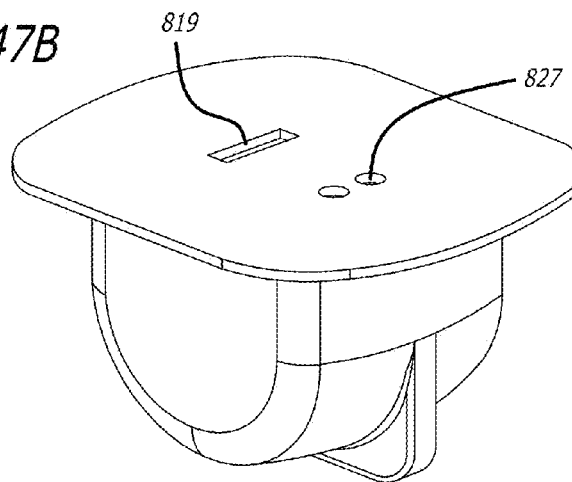
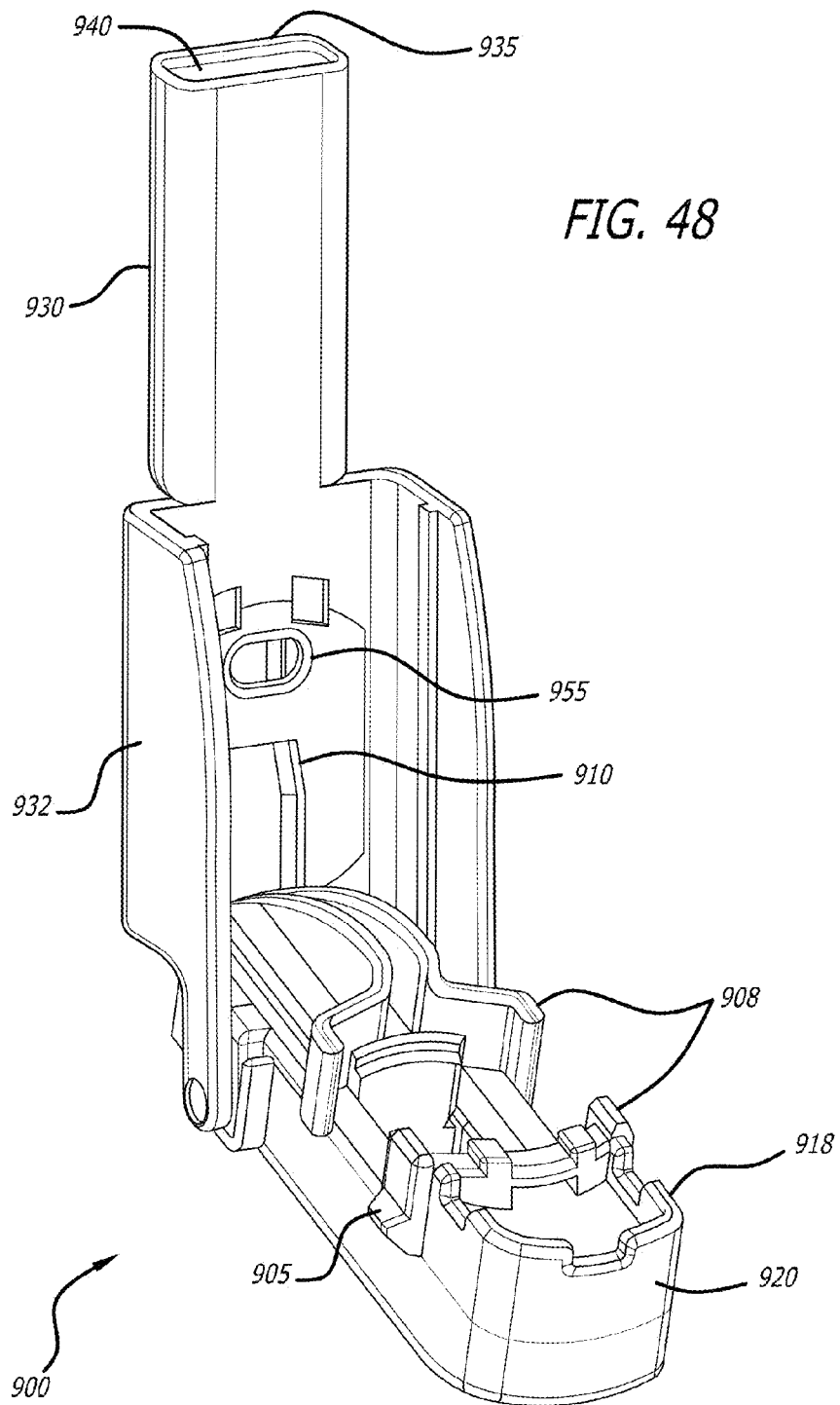


FIG. 47B





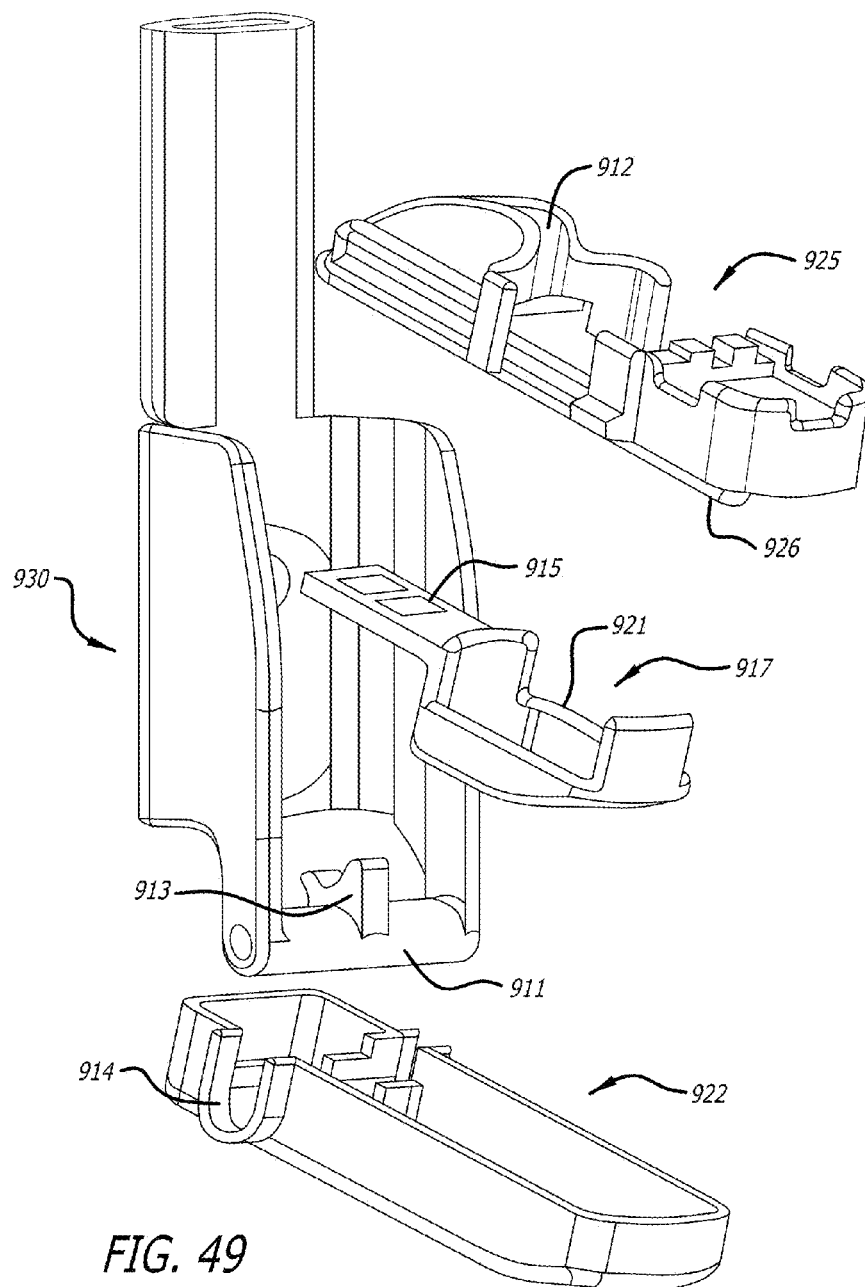
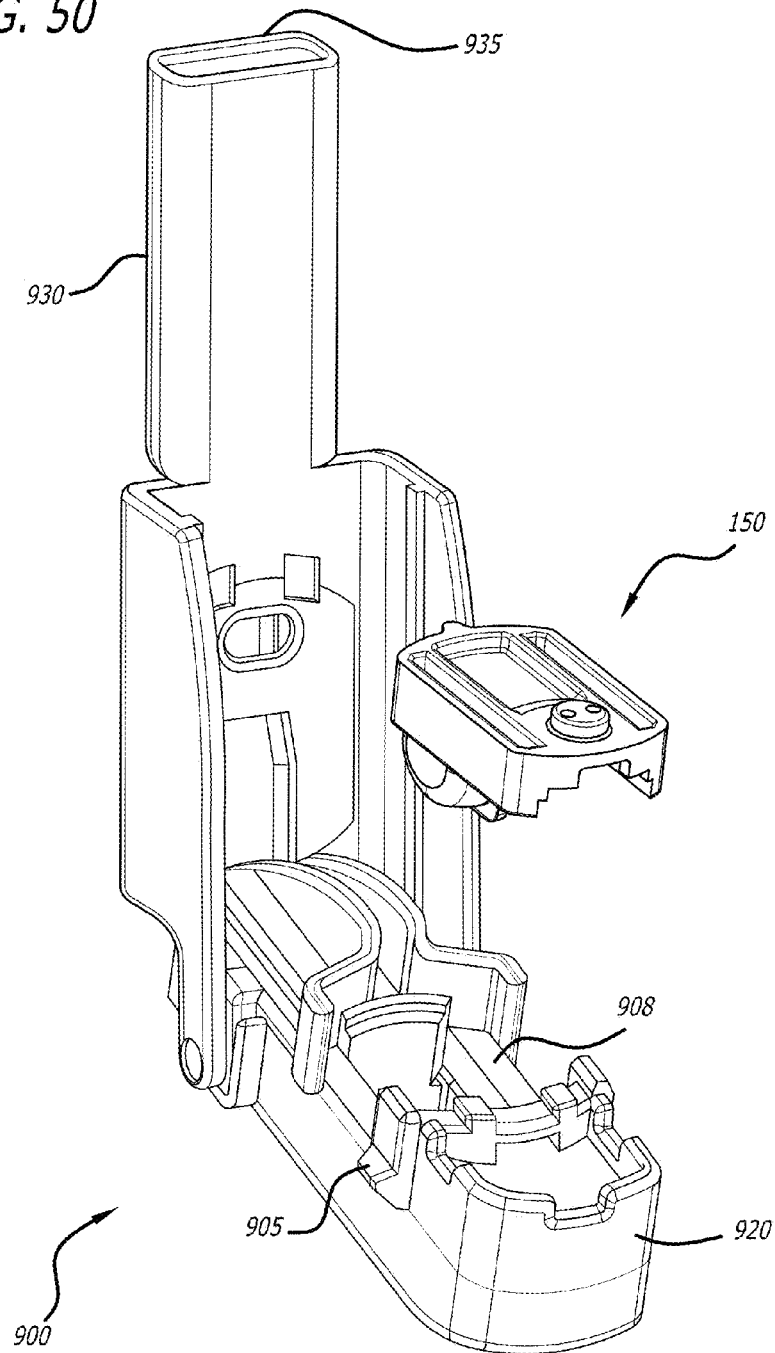
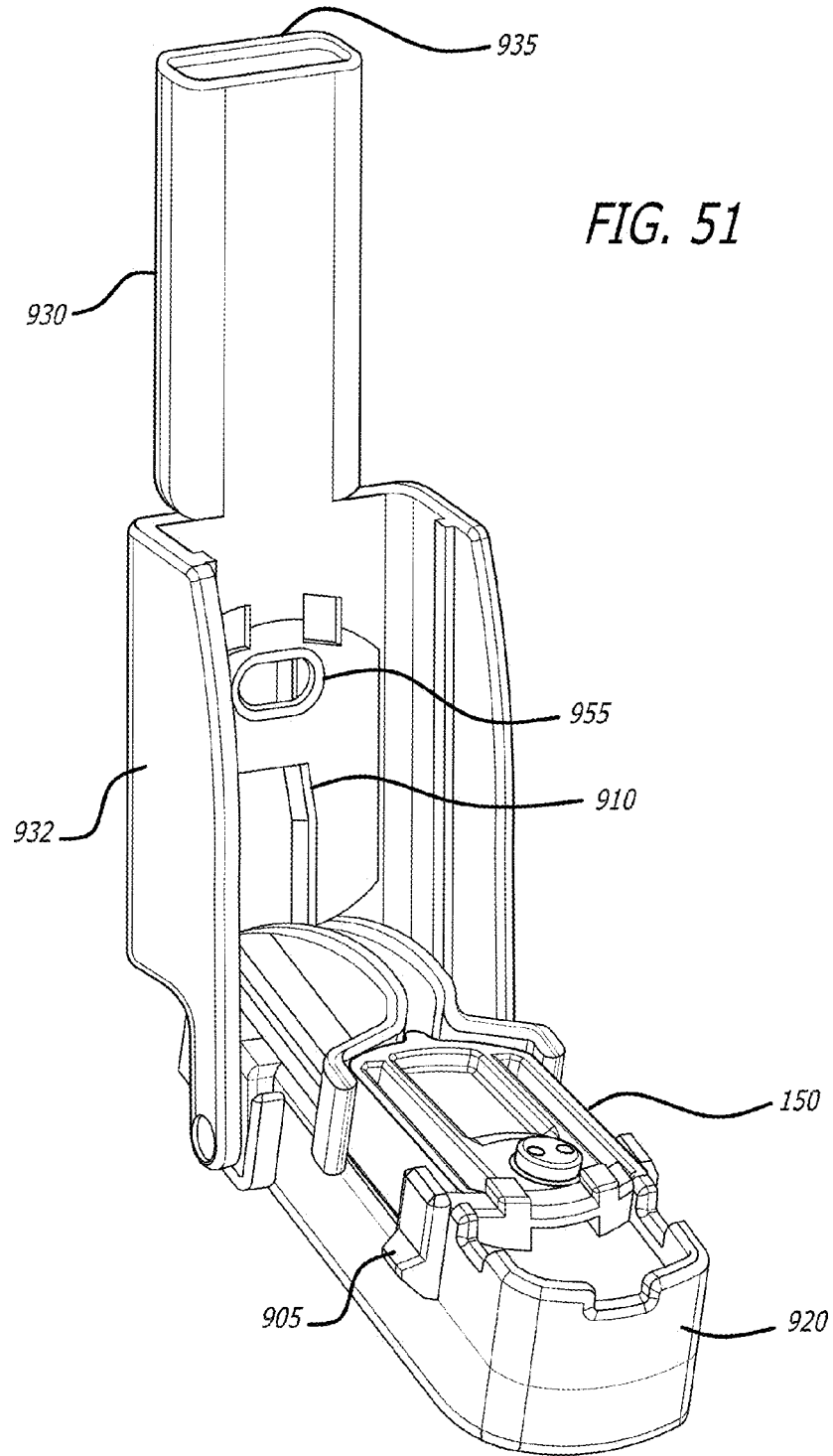
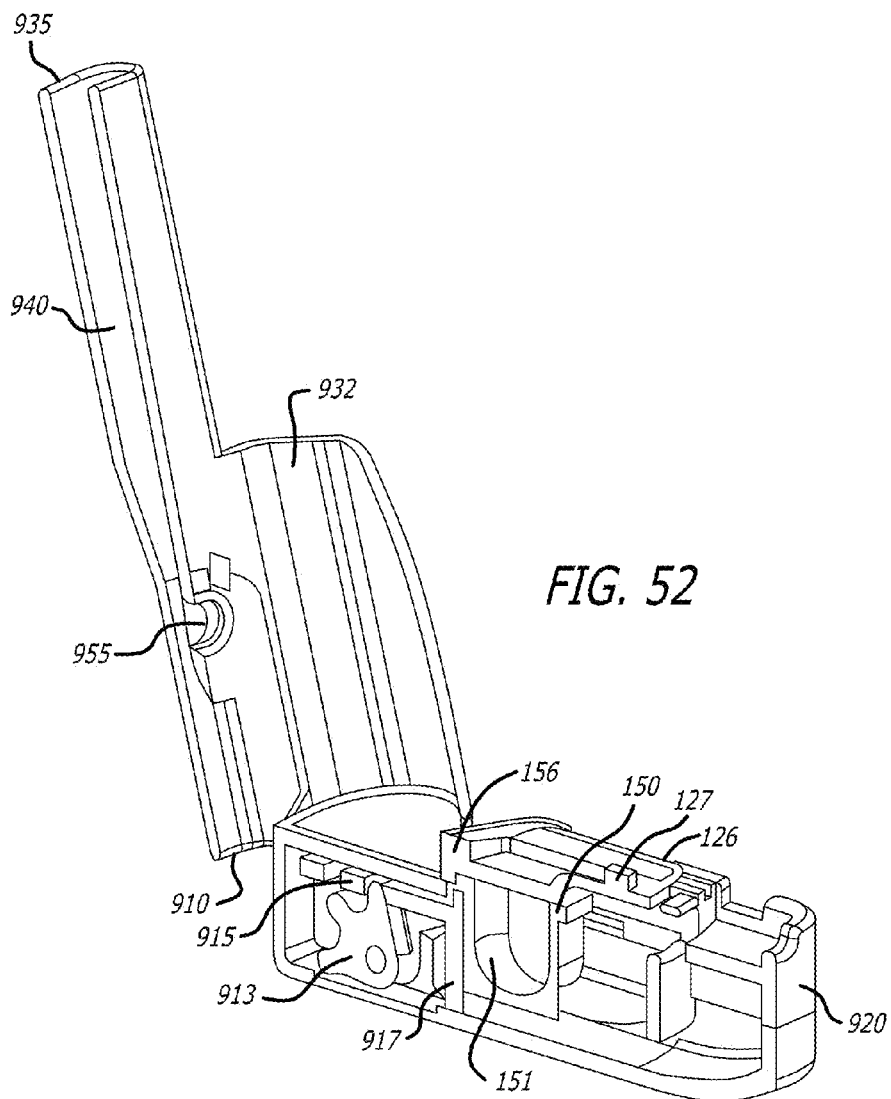


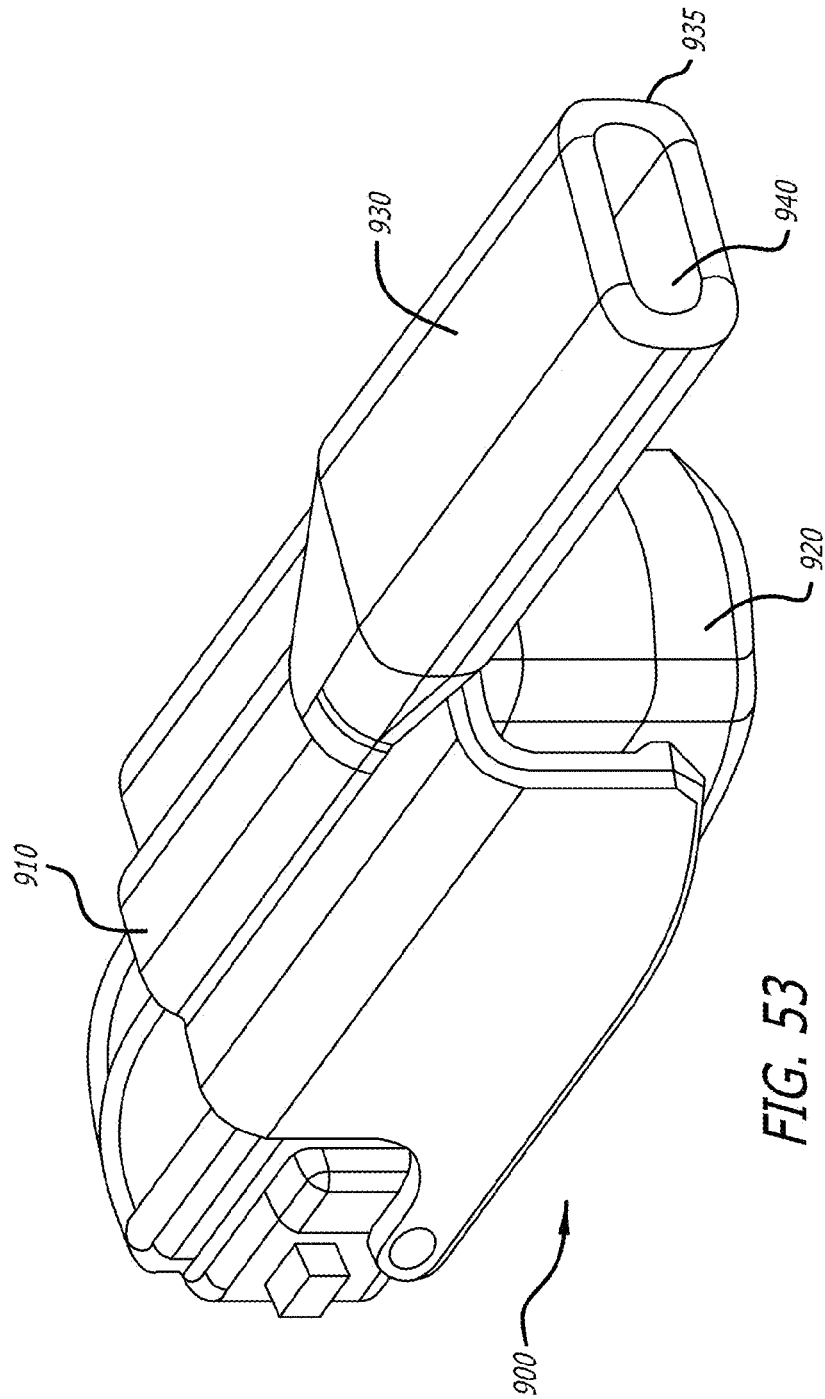


FIG. 50









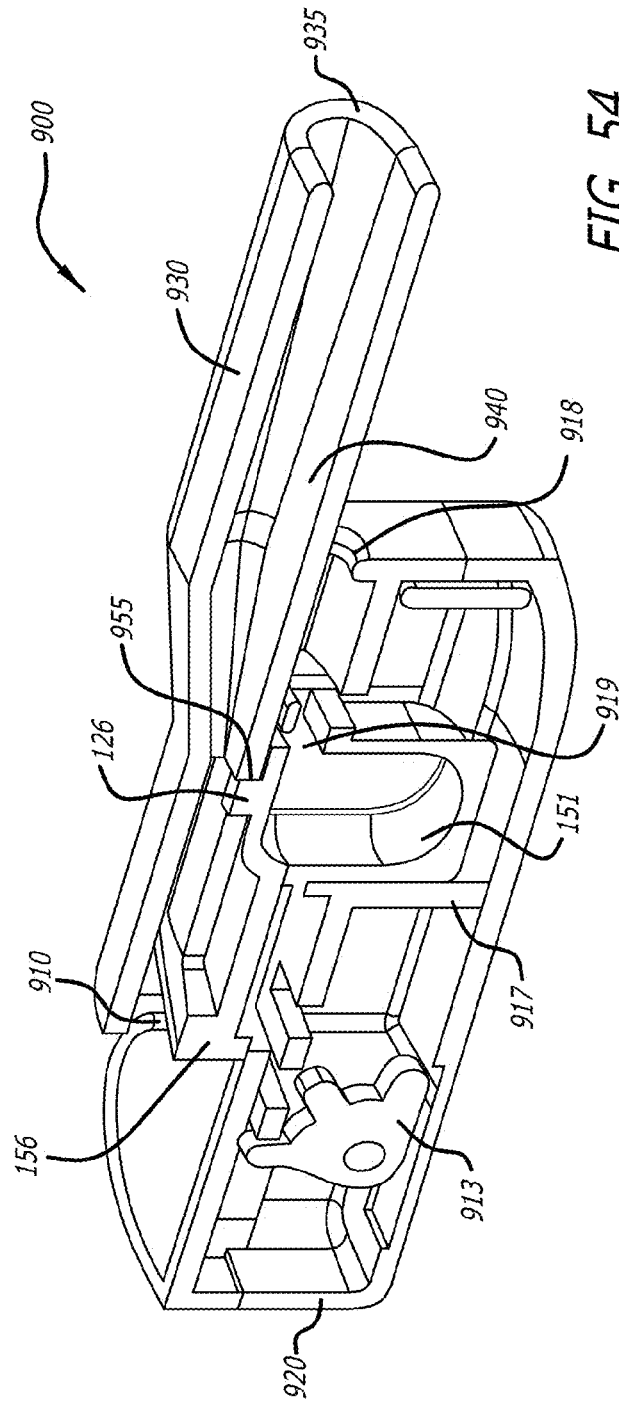
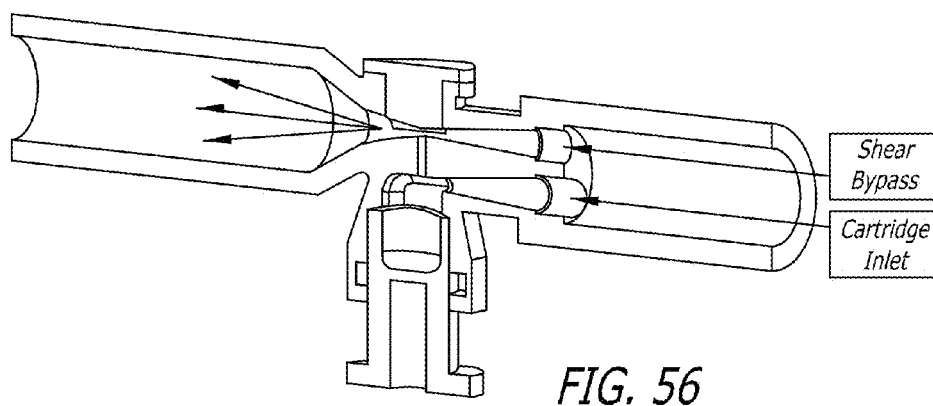
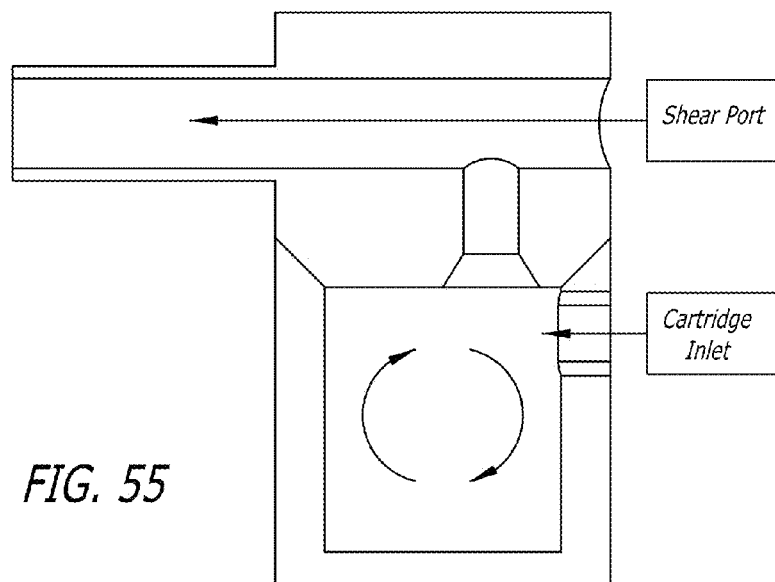
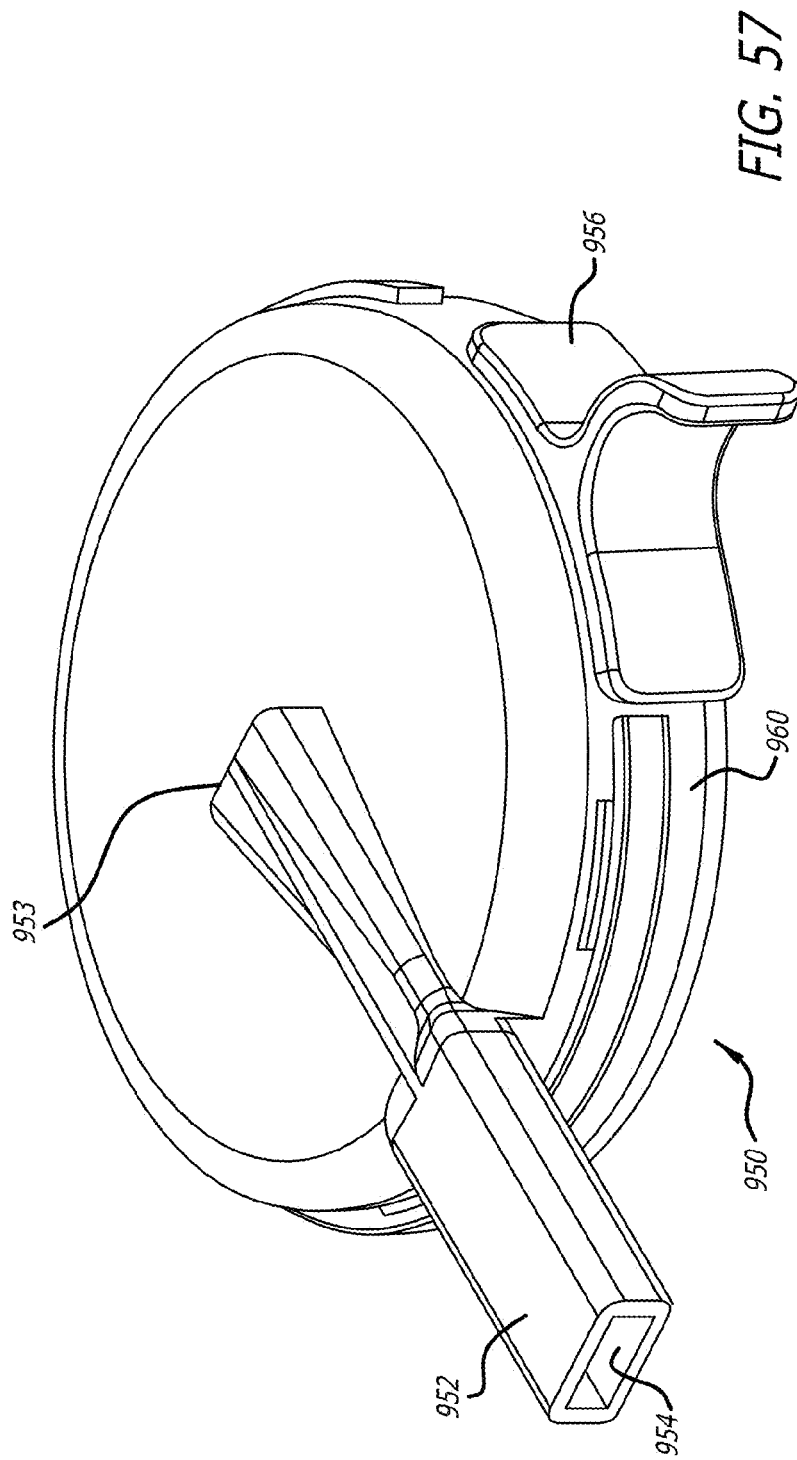


FIG. 54





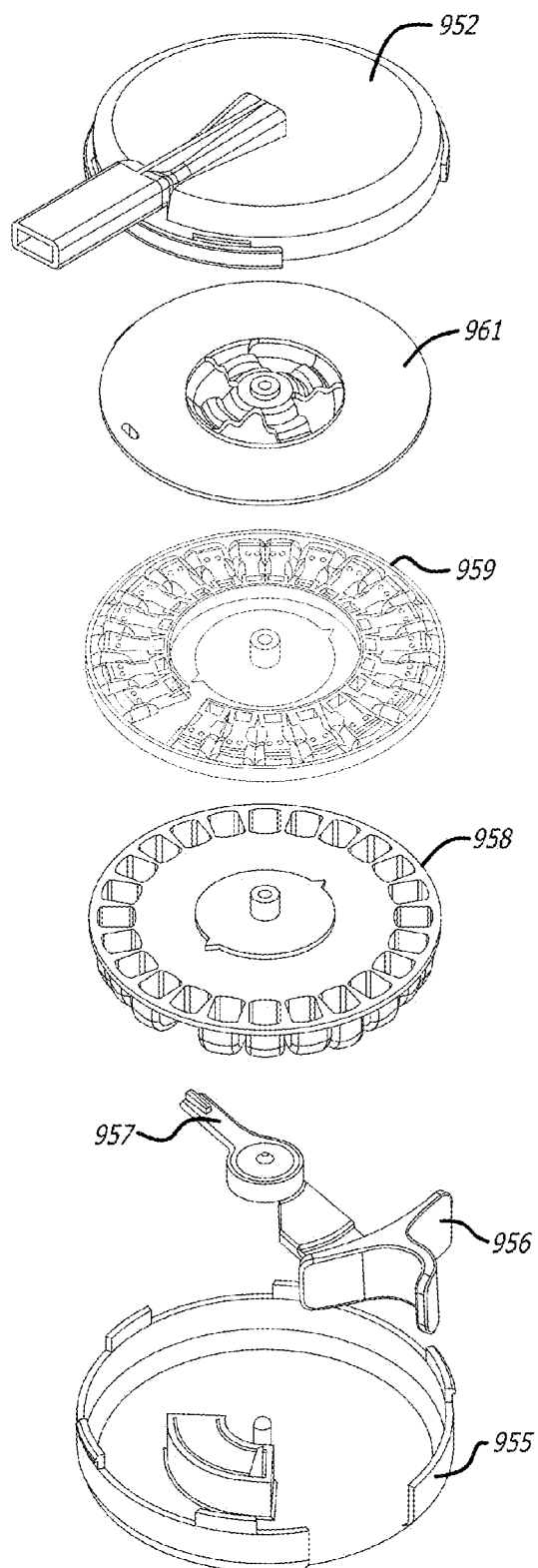


FIG. 58



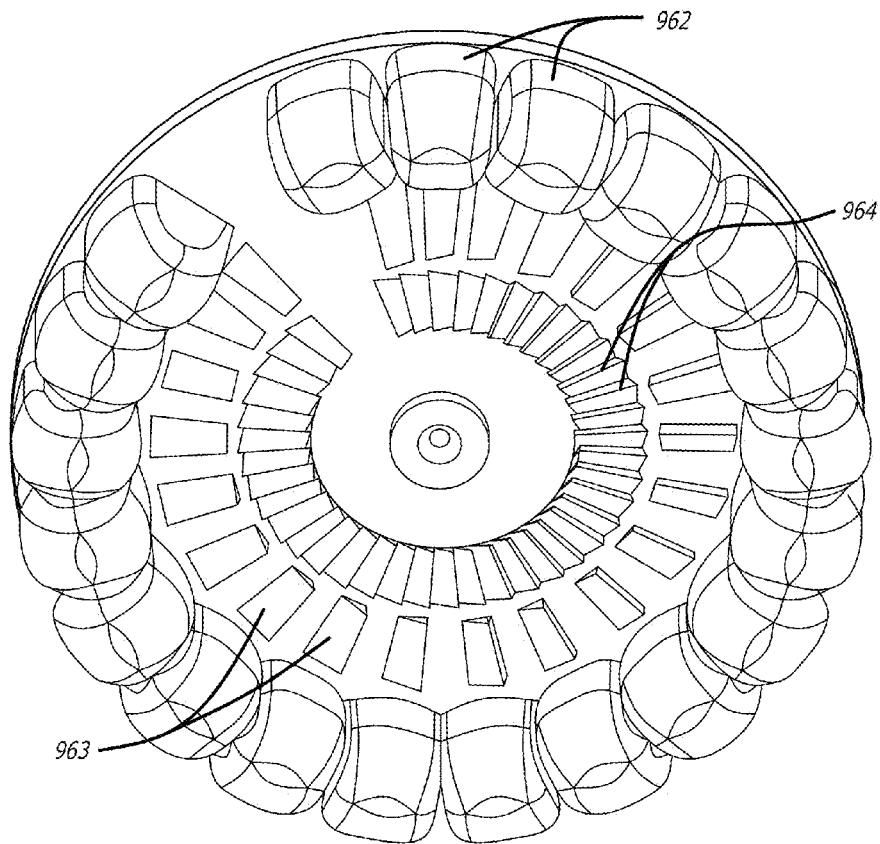
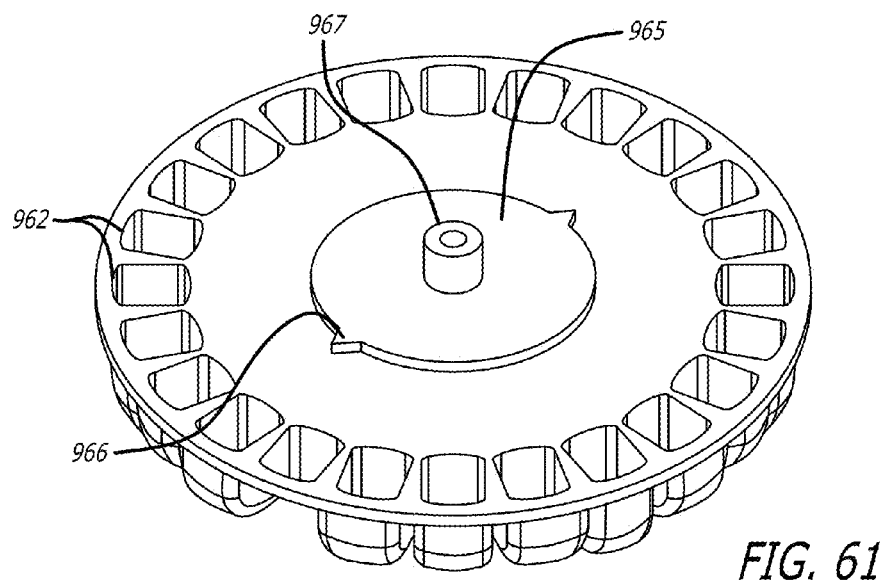
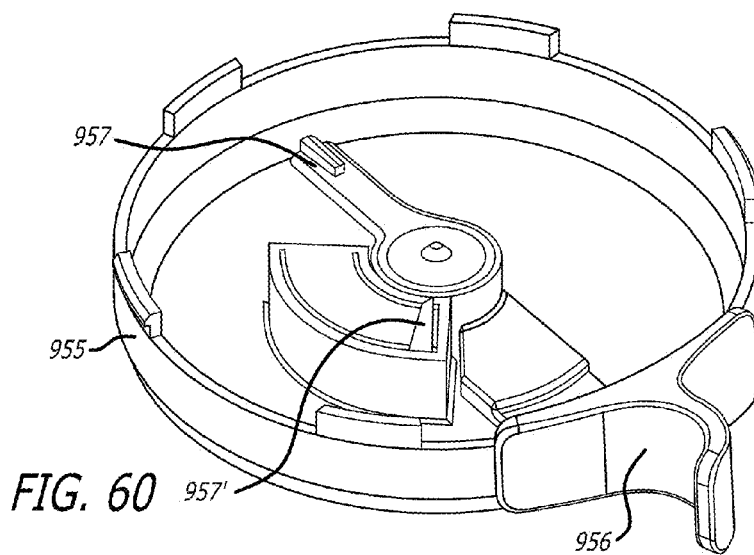


FIG. 59



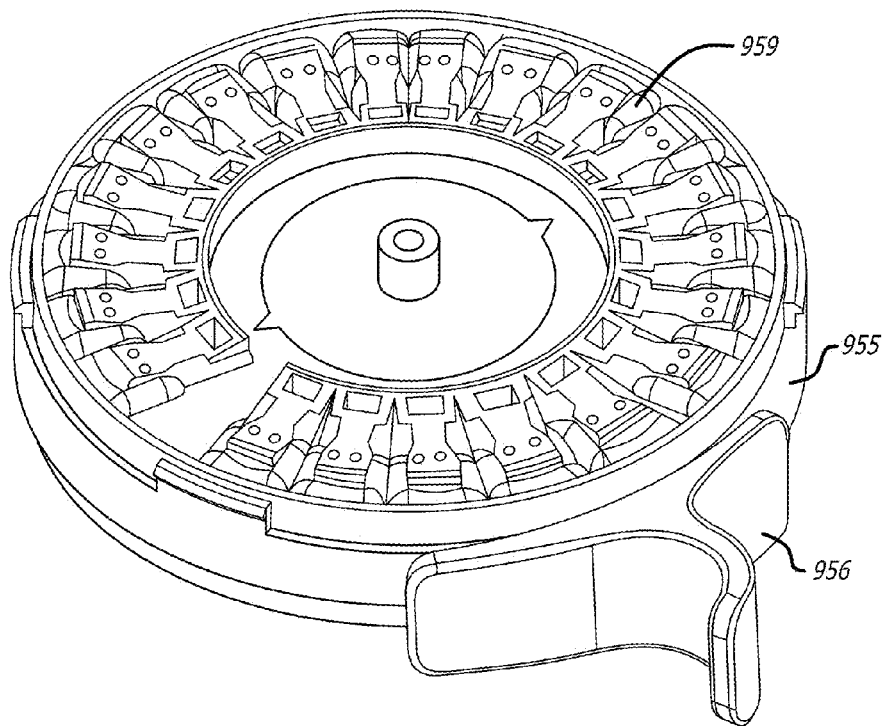


FIG. 62

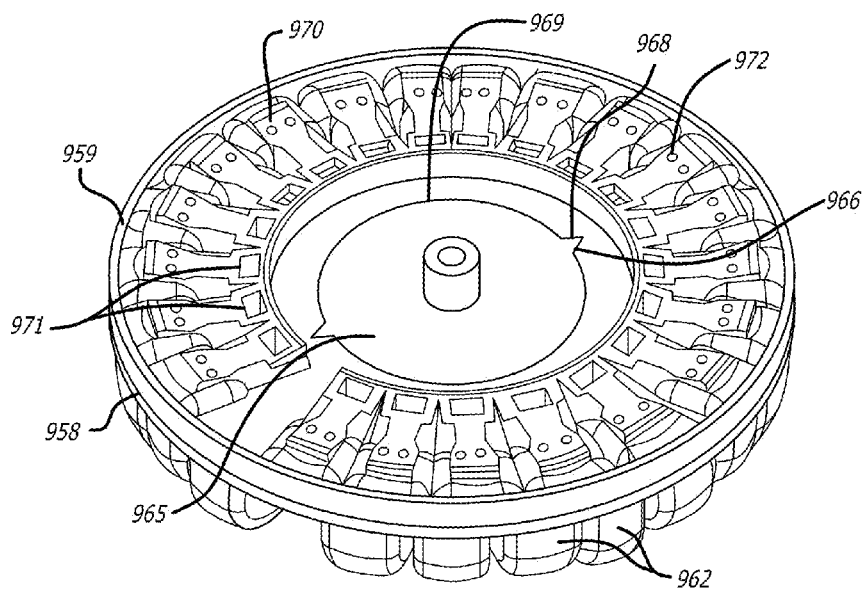


FIG. 63

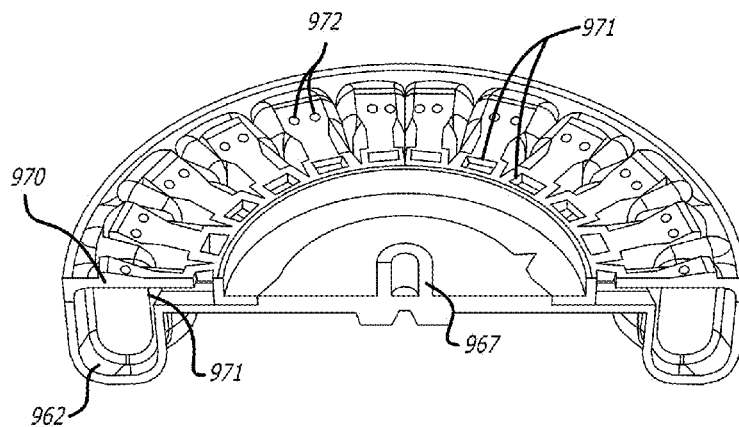
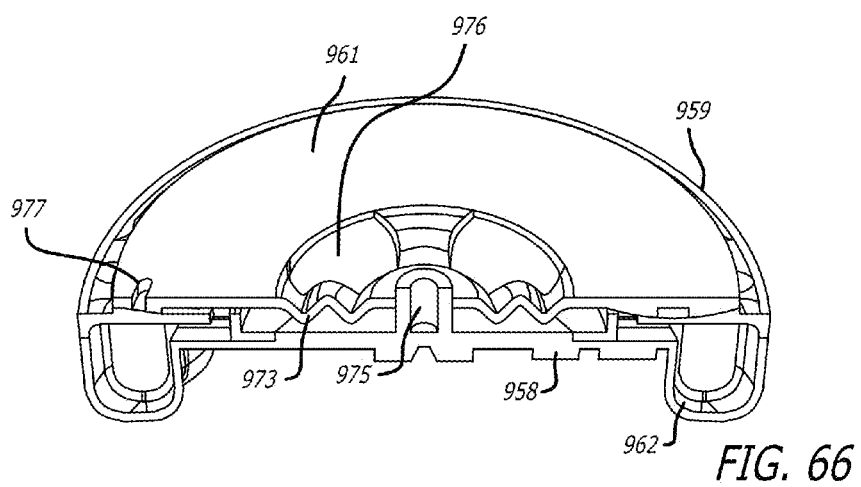
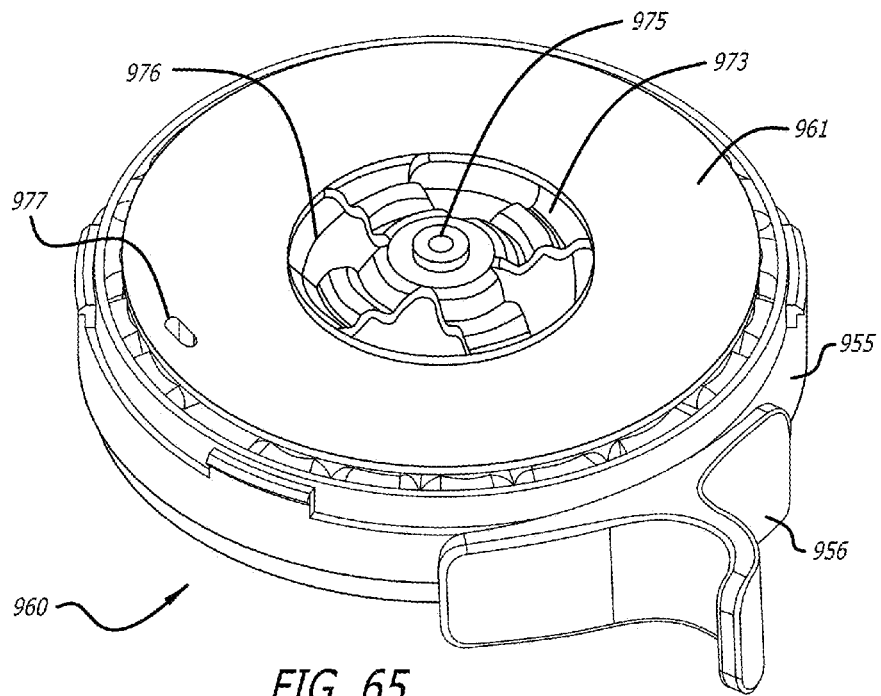


FIG. 64



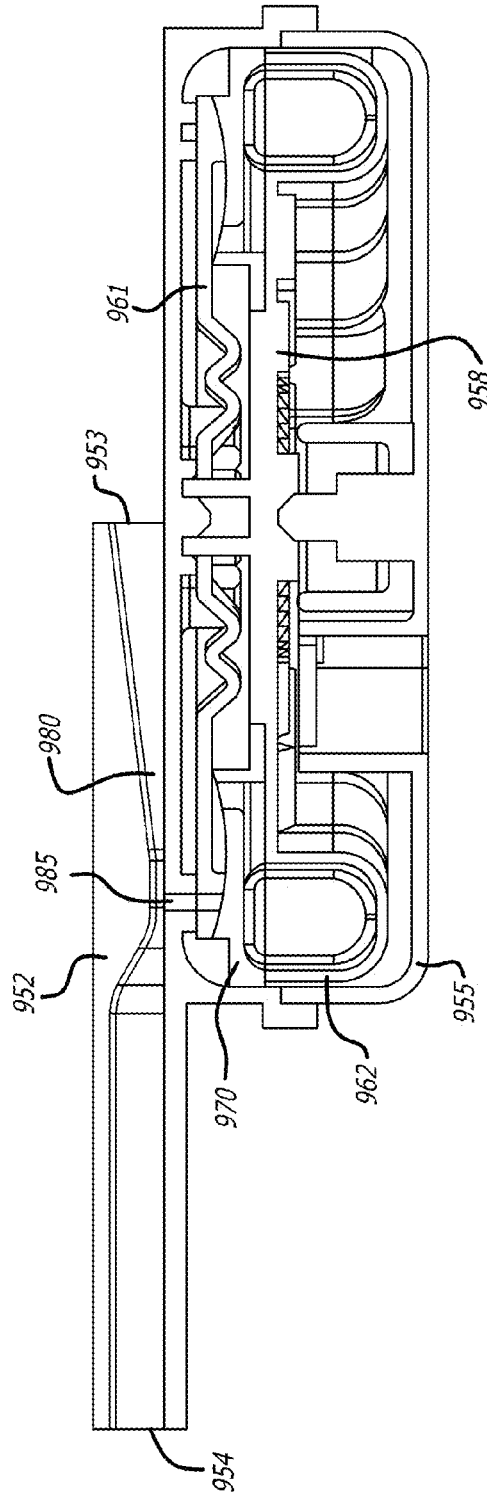


FIG. 67

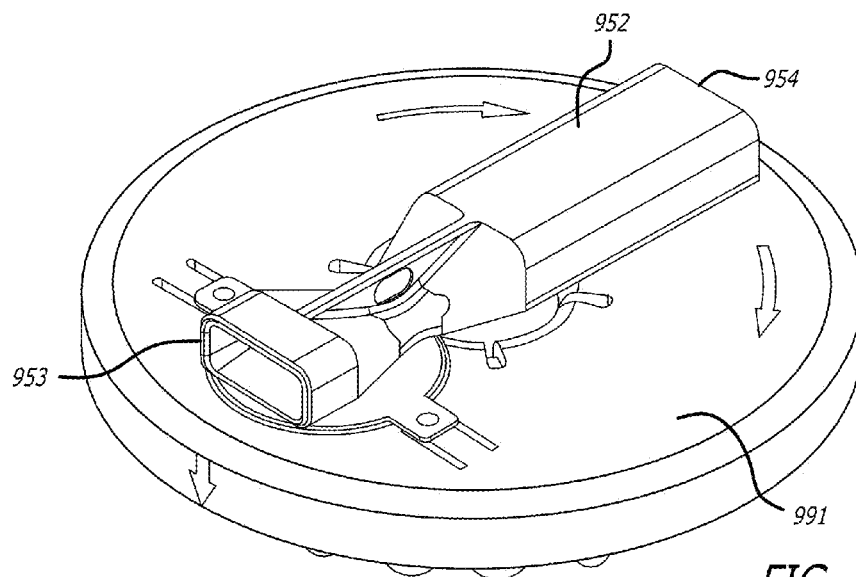


FIG. 68

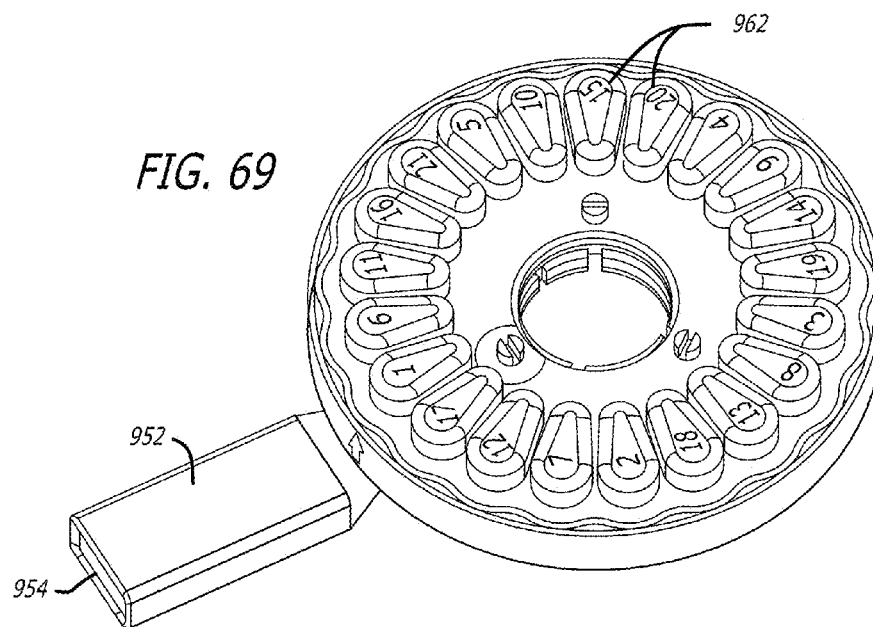


FIG. 69

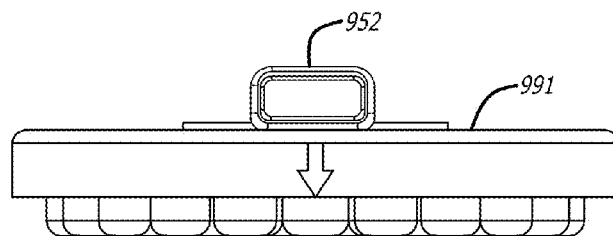


FIG. 70

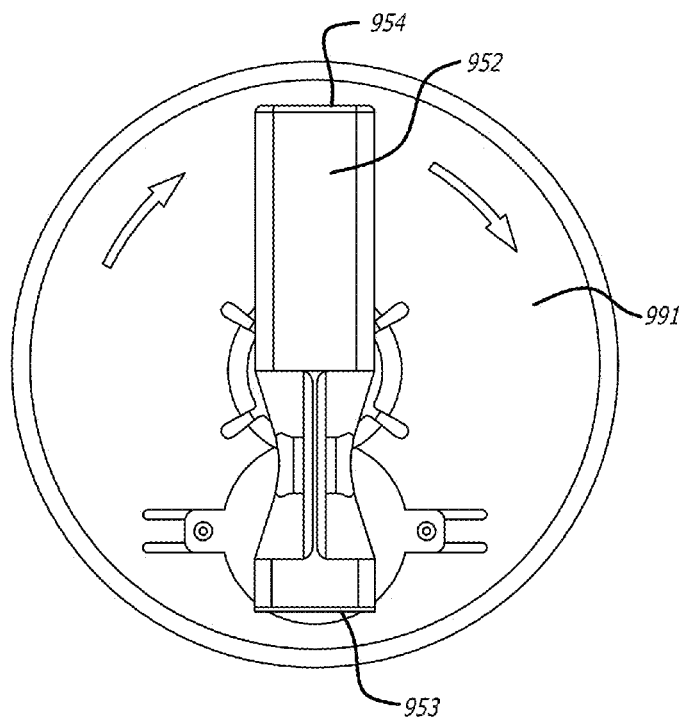


FIG. 71

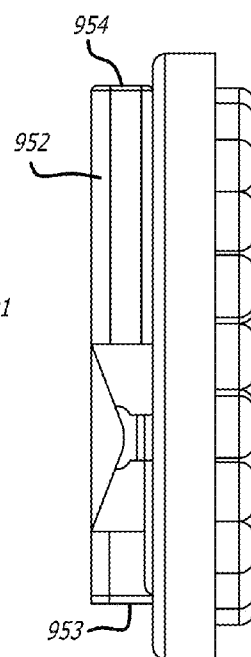
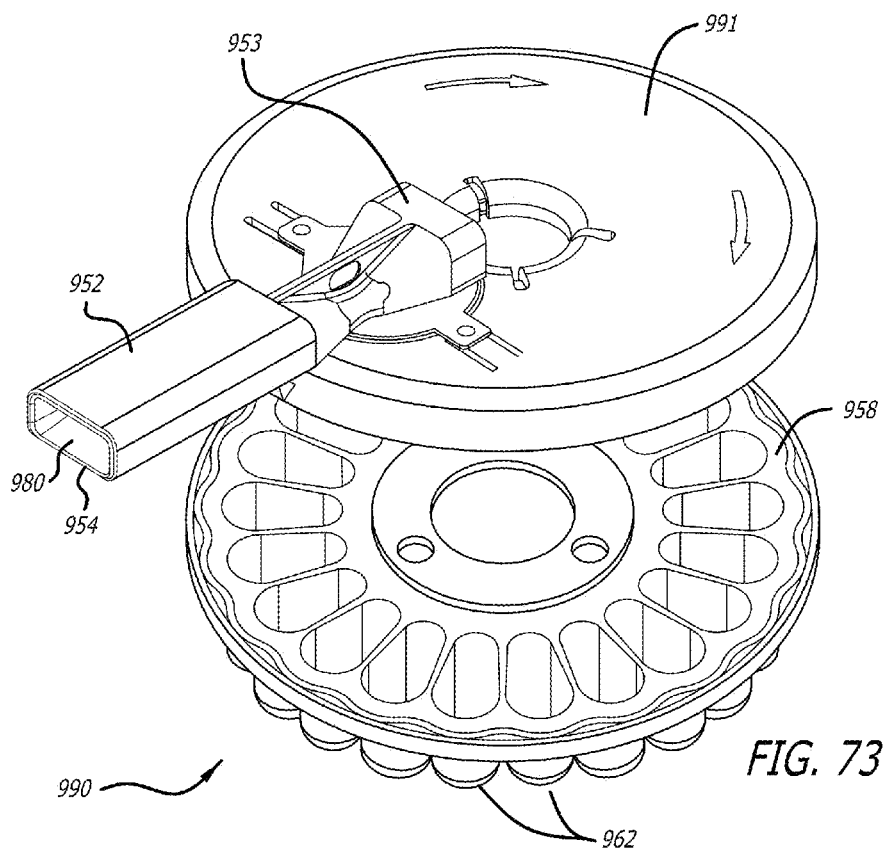


FIG. 72





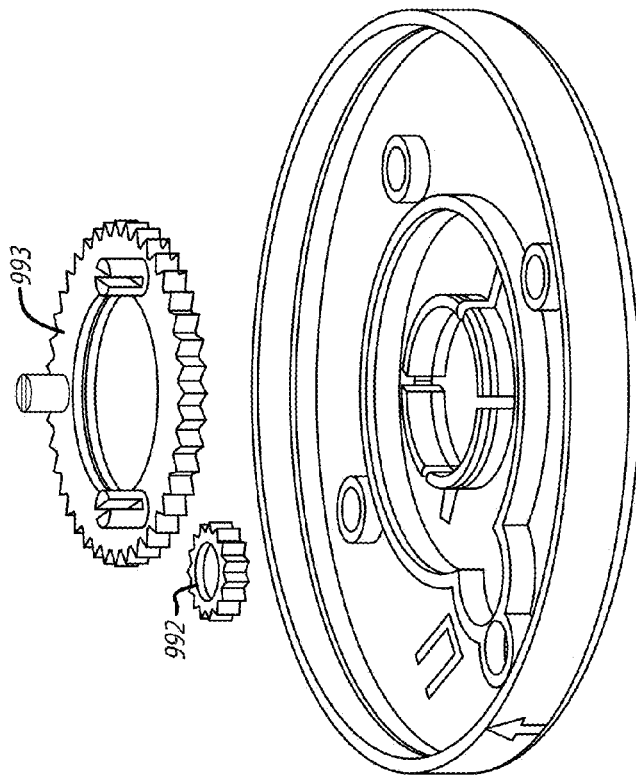
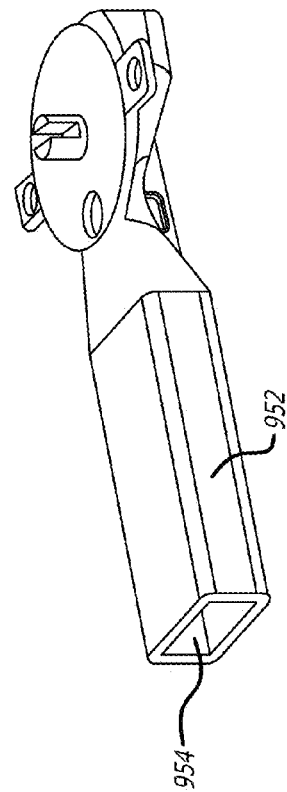


FIG. 74



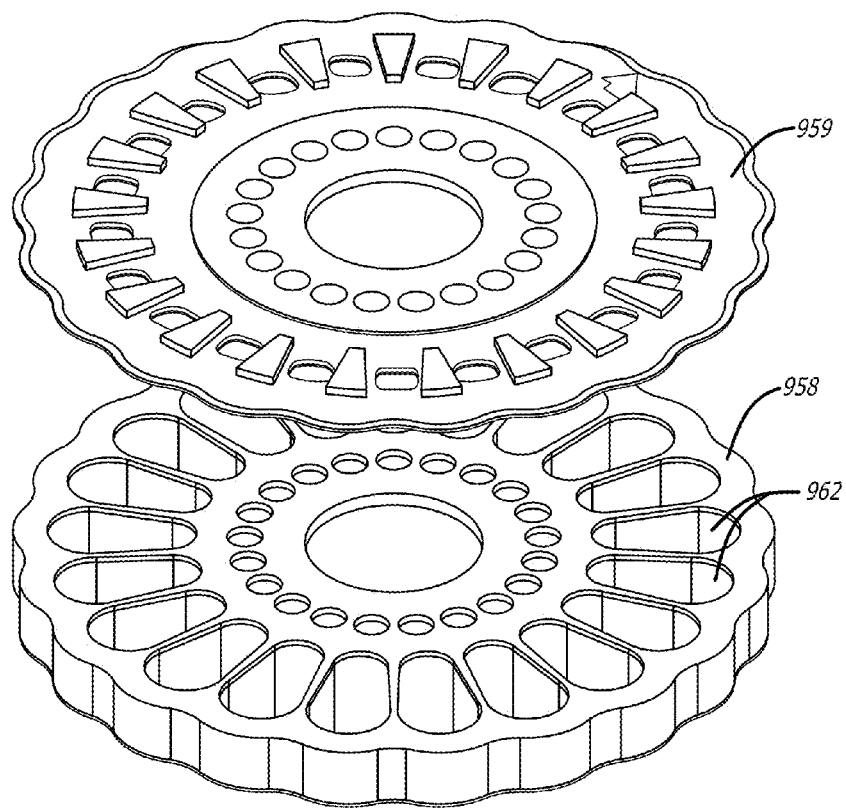
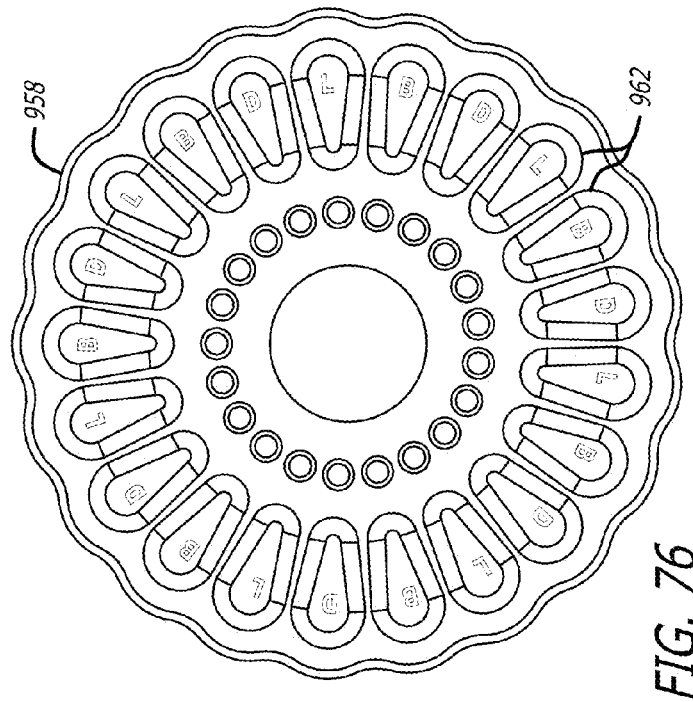
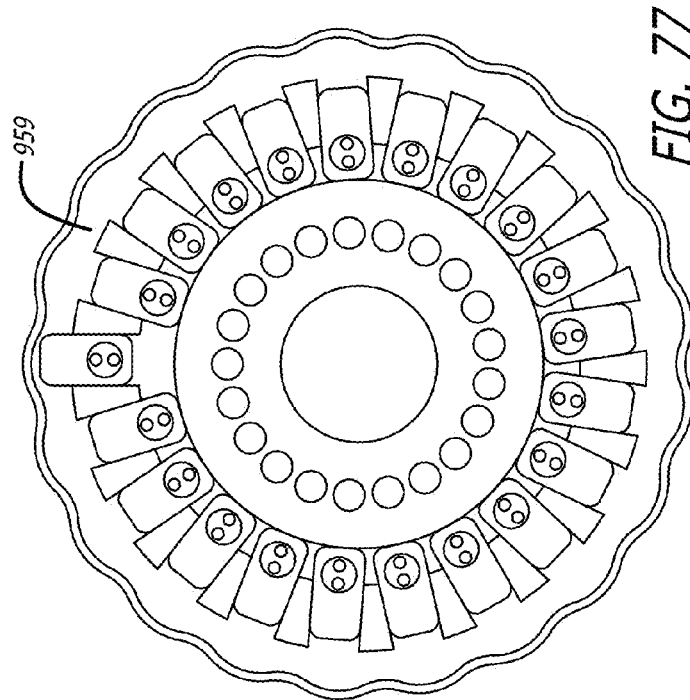
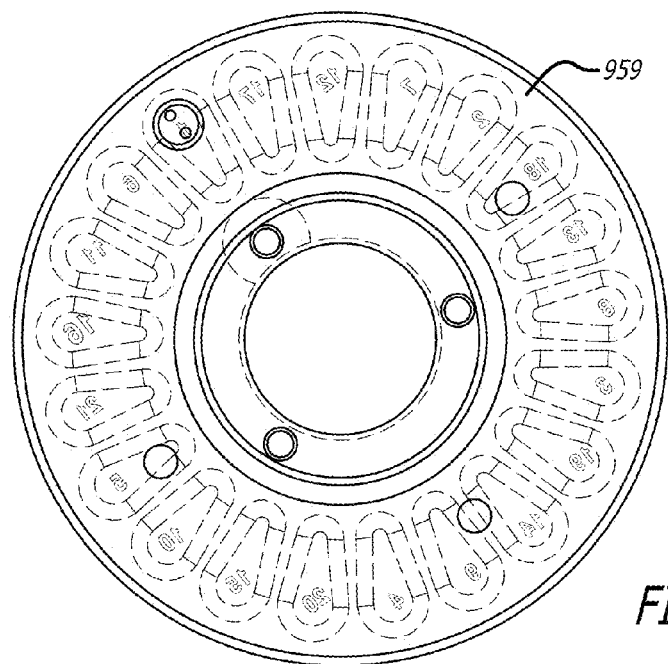
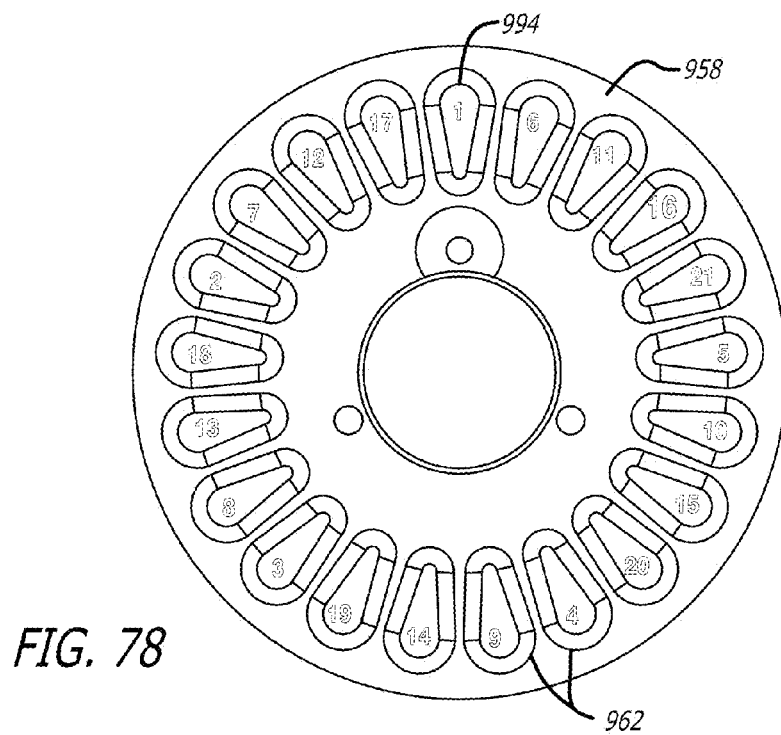


FIG. 75





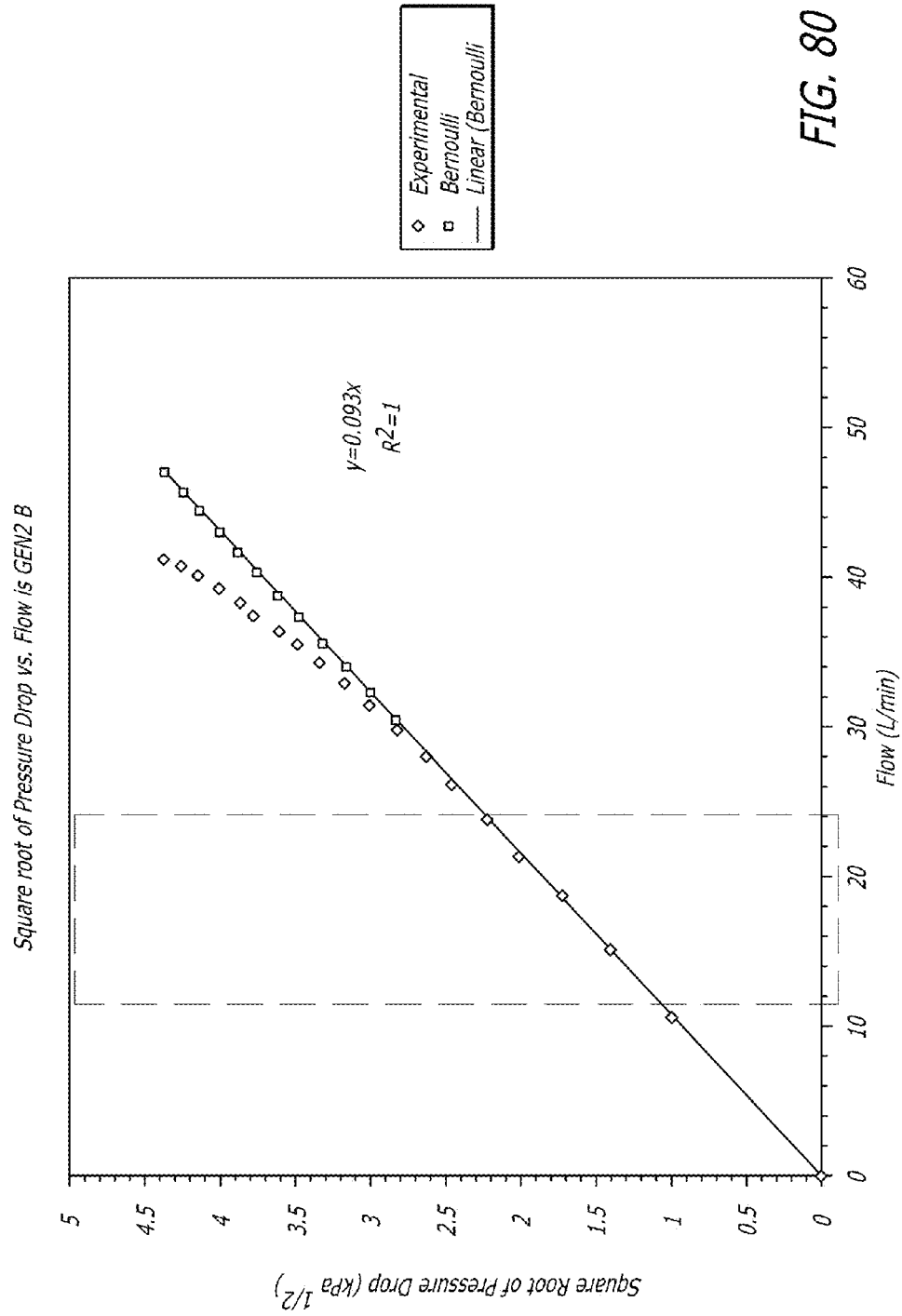


FIG. 80

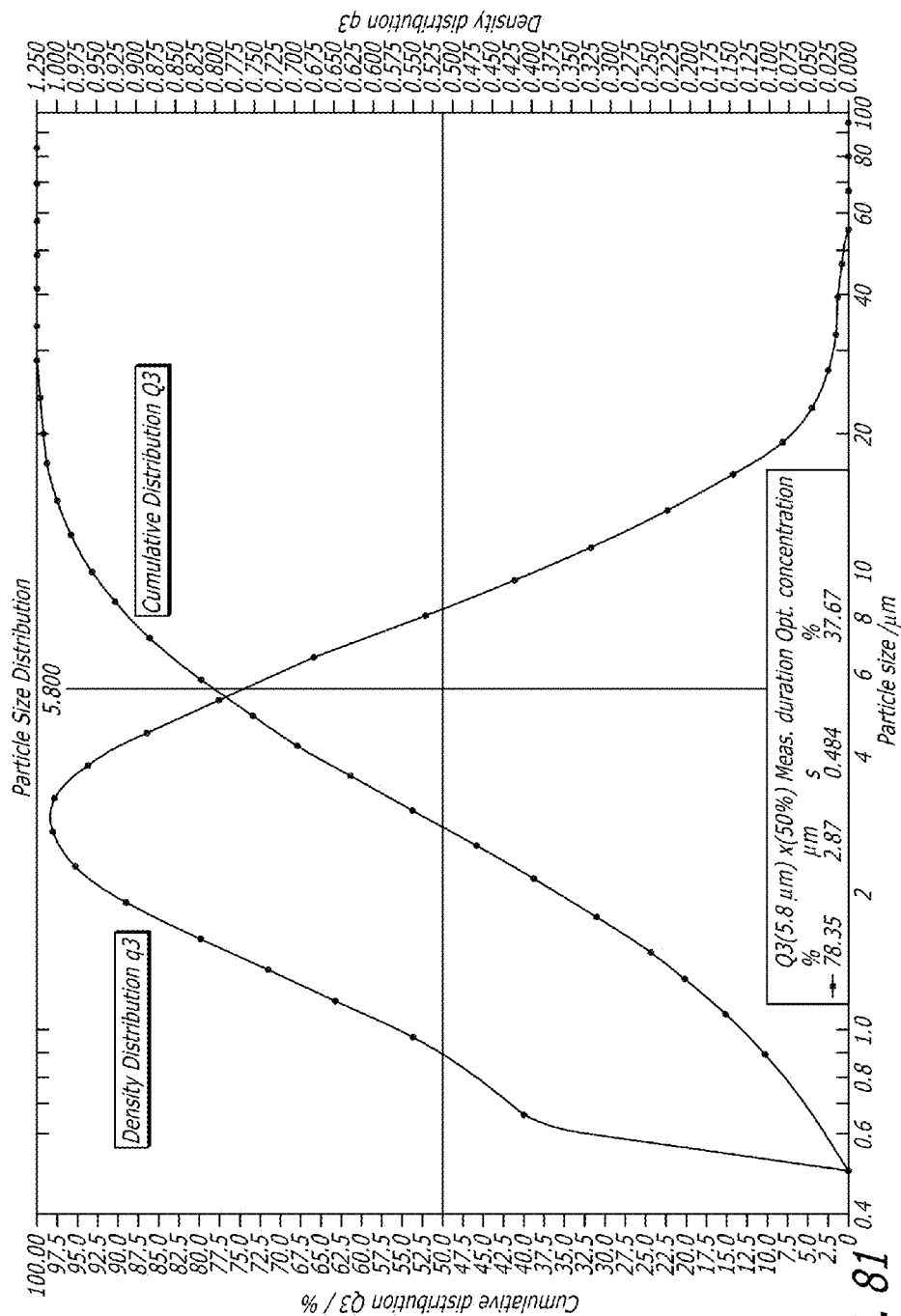


FIG. 81

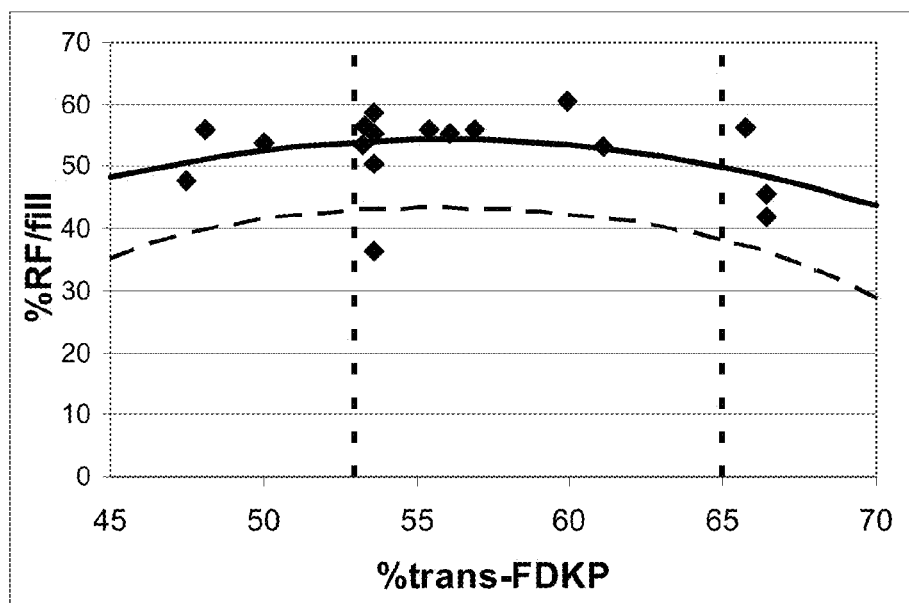
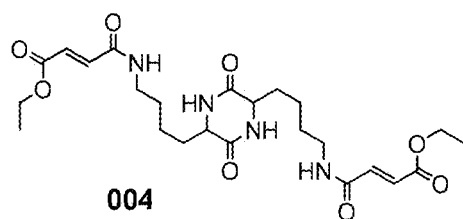
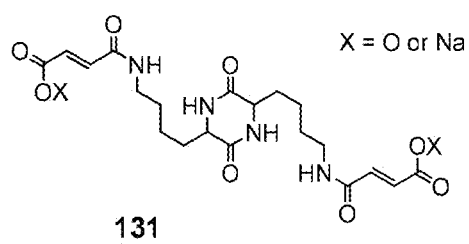


FIG. 82

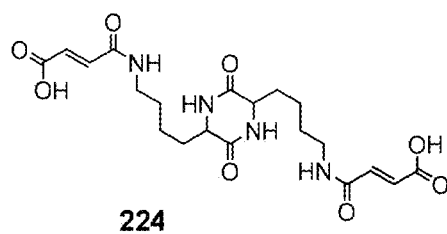


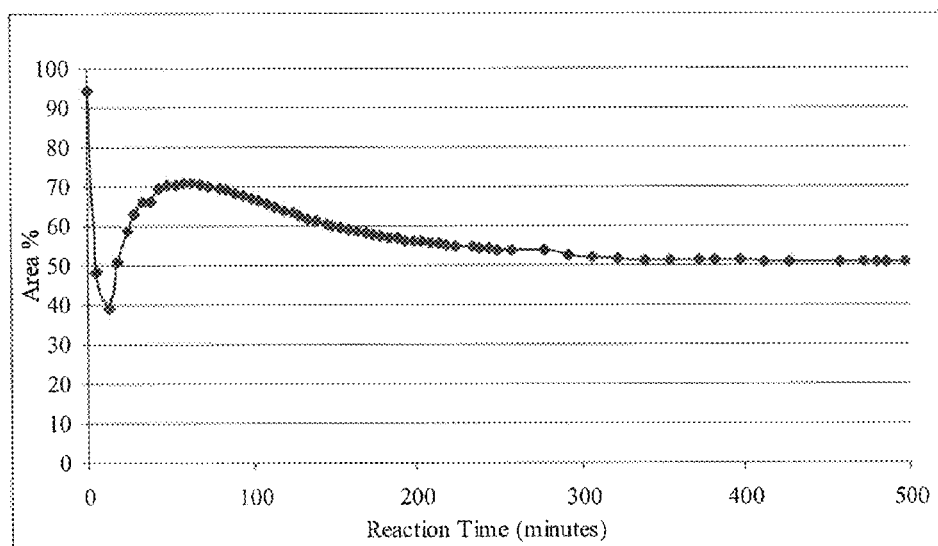


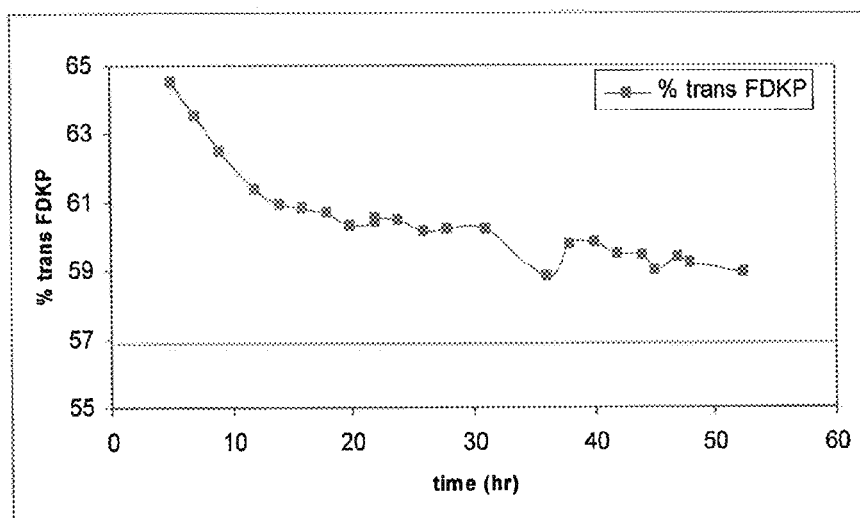
Saponification

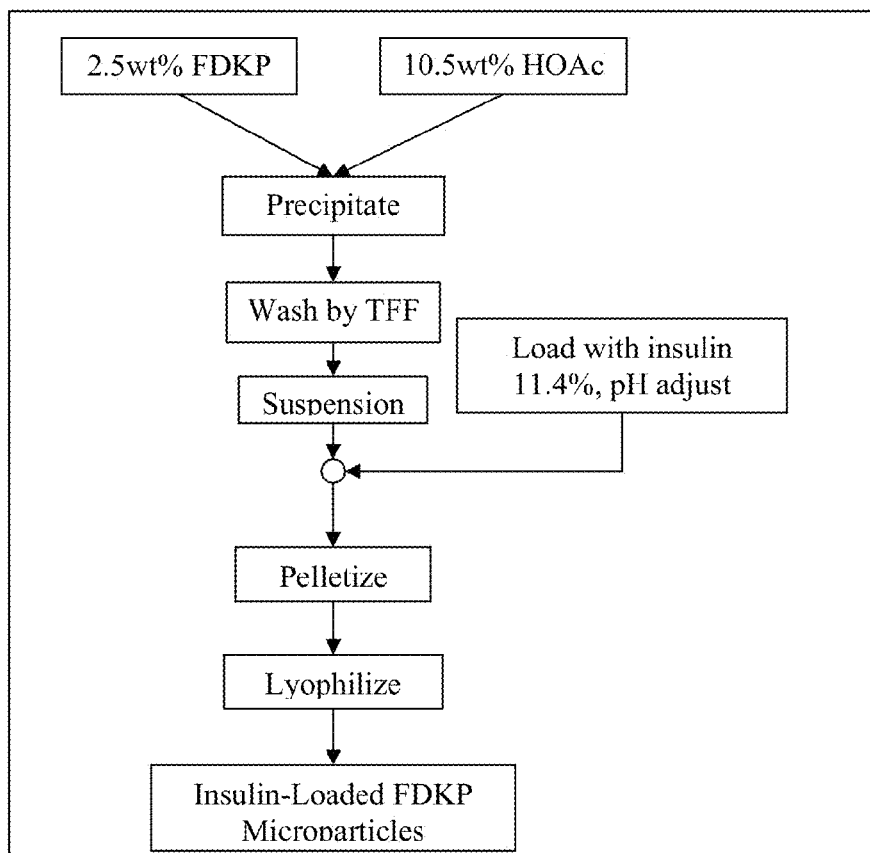


Recrystallization

*FIG. 83*

*FIG. 84*

*FIG. 85*

*FIG. 86*

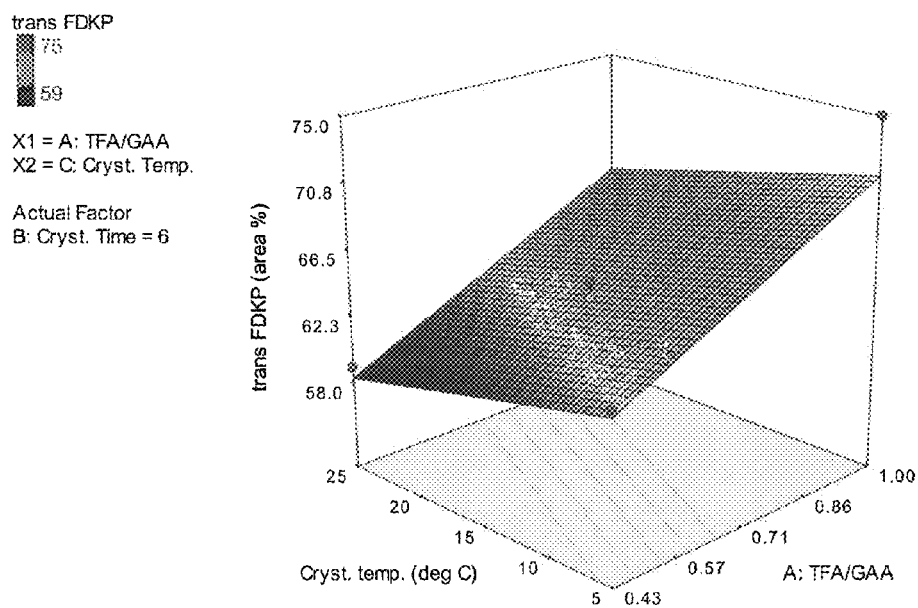


FIG. 87

1

## DRY POWDER INHALER AND SYSTEM FOR DRUG DELIVERY

### CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 12/484,129 filed Jun. 12, 2009, which claims priority from U.S. Provisional Patent Application Ser. Nos. 61/157,506, filed Mar. 4, 2009, and 61/061,551, filed on Jun. 13, 2008, the contents of each of these applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

### TECHNICAL FIELD

The present disclosure relates to dry powder inhalers, cartridges for dry powder inhalers and a system for rapid drug delivery to the pulmonary tract, including dry powder medicament formulations comprising active agents for the treatment of disease such as diabetes and obesity for use with the inhalers. In particular, the system can include a dry powder inhaler with or without a unit dose cartridge, and a drug delivery formulation comprising, for example, a diketopiperazine and an active ingredient such as peptides and proteins, including insulin and glucagon-like peptide 1.

All references cited in this specification, and their references, are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety where appropriate for teachings of additional or alternative details, features, and/or technical background.

### BACKGROUND

Drug delivery systems for the treatment of disease which introduce active ingredients into the circulation are numerous and include oral, transdermal, inhalation, subcutaneous and intravenous administration. Drugs delivered by inhalation are typically delivered using positive pressure relative to atmospheric pressure in air with propellants. Such drug delivery systems deliver drugs as aerosols, nebulized or vaporized. More recently, drug delivery to lung tissue has been achieved with dry powder inhalers. Dry powder inhalers can be breath activated or breath-powered and can deliver drugs by converting drug particles in a carrier into a fine dry powder which is entrained into an air flow and inhaled by the patient. Drugs delivered with the use of a dry powder inhaler can no longer be intended to treat pulmonary disease only, but also specific drugs can be used to treat many conditions, including diabetes and obesity.

Dry powder inhalers, used to deliver medicaments to the lungs, contain a dose system of a powder formulation usually either in bulk supply or quantified into individual doses stored in unit dose compartments, like hard gelatin capsules or blister packs. Bulk containers are equipped with a measuring system operated by the patient in order to isolate a single dose from the powder immediately before inhalation. Dosing reproducibility requires that the drug formulation is uniform and that the dose can be delivered to the patient with consistent and reproducible results. Therefore, the dosing system ideally operates to completely discharge all of the formulation effectively during an inspiratory maneuver when the patient is taking his/her dose. However, complete discharge is not required as long as reproducible dosing can be achieved. Flow properties of the powder formulation, and long term physical and mechanical stability in this respect, are more critical for bulk containers than they are for single unit dose compartments. Good moisture protection can be achieved more easily for unit dose compartments such as blisters,

2

however, the materials used to manufacture the blisters allow air into the drug compartment and subsequently the formulation loses viability with long storage. Additionally, dry powder inhalers which use blisters to deliver a medicament by inhalation can suffer with inconsistency of dose delivery to the lungs due to variations in the air conduit architecture resulting from puncturing films or peeling films of the blisters.

Dry powder inhalers such as those described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,305,986 and 7,464,706, which disclosure is incorporated herein by reference in their entirety, can generate primary drug particles or suitable inhalation plumes during an inspiratory maneuver by deagglomerating the powder formulation within a capsule. The amount of fine powder discharged from the inhaler's mouthpiece during inhalation is largely dependent on, for example, the interparticulate forces in the powder formulation and the efficiency of the inhaler to separate those particles so that they are suitable for inhalation. The benefits of delivering drugs via the pulmonary circulation are numerous and include rapid entry into the arterial circulation, avoidance of drug degradation by liver metabolism, ease of use, i.e., lack of discomfort of administration by other routes of administration.

Dry powder inhaler products developed for pulmonary delivery have met with limited success to date, due to lack of practicality and/or cost of manufacture. Some of the persistent problems observed with prior art inhalers, include lack of ruggedness of device, propellants use to deliver the powder, consistency in dosing, inconvenience of the equipment, poor deagglomeration, and/or lack of patient compliance. Therefore, the inventors have identified the need to design and manufacture an inhaler with consistent powder delivery properties, easy to use without discomfort, and discrete inhaler configurations which would allow for better patient compliance.

Further, drug delivery to the lungs for agents having systemic effects can also be performed. Advantages of the lungs for delivery of systemic agents include the large surface area and the ease of uptake by the lung's mucosal surface. One problem associated with all of these forms of pulmonary drug delivery is that it is difficult to deliver drugs into the lungs due to problems in getting the drugs past all of the natural barriers, such as the cilia lining the trachea, and in trying to administer a uniform volume and weight of drug.

Accordingly, there is room for improvement in the pulmonary delivery of drugs.

### SUMMARY

The present disclosure is directed to dry powder inhalers, cartridges for dry powder inhalers and a system for rapid drug delivery to the pulmonary tract, including dry powders comprising active agents for the treatment of disease, including diabetes and obesity. The dry powder inhaler can be breath-powered, compact, reusable or disposable, has various shapes and sizes, and comprises a system of airflow conduit pathways for the effective and rapid delivery of powder medicament. In one embodiment, the inhaler can be a unit dose, reusable or disposable inhaler that can be used with or without a cartridge. By use without a cartridge we refer to systems in which cartridge-like structures are integral to the inhaler, as opposed systems in which a cartridge is installed for use by, for example, the user. In another embodiment, the inhaler can be a multidose inhaler, disposable or reusable that can be used with single unit dose cartridges installed in the inhaler or cartridge-like structures built-in or structurally configured as part of the inhaler.

3

The dry powder inhalation system comprises a dry powder inhalation device or inhaler with or without a cartridge, and a pharmaceutical formulation comprising an active ingredient for pulmonary delivery. In some embodiments delivery is to the deep lung (that is, to the alveolar region) and in some of these embodiments the active agents is absorbed into the pulmonary circulation for systemic delivery. The system can also comprise a dry powder inhaler with or without a unit dose cartridge, and a drug delivery formulation comprising, for example, diketopiperazine and an active ingredient such as peptides and proteins, including insulin and glucagon-like peptide 1.

In one embodiment, the dry powder inhaler comprises a housing, a moveable member, and a mouthpiece, wherein the moveable member is operably configured to move a container from a powder containment position to a dosing position. In this and other embodiments, the moveable member can be a sled, a slide tray or a carriage which is moveable by various mechanisms.

In another embodiment, the dry powder inhaler comprises a housing and a mouthpiece, structurally configured to have an open position, a closed position and a mechanism operably configured to receive, hold, and reconfigure a cartridge from a containment position to a dispensing, dosing or dose delivery position upon movement of said inhaler from the open position to the closed position. In versions of this embodiment, the mechanism can also reconfigure a cartridge installed in the inhaler from the dosing position to a containment position after use when the inhaler is opened to unload a used cartridge. In one embodiment, the mechanism can reconfigure a cartridge to a disposable or discarding configuration after use. In such embodiments, the housing is structurally configured to be moveably attached to the mouthpiece by various mechanisms including, a hinge. The mechanism configured to receive and reconfigure a cartridge installed in the inhaler from a containment position to the dosing position can be designed to operate manually or automatically upon movement of the inhaler components, for example, by closing the device from an open configuration. In one embodiment, the mechanism for reconfiguring a cartridge comprises a slide tray or sled attached to the mouthpiece and movably attached to the housing. In another embodiment, the mechanism is mounted or adapted to the inhaler and comprises a geared mechanism integrally mounted within, for example, a hinge of the inhaler device. In yet another embodiment, the mechanism operably configured to receive and reconfigure the cartridge from a containment position to a dosing position comprises a cam that can reconfigure the cartridge upon rotation of, for example, the housing or the mouthpiece.

In an alternate embodiment, the dry powder inhaler can be made as a single use, unit dose disposable inhaler, which can be provided with a powder container configured to hold a powder medicament, wherein the inhaler can have a first and a second configuration in which the first configuration is a containment configuration and the second configuration is a dosing or dispensing configuration. In this embodiment, the inhaler can be provided with or without a mechanism for reconfiguring the powder container. According to aspects of the latter embodiment the container can be reconfigured directly by the user.

In yet another embodiment, an inhaler comprising a container mounting area configured to receive a container, and a mouthpiece having at least two inlet apertures and at least one exit aperture; wherein one inlet aperture of the at least two inlet apertures is in fluid communication with the container area, and one of the at least two inlet apertures is in fluid

4

communication with the at least one exit aperture via a flow path configured to bypass the container area.

In one embodiment, the inhaler has opposing ends such as a proximal end for contacting a user's lips or mouth and a distal end, and comprises a mouthpiece and a medicament container; wherein the mouthpiece comprises a top surface and a bottom or undersurface. The mouthpiece undersurface has a first area configured relatively flat to maintain a container in a sealed or containment configuration, and a second area adjacent to the first area which is raised relative to the first area. In this embodiment, the container is movable from the containment configuration to the dosing configuration and vice versa, and in the dosing configuration, the second raised area of the mouthpiece undersurface and the container form or define an air inlet passageway to allow ambient air to enter the internal volume of the container or expose the interior of the container to ambient air. In one embodiment, the mouthpiece can have a plurality of openings, for example, an inlet port, an outlet port and at least one port for communicating with a medicament container in a dispensing or dosing position, and can be configured to have integrally attached panels extending from the bottom surface sides of the inhaler and having flanges protruding towards the center of the inhaler mouthpiece, which serve as tracks and support for the container on the mouthpiece so that the container can move along the tracks from the containment position to a dispensing or dosing position and back to containment if desired. In one embodiment, the medicament container is configured with wing-like projections or winglets extending from its top border to adapt to the flanges on the mouthpiece panels. In one embodiment, the medicament container can be moved manually by a user from containment position to a dosing position and back to the containment position after dosing, or by way of a sled, a slide tray, or a carriage.

In another embodiment, a single use, unit dose, disposable inhaler can be constructed to have a sled incorporated and operably configured to the mouthpiece. In this embodiment, a bridge on the sled can abut or rest on an area of the medicament container to move the container along the mouthpiece panel tracks from the containment position to the dispensing or dosing position. In this embodiment, the sled can be operated manually to move the container on the mouthpiece tracks.

In one embodiment, the dry powder inhaler comprises one or more air inlets and one or more air outlets. When the inhaler is closed, at least one air inlet can permit flow to enter the inhaler and at least one air inlet allows flow to enter a cartridge compartment or the interior of the cartridge or container adapted for inhalation. In one embodiment, the inhaler has an opening structurally configured to communicate with the cartridge placement area and with a cartridge inlet port when the cartridge container is in a dosing position. Flow entering the cartridge interior can exit the cartridge through an exit or dispensing port or ports; or flow entering the container of an inhaler can exit through at least one of the dispensing apertures. In this embodiment, the cartridge inlet port or ports is/are structurally configured so that all, or a portion of the air flow entering the interior of the cartridge is directed at the exit or dispensing port or ports. The medicament container is structurally configured to have two opposing, relatively curvilinear sides which can direct airflow. In this embodiment, flow entering the air inlet during an inhalation can circulate within the interior of the container about an axis relatively perpendicular to the axis of the dispensing ports, and thereby, the flow can lift, tumble and effectively fluidize a powder medicament contained in the cartridge. In this and other embodiments, fluidized powder in the air conduit can be

5

further deagglomerated into finer powder particles by a change in direction or velocity, i.e., acceleration or deceleration of the particles in the flow pathway. In certain embodiments, the change in acceleration or deceleration can be accomplished by changing the angle and geometries of, for example, the dispensing port or ports, the mouthpiece conduit and/or its interfaces. In the inhalers described herewith, the mechanism of fluidization and acceleration of particles as they travel through the inhaler are methods by which deagglomeration and delivery of a dry powder formulation is effectuated.

In particular embodiments, a method for deagglomerating and dispersing a dry powder formulation comprises one or more steps such as tumbling within a primary container region started and enhanced by flow entering the container; a rapid acceleration of powder in the flow through the dispensing ports leaving the container; further accelerating the powder induced by a change in direction or velocity as the powder exits the dispensing port; shearing of powder particles caught within a flow gradient, wherein the flow on the top of the particle is faster than flow on bottom of the particle; deceleration of flow due to expansion of cross-sectional area within the mouthpiece air conduit; expansion of air trapped within a particle due to the particle moving from a higher pressure region to a lower pressure region, or collisions between particles and flow conduit walls at any point in the flow passages.

In another embodiment, a dry powder inhaler comprises a mouthpiece, a sled, slide tray, or a carriage, a housing, a hinge, and a gear mechanism configured to effectuate movement of the sled or slide tray; wherein the mouthpiece and the housing are moveably attached by the hinge.

Cartridges for use with the dry powder inhaler can be manufactured to contain any dry powder medicament for inhalation. In one embodiment, the cartridge is structurally configured to be adaptable to a particular dry powder inhaler and can be made of any size and shape, depending on the size and shape of the inhaler to be used with, for example, if the inhaler has a mechanism which allows for translational movement or for rotational movement. In one embodiment, the cartridge can be configured with a securing mechanism, for example, having a beveled edge on the cartridge top corresponding to a matching beveled edge in an inhaler so that the cartridge is secured in use. In one embodiment, the cartridge comprises a container and a lid or cover, wherein the container can be adapted to a surface of the lid and can be movable relative to the lid or the lid can be movable on the container and can attain various configurations depending on its position, for example, a containment configuration, a dosing configuration or after use configuration. Alternatively the lid can be removable. An exemplary embodiment can comprise an enclosure to hold medicament configured having at least one inlet aperture to allow flow into the enclosure; at least one dispensing aperture to allow flow out of the enclosure; the inlet aperture configured to direct at least a portion of the flow at the dispensing aperture or at the particles approaching the dispensing aperture within the enclosure in response to a pressure gradient. The dispensing aperture or apertures and the intake gas aperture each independently can have a shape such as oblong, rectangular, circular, triangular, square and oval-shaped and can be in close proximity to one another. During inhalation, a cartridge adapted to the inhaler in a dosing position allows airflow to enter the enclosure and mix with the powder to fluidize the medicament. The fluidized medicament moves within the enclosure such that medicament gradually exits the enclosure through the dispensing aperture, wherein the fluidized medicament exiting the dis-

6

persing aperture is sheared and diluted by a secondary flow not originating from within the enclosure. In one embodiment, the flow of air in the internal volume rotates in a circular manner so as to lift a powder medicament in the container or enclosure and recirculate the entrained powder particles or powder mass in the internal volume of the container promoting the flow to tumble prior to the particles exiting dispensing ports of the container or one or more of the inhaler inlet ports or air outlet or dispensing apertures, and wherein the recirculating flow, can cause tumbling, or non-vortical flow of air in the internal volume acts to deagglomerate the medicament. In one embodiment, the axis of rotation is mostly perpendicular to gravity. In another embodiment the axis of rotation is mostly parallel to gravity. The secondary flow not originating from within the enclosure further acts to de-agglomerate the medicament. In this embodiment, the pressure differential is created by the user's inspiration.

A cartridge for a dry powder inhaler, comprising: an enclosure configured to hold a medicament; at least one inlet port to allow flow into the enclosure, and at least one dispensing port to allow flow out of the enclosure; said at least one inlet port is configured to direct at least a portion of the flow entering the at least one inlet port at the at least one dispensing port within the enclosure in response to a pressure differential.

A unit dose cartridge for an inhaler comprising: a substantially flat cartridge top, arrow-like in configuration, having one or more inlet apertures, one or more dispensing apertures, and two side panels extending downwardly and each of the two side panels having a track; and a container moveably engaged to the track of the side panels of the cartridge top, and comprising a chamber configured to have a relatively cup-like shape with two relatively flat and parallel sides and a relatively rounded bottom, and interior surface defining an internal volume; said container configurable to attain a containment position and a dosing position with the cartridge top; wherein in use with a dry powder inhaler during an inhalation a flow entering the internal volume diverges as it enters the internal volume with a portion of the flow exiting through the one or more dispensing apertures and a portion of the flow rotating inside the internal volume and lifting a powder in the internal volume before exiting through the dispensing apertures.

In one embodiment, an inhalation system for pulmonary drug delivery is provided, comprising: a dry powder inhaler comprising a housing and a mouthpiece having an inlet and an outlet port, an air conduit between the inlet and the outlet, and an opening structurally configured to receive a cartridge; a cartridge mounting mechanism such as a sled; a cartridge configured to be adapted to the dry powder inhaler and containing a dry powder medicament for inhalation; wherein the cartridge comprises a container and a lid having one or more inlet ports or one or more dispensing ports; the dry powder inhaler system in use has a predetermined airflow balance distribution through said cartridge relative to total flow delivered to the patient.

In embodiments disclosed herewith, the dry powder inhaler system comprises a predetermined mass flow balance within the inhaler. For example, a flow balance of approximately 10% to 70% of the total flow exiting the inhaler and into the patient is delivered by the dispensing ports or passed through the cartridge, whereas approximately 30% to 90% is generated from other conduits of the inhaler. Moreover, bypass flow or flow not entering and exiting the cartridge can recombine with the flow exiting the dispensing port of the cartridge within the inhaler to dilute, accelerate and ultimately deagglomerate the fluidized powder prior to exiting the mouthpiece.



In the embodiments described herein, the dry powder inhaler is provided with relatively rigid air conduits or plumbing system and high flow resistance levels to maximize deagglomeration of powder medicament and facilitate delivery. Accordingly, effectiveness and consistency of powder medicament discharge is obtained from the inhaler after repeated use since the inhaler are provided with air conduit geometries which remain the same and cannot be altered. In some embodiments, the dry powder medicament is dispensed with consistency from the inhaler in less than about 3 seconds, or generally less than one second. In some embodiments, the inhaler system can have a high resistance value of, for example, approximately 0.065 to about 0.200 (vPa)/liter per minute. Therefore, in the system, peak inhalation pressure drops of between 2 and 20 kPa produce resultant peak flow rates of about between 7 and 70 liters per minute. These flow rates result in greater than 75% of the cartridge contents dispensed in fill masses between 1 and 30 mg. In some embodiments, these performance characteristics are achieved by end users within a single inhalation maneuver to produce cartridge dispense percentage of greater than 90%. In certain embodiments, the inhaler and cartridge system are configured to provide a single dose by discharging powder from the inhaler as a continuous flow, or as one or more pulses of powder delivered to a patient.

In one embodiment, a method for effectively deagglomerating a dry powder formulation during an inhalation in a dry powder inhaler is provided. The method can comprise the steps of providing a dry powder inhaler comprising a container having an air inlet, dispensing ports communicating with a mouthpiece air conduit and containing and delivering a formulation to a subject in need of the formulation; generating an airflow in the inhaler by the subject's inspiration so that about 10 to about 70% of the airflow entering the inhaler enters and exits the container; allowing the airflow to enter the container inlet, circulate and tumble the formulation in an axis perpendicular to the dispensing ports to fluidize the formulation so as to yield a fluidized formulation; accelerating metered amounts of fluidized formulation through the dispensing ports and in the air conduit, and decelerating the airflow containing fluidized formulation in the mouthpiece air conduit of the inhaler prior to reaching the subject.

In another embodiment, a method for deagglomerating and dispersing a dry powder formulation for inhalation is provided, comprising the steps of: generating an airflow in a dry powder inhaler comprising a mouthpiece and a container having at least one inlet port and at least one dispensing port and containing a dry powder formulation; said container forming an air passage between at least one inlet port and at least one dispensing port and the inlet port directs a portion of the airflow entering the container to at least one dispensing port; allowing airflow to tumble powder within the container in a substantially perpendicular axis to the at least one dispensing port so as to lift and mix the dry powder medicament in the container to form an airflow medicament mixture; and accelerating the airflow exiting the container through at least one dispensing port. In one embodiment, the inhaler mouthpiece is configured to have a gradual expanding cross-section to decelerate flow and minimize powder deposition inside the inhaler and promote maximal delivery of powder to the patient. In one embodiment, for example, the cross-sectional area of the oral placement region of an inhaler can be from about 0.05 cm<sup>2</sup> to about 0.25 cm<sup>2</sup> over an approximate length of about 3 cm. These dimensions depend on the type of powder used with the inhaler and the dimensions of the inhaler itself.

A cartridge for a dry powder inhaler, comprising: a cartridge top and a container defining an internal volume; wherein the cartridge top has an undersurface that extends over the container; said undersurface configured to engage said container, and comprising an area to contain the internal volume and an area to expose the internal volume to ambient air.

In an alternate embodiment, a method for the delivery of particles through a dry powder delivery device is provided, comprising: inserting into the delivery device a cartridge for the containment and dispensing of particles comprising an enclosure enclosing the particles, a dispensing aperture and an intake gas aperture; wherein the enclosure, the dispensing aperture, and the intake gas aperture are oriented such that when an intake gas enters the intake gas aperture, the particles are deagglomerated, by at least one mode of deagglomeration as described above to separate the particles, and the particles along with a portion of intake gas are dispensed through the dispensing aperture; concurrently forcing a gas through a delivery conduit in communication with the dispensing aperture thereby causing the intake gas to enter the intake gas aperture, de-agglomerate the particles, and dispense the particles along with a portion of intake gas through the dispensing aperture; and, delivering the particles through a delivery conduit of the device, for example, in an inhaler mouthpiece. In embodiment described herein, to effectuate powder deagglomeration, the dry powder inhaler can be structurally configured and provided with one or more zones of powder deagglomeration, wherein the zones of deagglomeration during an inhalation maneuver can facilitate tumbling of a powder by air flow entering the inhaler, acceleration of the air flow containing a powder, deceleration of the flow containing a powder, shearing of a powder particles, expansion of air trapped in the powder particles, and/or combinations thereof.

In another embodiment, the inhalation system comprises a breath-powered dry powder inhaler, a cartridge containing a medicament, wherein the medicament can comprise, for example, a drug formulation for pulmonary delivery such as a composition comprising a diketopiperazine and an active agent. In some embodiments, the active agent comprises peptides and proteins, such as insulin, glucagon-like peptide 1, oxyntomodulin, peptide YY, exendin, analogs thereof, and the like. The inhalation system of the invention can be used, for example, in methods for treating conditions requiring localized or systemic delivery of a medicament, for example, in methods for treating diabetes, pre-diabetes conditions, respiratory track infection, pulmonary disease and obesity. In one embodiment, the inhalation system comprises a kit comprising at least one of each of the components of the inhalation system for treating the disease or disorder.

The present disclosure also provides systems, microparticles and methods that allow for improved delivery of drugs to the lungs. Embodiments disclosed herein achieve improved delivery by providing fumaryl diketopiperazine (FDKP) microparticles with a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%. Microparticles with a trans isomer content in this range exhibit characteristics beneficial to drug delivery to the lungs such as improved aerodynamic performance.

One embodiment disclosed herein comprises FDKP microparticles comprising a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the trans isomer content is from about 45 to about 63%. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the trans isomer content is from about 53 to about 65%. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the trans isomer content is from about 53 to about 63%. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the trans isomer

content is from about 50 to about 56%. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the trans isomer content is from about 54 to about 56%.

In another embodiment, the FDKP microparticles comprise a drug. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the drug is insulin. In another embodiment of the FDKP microparticles, the insulin content is from about 3 to about 4 U/mg.

Embodiments disclosed herein also include dry powders. In one embodiment, the dry powders comprise FDKP microparticles comprising a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 45 to about 63%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 50 to about 63%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 53 to about 65%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 53 to about 63%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 50 to about 56%. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the trans isomer content is from about 54 to about 56%.

In another embodiment of the dry powders, the FDKP microparticles comprise a drug. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the drug is insulin. In another embodiment of the dry powders, the insulin content of the FDKP microparticles is from about 3 to about 4 U/mg.

Further embodiments concern drug delivery systems comprising an inhaler, a unit dose dry powder medicament container, and a powder comprising the microparticles disclosed herein and an active agent.

Embodiments disclosed herein also include methods. One embodiment includes a method of treating an insulin-related disorder comprising administering a dry powder described above to a person in need thereof.

Another embodiment disclosed herein includes a method of making microparticles suitable for pulmonary administration as a dry powder comprising: a) providing a solution of FDKP wherein the trans isomer content is from about 45 to about 65%, b) providing a solution of a volatile acid, and c) mixing the solutions together in a high-shear mixer to produce the microparticles.

Also disclosed herein is a method for preparing FDKP microparticles comprising recrystallizing FDKP from a solvent to obtain FDKP microparticles, wherein the trans-FDKP isomer content of the microparticles is about 45% to about 65%, or about 53% to about 63%, or about 54% to about 56%. Further embodiments include FDKP microparticles comprising a drug, and having a manufacturing specification of about 53% to about 63% trans-FDKP isomer content, based on the total content of FDKP.

Another embodiment disclosed herein includes a method of delivering insulin to a patient in need thereof comprising administering a dry powder comprising diketopiperazine microparticles disclosed herein to the deep lung by inhalation of the dry powder by the patient. In aspects of this embodiment particular features of an inhaler system are specified.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 depicts a perspective view of an embodiment of a dry powder inhaler in a closed position.

FIG. 2 depicts a perspective view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 showing the dry powder inhaler in a partially opened position.

FIG. 3 depicts a perspective view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 showing the inhaler in a fully opened, cartridge loading/unloading position and depicting the interior compartment of the inhaler.

FIG. 4A depicts a perspective view of the inhaler in FIG. 1 showing the inhaler in a fully opened, cartridge loading/unloading position, depicting its internal surface including the interior surface of the inhaler mouthpiece. FIG. 4B depicts a perspective view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 4A showing the inhaler in the fully opened, cartridge loading/unloading position and the cartridge configured for placement into the inhaler. FIG. 4C is the inhaler shown in FIGS. 4A and 4B showing a cartridge loaded into the cartridge holder.

FIG. 5 depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 with a cartridge and in a fully opened position, shown in mid-longitudinal section and containing a cartridge in the holder, wherein the cartridge container is in the containment position.

FIG. 6 depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 with a cartridge and in a partially opened position shown in mid-longitudinal section and containing a cartridge in the holder, wherein the cartridge is in a containment position.

FIG. 7 depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 with a cartridge and in a closed position, shown in mid-longitudinal section and containing a cartridge in the holder, wherein the cartridge is in a dosing position.

FIG. 8 depicts a top view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 in a fully opened configuration and showing the inner compartment components of the inhaler.

FIG. 9 depicts a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of the dry powder inhaler in the closed or inhalation position.

FIG. 10 depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 9 in an opened position, showing a cartridge installed in the cartridge holder, wherein the cartridge is in a containment position.

FIG. 11A and FIG. 11B depict the dry powder inhaler embodiment of FIG. 9 in an opened (FIG. 11A) and closed (FIG. 11B) position, shown in a mid-longitudinal section with the cartridge in the cartridge holder in the containment position and dosing position, respectively.

FIG. 12 depicts a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of the dry powder inhaler in the closed position.

FIG. 13 depicts a perspective view of the dry powder inhaler embodiment of FIG. 12 in an open position showing the interior compartment of the inhaler.

FIG. 14 depicts the embodiment of FIG. 12 in an opened, loading/unloading position having a cartridge installed in the holder in the containment position.

FIG. 15A depicts the embodiment of FIG. 12 showing the dry powder inhaler in the closed position as a cross-section through the longitudinal axis. The geared mechanism for opening and closing a cartridge and opening and closing the inhaler can be seen. FIG. 15B depicts the embodiment of FIG. 12 showing the dry powder inhaler in the closed position as a cross-section through the mid-longitudinal axis.

FIG. 15C depicts an alternate embodiment of the inhaler of FIG. 12 showing an isometric view of the inhaler in a closed position. FIGS. 15D, 15E, 15F, 15G, and 15H depict side, top, bottom, proximal and distal views, respectively, of the inhaler of FIG. 15C. FIG. 15I depicts a perspective view of the inhaler in FIG. 15C in an open configuration showing a corresponding cartridge and a mouthpiece covering. FIG. 15J depicts an isometric view of the inhaler of FIG. 15I in an open configuration with a cartridge installed in the holder. FIG. 15K depicts the inhaler of FIG. 15C in cross-section through the mid-

## 11

longitudinal axis with a cartridge installed in the cartridge holder and in a dosing configuration, and the closed configuration FIG. 15J.

FIG. 16 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of the dry powder inhaler in the closed position.

FIG. 17 illustrates the embodiment FIG. 16 in an opened, loading/unloading position having a cartridge installed in the cartridge holder.

FIG. 18 illustrates the embodiment FIG. 16 in a closed, inhalation position having a cartridge installed in the cartridge holder in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 19 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of a dry powder inhaler for single use, showing the container in a containment configuration.

FIG. 20 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 19 wherein the inhaler is in the dosing configuration, which allows air to flow through the interior of the powder containment cup.

FIG. 21 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 19 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the inhaler is in a containment configuration.

FIG. 22 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 20 in longitudinal section wherein the inhaler is the dosing configuration.

FIG. 23 depicts a bottom view of the embodiment of FIG. 19, showing the undersurface of the dry powder inhaler components.

FIG. 24 illustrates a perspective view of yet another embodiment of a dry powder inhaler for single use, showing the containment configuration.

FIG. 25 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler of FIG. 23 wherein the dosing configuration, which allows air to flow through the interior of the medicament container is shown.

FIG. 26 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 24 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the medicament container in a containment or closed position is displayed.

FIG. 27 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 24 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the medicament container in a dosing position is displayed.

FIG. 28 is a perspective and bottom view of the inhaler of FIG. 24, showing the undersurface components of the inhaler.

FIG. 29 illustrates a perspective view of yet an alternate embodiment of a dry powder inhaler showing the containment configuration.

FIG. 30A and FIG. 30B illustrate perspective views of the inhaler of FIG. 29 in an opened position and showing a cartridge installed in a containment or closed position.

FIG. 31 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 30 in mid-longitudinal section in the open configuration wherein the medicament container in a containment position is displayed.

FIG. 32 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 31 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the medicament container in a containment position is displayed and the mouthpiece section has been secured with the housing.

FIG. 33 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 29 showing the inhaler in a dosing position.

FIG. 34 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 33 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the medicament container in a dosing position is displayed.

FIG. 35 illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment for use with the inhaler of FIG. 1 as also shown in FIG. 4B depicting the cartridge in a containment configuration.

## 12

FIG. 36 illustrates a top view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. 35, showing the component structures of the cartridge top surface.

FIG. 37 illustrates a bottom view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. 35, showing the component structures of the cartridge undersurface.

FIG. 38A illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 35 in mid-longitudinal cross-section and in a containment configuration. FIG. 38B illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 35 in a mid-longitudinal cross-section and in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 39A depicts a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of a cartridge in a containment configuration. FIG. 39B through 39F depict the cartridge embodiment shown in FIG. 39A in a top, bottom, proximal, distal and side views, respectively. FIG. 39G depicts a perspective view of the cartridge embodiment shown in FIG. 39A in a dosing configuration. FIGS. 39H and 39I are cross-sections through the longitudinal axis of the cartridge embodiment of FIGS. 39A and 39G, respectively.

FIG. 40 illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment for use with the inhaler of FIG. 29 showing the cartridge in a containment configuration.

FIG. 41 illustrates an exploded view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. 40, showing the component parts of the cartridge.

FIG. 42 illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 40 in mid-longitudinal cross-section in a containment configuration.

FIG. 43 illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 40 in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 44 illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 38 in a mid-longitudinal cross-section and in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 45 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate cartridge embodiment for use with a dry powder inhaler showing the cartridge in a containment configuration.

FIG. 46A illustrates a perspective view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. 45 for use with a dry powder inhaler showing the cartridge in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 46B illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. 45 in a mid-longitudinal cross-section and in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 47A illustrates a perspective view of an alternate cartridge embodiment for use with a dry powder inhaler showing the cartridge in a containment configuration.

FIG. 47B illustrates a perspective view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. 47A for use with a dry powder inhaler showing the cartridge in a dosing configuration.

FIG. 48 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of a dry powder inhaler shown in an opened configuration.

FIG. 49 illustrates an exploded view of the inhaler embodiment of FIG. 48 showing the inhaler component parts.

FIG. 50 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler in FIG. 48 in the open configuration and showing the type and orientation of a cartridge to be installed in the inhaler holder.

FIG. 51 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler in FIG. 50 in the open configuration and showing a cartridge installed in the inhaler.

FIG. 52 illustrates a mid-longitudinal section of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 51 showing the cartridge container in the containment configuration and in contact with the sled and the gear mechanism in contact with the sled.

FIG. 53 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler in FIG. 50 in the closed configuration and with a cartridge in the holder.

## 13

FIG. 54 illustrates a mid-longitudinal section of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 53 showing the cartridge container in the dosing configuration and the air flow pathway established through the container.

FIG. 55 is a schematic representation of the movement of flow within the powder containment area of a dry powder inhaler as indicated by the arrows.

FIG. 56 is a schematic representation of an embodiment of a dry powder inhaler showing the flow pathways and direction of flow through the inhaler as indicated by the arrows.

FIG. 57 illustrates a perspective view of a multidose embodiment of a dry powder inhaler.

FIG. 58 illustrates an exploded view of the inhaler embodiment of FIG. 57 showing the inhaler component parts.

FIG. 59 illustrates a perspective bottom view of component part 958 of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 60 illustrates a perspective top view of component parts assembled of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 61 illustrates a perspective top view of component part 958 of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 62 illustrates a perspective top view of component parts of the housing assembly of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 63 illustrates a perspective view of the cartridge disk system of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 64 illustrates a perspective view of the cartridge disk system illustrated in FIG. 63 in cross-section.

FIG. 65 illustrates a perspective top view of the housing subassembly of the inhaler depicted in FIGS. 57 and 58.

FIG. 66 illustrates a perspective cross-sectional view of component parts of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 58.

FIG. 67 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 57 in cross-section.

FIG. 68 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of a multidose dry powder inhaler.

FIG. 69 illustrates a perspective bottom view of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 70 illustrates a top view of the inhaler embodiment of FIG. 68 showing the inhaler body and the mouthpiece.

FIG. 71 illustrates a front view of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 72 illustrates a side view of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 73 illustrates a perspective explode view showing the bottom cartridge tray removed with not all component parts depicted.

FIG. 74 illustrates an exploded view of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68 showing the gear drive system.

FIG. 75 illustrates a perspective view of cartridge disk system of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 76 illustrates a back view of cartridge disk system of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 77 illustrates a front view of cartridge disk system of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 78 illustrates a bottom view of cartridge disk system of the inhaler depicted in FIG. 68.

FIG. 79 illustrates a top view of seal disk of the inhaler depicted in FIG.

FIG. 80 illustrates a graph of measurements of flow and pressure relationship based on the Bernoulli principle for an exemplary embodiment of the resistance to flow of an inhaler.

FIG. 81 depicts the particle size distribution obtained with a laser diffraction apparatus using an inhaler and cartridge containing a dry powder formulation for inhalation comprising insulin and fumaryl diketopiperazine particles.

FIG. 82 depicts aerodynamic powder performance as a function of % trans isomer content;

## 14

FIG. 83 depicts steps in a synthetic scheme that can be controlled so as to produce FDKP with a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%;

FIG. 84 depicts % trans isomer content as a function of slow NaOH addition during the saponification step of the scheme depicted in FIG. 2;

FIG. 85 depicts % trans isomer content after trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) recrystallization using a fast cooling ramp;

FIG. 86 depicts a schematic of a process to manufacture insulin-loaded FDKP microparticles with a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%; and

FIG. 87 depicts a response surface methodology analysis for trans isomer content.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION

In embodiments disclosed herein, there is disclosed a dry powder inhaler, a cartridge for a dry powder inhaler and an inhalation system for delivering pharmaceutical medications to a patient via inhalation. In one embodiment, the inhalation system comprises a breath-powered dry powder inhaler, and a cartridge containing a pharmaceutical formulation comprising a pharmaceutically active substance or active ingredient and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. The dry powder inhaler is provided in various shapes and sizes, and can be reusable or for single use, easy to use, is inexpensive to manufacture and can be produced in high volumes in simple steps using plastics or other acceptable materials. In addition to complete systems, inhalers, filled cartridges and empty cartridges constitute further embodiments disclosed herein. The present inhalation system can be designed to be used with any type of dry powder. In one embodiment, the dry powder is a relatively cohesive powder which requires optimal deagglomeration condition. In one embodiment, the inhalation system provides a re-useable, miniature breath-powered inhaler in combination with single-use cartridges containing pre-metered doses of a dry powder formulation.

As used herein the term "a unit dose inhaler" refers to an inhaler that is adapted to receive a single container a dry powder formulation and delivers a single dose of a dry powder formulation by inhalation from container to a user. It should be understood that in some instance multiple unit doses will be required to provide a user with a specified dosage.

As used herein the term "a multiple dose inhaler" refers to an inhaler having a plurality of containers, each container comprising a pre-metered dose of a dry powder medicament and the inhaler delivers a single dose of a medicament powder by inhalation at any one time.

As used herein a "container" is an enclosure configured to hold or contain a dry powder formulation, a powder containing enclosure, and can be a structure with or without a lid.

As used herein a "powder mass" is referred to an agglomeration of powder particles or agglomerate having irregular geometries such as width, diameter, and length.

As used herein, the term "microparticle" refers to a particle with a diameter of about 0.5 to about 1000  $\mu\text{m}$ , irrespective of the precise exterior or interior structure. However four pulmonary delivery microparticles that are less than 10  $\mu\text{m}$  are generally desired, especially those with mean particles sizes of less than about 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter. Microparticles having a diameter of between about 0.5 and about 10 microns can reach the lungs, successfully passing most of the natural barriers. A diameter of less than about 10 microns is required to navigate the turn of the throat and a diameter of about 0.5 microns or greater is required to avoid being exhaled. To

15

reach the deep lung (or alveolar region) where most efficient absorption is believed to occur, it is preferred to maximize the proportion of particles contained in the “respirable fraction” (RF), generally accepted to be about 0.5 to about 5.7 microns, though some references use somewhat different ranges. Embodiments disclosed herein show that FDKP microparticles with a trans isomer content of between about 45 to about 65% exhibit characteristics beneficial to delivery of drugs to the lungs such as improved aerodynamic performance.

Respirable fraction on fill (RF/fill), representing the % of powder in a dose that emitted from an inhaler upon discharge, is a measure of microparticle aerodynamic performance. As described herein, a RF/fill score of 40% or greater reflects acceptable aerodynamic performance characteristics.

It should be understood that specific RF/fill values can depend on the inhaler used to deliver the powder. Powders generally tend to agglomerate and crystalline DKP microparticles form particularly cohesive powders. One of the functions of a dry powder inhaler is to deagglomerate the powder. However deagglomeration is not typically complete so that the particle size distribution seen when measuring the respirable fraction as delivered by an inhaler will not match the size distribution of the primary particles, that is the profile will be shifted toward larger particles. Although inhaler designs vary in their efficiency of deagglomeration and thus the absolute value of RF/fill observed using such different designs will also vary, it is expected that optimal RF/fill as a function of surface area (or other variables impacting aerodynamic performance) will be similar from inhaler to inhaler.

As used herein a “unit dose” refers to a pre-metered dry powder formulation for inhalation. Alternatively, a unit dose can be a single container having multiple doses of formulation that can be delivered by inhalation as metered single amounts. A unit dose cartridge/container contains a single dose. Alternatively it can comprise multiple individually accessible compartments, each containing a unit dose.

As used herein, the term “about” is used to indicate that a value includes the standard deviation of error for the device or method being employed to determine the value.

The present devices can be manufactured by several methods, however, in one embodiment, the inhalers and cartridges are made, for example, by injection molding techniques, thermoforming, using various types of plastic materials, including, polypropylene, cyclicolephin co-polymer, nylon, and other compatible polymers and the like. In certain embodiments, the dry powder inhaler can be assembled using top-down assembly of individual component parts. In some embodiments, the inhalers are provided in compact sizes, such as from about 1 inch to about 5 inches in dimension, and generally, the width and height are less than the length of the device. In certain embodiments the inhaler is provided in various shapes including, relatively rectangular bodies, cylindrical, oval, tubular, squares, oblongs, and circular forms.

In embodiments described and exemplified herewith, the inhalers effectively fluidize, deagglomerate or aerosolize a dry powder formulation by using at least one relatively rigid flow conduit pathway for allowing a gas such as air to enter the inhaler. For example, the inhaler is provided with a first air/gas pathway for entering and exiting a cartridge containing the dry powder, and a second air pathway which can merge with the first air flow pathway exiting the cartridge. The flow conduits, for example, can have various shapes and sizes depending on the inhaler configuration.

An embodiment of the dry powder inhaler is exemplified in FIGS. 1-8. In this embodiment, the dry powder inhaler has three configurations, i.e., a closed configuration is illustrated in FIGS. 1 and 7, a partially opened configuration is illus-

16

trated in FIGS. 2 and 6 and an open configuration is illustrated in FIGS. 3-5 and 8. The dry powder inhaler 100 as depicted in FIGS. 1-8 has a relatively rectangular body having a proximal end for contacting the user's lips or oral cavity and a distal end, with top and bottom sides, a housing 120, mouthpiece 130 and carriage, slide tray or sled 117. FIG. 1 illustrates the dry powder inhaler in a closed position, wherein the mouthpiece 130 comprises a body 112 and has one or more air inlets 110 (see also FIGS. 5 and 7) and an oral placement section having an outlet 135. An air conduit runs the length of the inhaler mouthpiece 130 from air inlet 110 to outlet 135. Mouthpiece 130 can be configured having a narrowing in the shape of an hourglass at approximately its mid to distal section to accelerate airflow, and then it is configured of a wider diameter at its proximal end, or oral placement section to decelerate airflow towards outlet or opening 135 (see FIG. 7). Air conduit 140 (FIG. 4A) has an opening 155 for adapting an area or boss 126 of cartridge top 156 (FIG. 4B) and is in communication with a mounted cartridge 150 in the inhaler in the closed position (FIGS. 6 and 7). When the inhaler is in a closed or inhalation position as shown in FIG. 1, body 112 encloses a portion of the housing 120 of the inhaler 100. FIG. 1 also depicts a cartridge holder 115 extending downwardly from the inhaler body. In the embodiment of FIG. 1, the housing 120 is structurally configured to be relatively rectangular in shape and has a bottom wall 123, side walls 124 with riblet projections 125 which facilitate a stable grip for opening and closing the inhaler 100.

FIG. 2 is the dry powder inhaler embodiment depicted in FIG. 1, showing the inhaler in a partially opened containment position, wherein mouthpiece 130 shows a portion of the housing 120 protruding slightly outwardly. In this position, mouthpiece 130 can pivot by angular rotation to an opened configuration for loading a cartridge, or can be closed to a dosing configuration if a cartridge is contained in the holder, or for storage. In FIG. 2, a cartridge mounted in the cartridge holder 115 is in a closed, powder containment configuration. FIG. 3 illustrates a perspective view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1, showing the inhaler in a fully opened, cartridge loading/unloading position and depicting the interior compartment areas of the inhaler. As seen in FIG. 3, mouthpiece 130, in the fully opened position of the inhaler, can be relatively moved about 90° from vertical plane Y-Z to a horizontal plane X-Z. As mouthpiece 130 rotates from the opened to the closed position, aperture 155 (FIG. 4A) can engage cartridge boss 126 (FIG. 4B) allowing exit or dispensing ports 127 to be in communication and within the floor of the flow conduit 140 with a cartridge adapted in the inhaler.

As illustrated in FIG. 3, housing 120 comprises the bottom portion of the inhaler body, which comprises a cartridge holder 115 in the shape of a cup, a securing mechanism to secure the inhaler in the closed position, such as snap 121, and an air inlet aperture 118 which communicates with the mouthpiece air conduit 140 at opening 155 in the mouthpiece floor without a cartridge in the holder 115 in the closed position of the inhaler. With a cartridge installed in the inhaler and in the closed position, inlet aperture 118 communicates with the cartridge inlet port 119 when the cartridge 150 is in the dosing configuration (see FIG. 7). In the closed position of the inhaler, the sled 117 is configured at its proximal end to correspond in shape to air inlet aperture 118 of housing 120 so that the air inlet is not obstructed in the closed position of the inhaler. In this embodiment, movement of mouthpiece 130 from a partially opened to a closed position is accomplished through a sliding motion in the X-Z plane, and movement of mouthpiece 130 from a partially open to a fully open configuration is angular rotating about the Z axis. To achieve full

17

closure of the inhaler, mouthpiece 130 is moveable in the horizontal axis X and moves or slides distally relative to housing 120. In this manner, the translational movement of slide tray or sled 117 against the cartridge top 156 of cartridge 150 being held in the cartridge container 115 (see FIG. 4) moves and places the boss 126 over the cartridge container, so that cartridge container 151 is under dispensing ports 127 and in alignment over mouthpiece opening 155. This translational movement also configures the cartridge 150 to form an opening or an air inlet 119 into the container 151. A flow pathway is then established with air conduit 140 and inlet 118 through dispensing ports 127. Cartridge boss 126 is structurally configured to correspond and fit the opening 155 (FIG. 4A) in the waist section of the air conduit 140 of mouthpiece 130 so that it is within the internal wall of the air conduit 140.

FIGS. 4A-4C depict the perspective views of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 showing the inhaler in the fully opened, cartridge loading/unloading position. FIG. 4A is a front view of the inhaler showing mouthpiece 130 comprising the top portion of the body of the inhaler; an aperture 155 relatively centrally located in the mouthpiece inner surface communicates with air conduit 140; an air inlet 110 and an air outlet 135 are in communication with the air conduit 140 of the inhaler 100. Housing 120 forms the bottom portion of the inhaler body and comprises a cartridge holder 115 and holds a slide tray or sled 117 which moves relative to the housing 120. A hinge 160 (FIG. 4A) formed by a snap and a rod engages the slide tray or sled 117 onto mouthpiece 130. FIG. 4B illustrates the inhaler of FIG. 4A and a cartridge 150 configured to be adaptable into inhaler 100. The inhaler is shown in the fully open position with a cartridge above the cartridge holder container 115 yet to be installed in the inhaler; housing 120 comprising an air aperture or inlet 118, slide tray or sled 117, which is engaged to mouthpiece 130 having aperture 155 and air inlet 110. Cartridge 150 comprises a medicament container 151 and a top 156 comprising a boss 126 with dispensing ports 127. The cartridge top 156 comprises a first area 154 which is recessed such that its bottom wall is in contact with container 151 top border and seals the container 151 in a containment position. While in this embodiment, first area 154 is recessed for ease of manufacturing, the first area 154 can have alternate designs as long as it forms an acceptable seal for containing a dry powder. A second area of cartridge top 156 contains boss 126 and this portion of the cartridge top is slightly raised and hollow in its undersurface so that when the cartridge container 151 is moved to a dispensing position, the top border of container 151 forms an opening or air inlet with cartridge top 156 to create a passageway through the cartridge inlet and the dispensing ports. FIG. 4B shows cartridge 150 in a containment position, which is the position in which the cartridge is closed and does not allow a flow path to be established through its interior compartment. As seen in the FIG. 4C, cartridge 150 is installed in inhaler 100 and the inhaler is in the opened configuration.

FIG. 5 also depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 4C in a fully opened position, shown in mid-longitudinal section and containing cartridge 150 in the holder, wherein cartridge container 151 is in the containment position and fits into container holder 115. Cartridge top 156 and recessed area 154 are clearly depicted as forming a tight seal with the container 151. The area of the cartridge top 156 under the boss can be seen as concave-like in shape and raised when compared to the area 154.

FIG. 6 depicts the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 4A in a partially opened position in mid-longitudinal section and containing cartridge 150 with cartridge container 151

18

installed in cartridge holder 115. In this embodiment, cartridge container 151 is in a containment position; boss 126 snugly fitting in aperture 155 of airflow conduit 140, which allows dispensing port 127 to be in fluid communication with air conduit 140. As seen in FIG. 6, sled or slide tray 117 abuts cartridge top 156, and the mouthpiece and slide tray 117 can move as a unit so that the cartridge top can move over container 151 upon closure of the device to attain the dispensing position. In the closed or dispensing position, the securing mechanism illustrated by snaps 121 (FIG. 3) maintain housing 120 and mouthpiece 130 securely engaged. In this embodiment, housing 120 can be disengaged from mouthpiece 130 by releasing the snaps and moving mouthpiece 130 over housing 120 in the opposite direction to attain a partially opened configuration which causes cartridge 150 to be reconfigured from the dosing position to the containment configuration.

Cartridge 150 can be movably configured from a containment position to a dosing position within the inhaler upon reconfiguration of the inhaler unit to a closed position as shown in FIG. 7. In the dosing position, cartridge container 151 is in alignment with boss 126, and air inlet port 119 is formed by cartridge container 151 and cartridge top 156, which is in communication with dispensing ports 127 establishing an air conduit through cartridge 150.

FIG. 7 further depicts a mid-longitudinal section of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 in a closed position and ready for inhalation and containing cartridge 150 in holder 115, wherein the cartridge container 151 is in a dosing position. As seen in FIG. 7, cartridge boss 126 is structurally configured to fit in inhaler aperture 155 so that air flow exiting the cartridge through dispensing or exit ports 127 enters the flow path of air entering air conduit at 110. FIG. 7 also illustrates cartridge air inlet 119 formed by cartridge top 156 and cartridge container 151 in the dosing configuration and proximity of air inlet 119 to dispensing ports 127. In one embodiment, boss 126 with dispensing ports 127 are positioned at the narrowest section of air conduit 140 of mouthpiece 130.

FIG. 8 depicts a top view of the dry powder inhaler of FIG. 1 in a fully opened configuration and showing the inner compartment components of the inhaler. As seen in FIG. 8, mouthpiece 130 is moveably attached or articulated to housing 120 by hinge assembly 160, via slide tray or sled 117 which is engageably connected to mouthpiece 130 by hinge 160, 161 and to housing 120 interior. Sled 117 is movable in the horizontal plane of housing 120 and can be prevented from moving further in the direction of the mouthpiece by flanges 134, which protrude outwardly and can be stopped by recess 137 of the housing. Cartridge container holder 115 is integrally formed within the bottom wall of housing 120 which has aperture 118 which allows ambient air into the inhaler to supply airflow into the cartridge in a dosing position. Sled 117 is held within the housing by, for example, protrusions or flanges 133 extending from the side walls of the housing into its interior space.

In another embodiment, a dry powder inhaler is provided with a relatively cylindrical shape. FIG. 9 through FIG. 11B illustrate this embodiment, wherein the inhaler comprises a housing 220 integrally attached to mouthpiece 230, and a sled or slide tray 217. In FIGS. 9 and 10, sled 217 is depicted comprising outer shell 257 which is in telescopic arrangement and concentrically positioned and partially covering housing 220. Sled 217 further comprises a gripping mechanism such as ribs 225 on the outer surface of shell 257 for securely gripping inhaler sled 217 while sliding over housing 220 to open and close the device. Sled 217 further comprises groove 221 in its inner surface at its end facing the mouth-

19

piece for engageably attaching with snap ring 224 segments of mouthpiece 230 for securing the inhaler in a closed configuration.

As seen in FIG. 11A, sled 217 also comprises cartridge holder 215 configured to receive cartridge 250. Cartridge holder 215 is integrally structured with outer shell 257 so that movement of outer shell 257 moves the cartridge holder while closing the inhaler. FIG. 11A also illustrates the positioning of cartridge 250 within the inhaler and wherein the cartridge can be seen as having top 256, boss 226, dispensing ports 227 and a container 251 in a containment position. In this embodiment, movement of sled 217 effectuates translation of cartridge container 251 to the dosing position in alignment with dispensing ports 227 and configuration of inlet port 219 as seen in FIG. 11B.

In this embodiment, housing 220 is tubular in shape and it is structurally configured to have air inlet 210 with one or more air conduits, for example, air conduits such as, air conduits 245, 246. Surface projections or ribs 225 from the outer surface of sled shell 257 allow for ease of gripping the inhaler device 200 in use. As seen in FIG. 9, the inhaler comprises mouthpiece portion 230 and housing 220, air inlet 210 and air outlet 235. As shown in FIG. 10, inhaler 200 can be configured to an open configuration wherein a user can load and/or unload a cartridge. By gripping ribs 222 and 225, sled outer shell 257 can be moved away from mouthpiece 230, and the cartridge holder can then be accessed. FIG. 10 shows inhaler 200 in an opened, cartridge loading/unloading position and depicting sled 217 fully retracted from mouthpiece 230 to allow access to the internal compartment to load or unload a cartridge. FIG. 10 also illustrates cartridge 250 installed in cartridge holder 215 of sled 217 and the mechanism such as outer shell 257 for actuating and opening the cartridge to the airflow path upon engagement of the sled outer shell 257 in snap ring 224 of the mouthpiece so that the device is in the closed, or inhalation position. Closing of the device is effectuated by translational movement of sled 217 over the housing 220 and engagement of sled 217 with mouthpiece 230 along horizontal axis X. As can be seen in FIG. 11B, the closing action of the sled 217 moves the cartridge 250 until the cartridge top 256 abuts mouthpiece recess surface 223, after which time continuous movement of sled 217 to a closed position causes the container 251 portion of cartridge 250 to be moved from a containment position to the opposite side of cartridge cover 256 so that dispensing ports 227 are aligned relatively over container or cup 251. An air inlet passage is then created between container 251 and the cartridge top 256 which air inlet is in communication with the interior of container 251 and exit or dispensing ports 227 of boss 226.

FIG. 11A is a perspective view of a mid-longitudinal section of the embodiment of FIG. 10 in an open configuration. FIG. 11B is a perspective view of a mid-longitudinal section of the embodiment of FIG. 10 in a closed, dosing configuration. As seen in FIGS. 11A and 11B, the inhaler comprises mouthpiece 230 having a frustoconical shape, air conduit 240 which is tapered to aperture 255 for engaging with cartridge boss 226 on cartridge top 256 of cartridge 250 in a closed position. Mouthpiece 230 also comprises air outlet 235. FIGS. 10 and 11 also show that housing 220 can be integrally attached to mouthpiece 230 and comprises a snap ring segments 224 for engaging sled 217 in the closed position. FIG. 11B shows inhaler 200 in the dosing configuration having airway conduit 240 in communication with cartridge 250 through dispensing port 227 and cartridge inlet 219. In the closed configuration, inhaler housing 220 protrudes beyond sled 217 and the cartridge container is translocated to a dosing position under boss 226.

20

In an alternate embodiment, there is provided a dry powder inhaler 300, comprising a mouthpiece, a sled or slide tray mechanism and a housing. In this embodiment illustrated in FIGS. 12 through 15, the inhaler is relatively rectangular in shape with the mouthpiece 330 comprising the top portion of inhaler body 305; an oral placement section 312; air inlet 310; air conduit 340 which extends from air inlet 310 to air outlet 335. FIG. 12 illustrates the inhaler in the closed position showing the various features of the outside of inhaler 300 including, air channel 311 which can direct air into inlet port 375. An area 325 for holding the inhaler is configured into inhaler body 305 for ease of use, and also serves as a surface to push or squeeze to release latches 380.

FIG. 13 illustrates a perspective view of the embodiment of FIG. 12 in an open configuration, or cartridge loading and unloading position. As illustrated in FIG. 13, mouthpiece 330 is engageably attached to housing 320 by a hinge attached to gear mechanism 360, 363. Mouthpiece 330 has an aperture 355 which is in fluid communication with air conduit 340; an air outlet 335 and flange 358 define a rectangular structure surrounding aperture 355. FIG. 13 also depicts housing 320 as comprising a cartridge holder 315; with a section of sled 317 showing through the cartridge container placement area, projections 353 for holding cartridge top 356 in place and snaps 380 for closing the body portion of the inhaler mouthpiece.

FIG. 14 illustrates a perspective view of the embodiment of FIG. 13 in an open configuration wherein a cartridge can be loaded or unloaded into the cartridge holder. FIG. 14 illustrates an inhaler comprising a mouthpiece 330 comprising the top portion of body 305 of the inhaler and having an aperture 355 relatively centrally located in the body and surrounded by flange 358; mouthpiece oral placement section 312 is configured to extend from the inhaler body and has an air outlet for placing in the oral cavity of a patient at dosing. The inhaler further comprises housing 320 which is engageably attached to mouthpiece 330 by a geared mechanism. In this embodiment, the geared mechanism is, for example, a rack and pinion 363 (see also FIG. 15A) which allows for an angular movement of the mouthpiece relative to the housing. Rack mechanism 363 is engaged to sled 317 to effectuate movement of container 351 of cartridge 350 to move slideably under the cartridge top and under the cartridge boss 326 when the inhaler is in the closed position. FIG. 14 also illustrates the position of cartridge 350 installed in holder 315 and showing the internal compartment parts, including boss 326 with dispensing ports 327; gear mechanism 360, 363 and snaps 380 which assist in maintaining the device in a closed configuration. As seen in FIG. 13, mouthpiece 330 forms the inhaler body top portion, and comprises an oral placement section 312 with air conduit 340 and air inlet 310 and air outlet 335.

FIG. 15A and FIG. 15B depicts the embodiment of FIG. 12 showing the dry powder inhaler in the closed/inhalation position as cross-sections through the longitudinal axis with a cartridge 350 in the dosing position inside the cartridge holder 315 of housing 320. FIG. 15A illustrates gear mechanism 362, 363 engageably connected to sled 317 for opening and closing the inhaler and which simultaneously will move a cartridge container to the dosing or dispensing position upon closing the device.

FIG. 15B depicts the embodiment of FIG. 12 and FIG. 14 showing the dry powder inhaler in the closed/inhalation position as a cross-section through the mid-longitudinal axis. As can be seen, cartridge 350 is in the dosing position, wherein boss 326 fits or engages with aperture 355 of air conduit 340 to allow flow from dispensing ports 327 to exit cartridge 350 and merge into the flow path in conduit 340. FIG. 14 also

shows cartridge top **359** securely held in position by projections **353** in the cartridge placement area. FIGS. **15A** and **15B** show cartridge container **351** configured in the dosing position and having air inlet port **356** in close proximity to and in communication with dispensing ports **327**. Sled **317** abuts the cartridge container to maintain it in place for inhalation. In this embodiment, air inlet port **375** leading to cartridge inlet **319** is configured to run beneath and parallel to air conduit **340**. Movement of the cartridge in this embodiment is effectuated by the opening and closing of the mouthpiece **330** relative to the housing wherein the gear mechanism opens and closes the cartridge by translational movement of sled **317**. As shown in FIG. **15B** and in use, airflow enters the inhaler through air inlet **310** and simultaneously into air inlet **375** which enters cartridge **350** through air inlet **319**. In one example embodiment, the internal volume extending from inlet port **310** to outlet port **335** is greater than about  $0.2\text{ cm}^3$ . In other example embodiments, the internal volume is about  $0.3\text{ cm}^3$ , or about  $0.3\text{ cm}^3$ , or about  $0.4\text{ cm}^3$  or about  $0.5\text{ cm}^3$ . In another example embodiment, this internal volume of greater than  $0.2\text{ cm}^3$  is the internal volume of the mouthpiece. A powder contained within cartridge container **351** is fluidized or entrained into the airflow entering the cartridge through tumbling of the powder content. The fluidized powder then gradually exits through dispensing port **327** and into the mouthpiece air conduit **340** and further deagglomerated and diluted with the airflow entering at air inlet **310**, prior to exiting outlet port **335**.

FIGS. **15C-15K** depict an alternate embodiment **302** of inhaler **300** depicted in FIGS. **12-15B**. The inhaler comprises housing **320**, mouthpiece **330**, a gear mechanism, and a sled and can be manufactured using, for example, four parts in a top down assembly manner. Mouthpiece **330** further comprises air conduit **340** configured to run along the longitudinal axis of the inhaler and having an oral placement portion **312**, air inlet **310** and air outlet **335** configured to have its surface angular or beveled relative to the longitudinal axis of the air conduit, and cartridge port opening **355** which is in fluid communication with housing **320** and/or a cartridge installed in housing **320** for allowing airflow to enter air conduit **340** from the housing or from a cartridge installed in the inhaler in use. FIG. **15C** illustrates inhaler **302** in isometric view in a closed position having a more slender body **305** than inhaler **300** formed by housing **320** and cover portion **308** of mouthpiece **330**, which extends over and engages housing **320** by a locking mechanism **312**, for example, a protrusion. FIGS. **15D**, **15E**, **15F**, **15G**, and **15H** depict side, top, bottom, proximal and distal views, respectively, of the inhaler of FIG. **15C**. As shown in the figures, inhaler **302** comprises mouthpiece **330** having an oral placement section **312**, an extended portion configured as a cover **308** that can attach to housing **320** at least one location as shown in FIG. **15J**. Mouthpiece **330** can pivot to open from a proximal position from a user's hands in an angular direction by hinge mechanism **313**. In this embodiment, inhaler **302** is configured also to have a gear mechanism **363** as illustrated in FIG. **15J**. Gear mechanism **317** can be configured with the mouthpiece as part of the hinge mechanism to engage housing **320**, which housing can also be configured to engage with sled **317**. In this embodiment, sled **317** is configured with a rack which engages the gearwheel configured on the hinge mechanism. Hinge mechanism **363** allows movement of mouthpiece **330** to an open or cartridge loading configuration, and close configuration or position of inhaler **302** in an angular direction. Gear mechanism **363** in inhalers **300**, **302** can actuate the sled to allow concurrent movement of sled **317** within housing **320** when the inhaler is effectuated to open and close by being

integrally configured as part of gear mechanism **363**. In use with a cartridge, the inhaler's gear mechanism **363** can reconfigure a cartridge by movement of sled **317** during closing of the inhaler, from a cartridge containment configuration after a cartridge is installed on the inhaler housing, to a dosing configuration when the inhaler is closed, or to a disposable configuration after a subject has effectuated dosing of a dry powder formulation. In the embodiment illustrated herein, the hinge and gear mechanism are provided at the distal end of the inhaler, however, other configurations can be provided so that the inhaler opens and closes to load or unload a cartridge as a clam.

In one embodiment, housing **320** comprises one or more component parts, for example, a top portion **316** and a bottom portion **318**. The top and bottom portions are configured to adapt to one another in a tight seal, forming an enclosure which houses sled **317** and the hinge and/or gear mechanisms **363**. Housing **320** is also configured to have one or more openings **309** to allow air flow into the interior of the housing, a locking mechanism **313**, such as protrusions or snap rings to engage and secure mouthpiece cover portion **308** in the closed position of inhaler **302**. Housing **320** is also configured to have a cartridge holder or cartridge mounting area **315** which is configured to correspond to the type of cartridge to be used with the inhaler. In this embodiment, the cartridge placement area or holder is an opening in the top portion of housing **320** which opening also allows the cartridge bottom portion or container to lie on sled **317** once a cartridge is installed in inhaler **302**. The housing can further comprise grasping areas **304**, **307** configured to aid a user of the inhaler to firmly or securely grip the inhaler to open it to load or unload a cartridge. Housing **320** can further comprise flanges configured to define an air channel or conduit, for example, two parallel flanges **303** which are also configured to direct air flow into the inhaler air inlet **310** and into a cartridge air inlet of the cartridge air conduit positioned in the inhaler. Flanges **310** are also configured to prevent a user from obstructing inlet port **310** of inhaler **302**.

FIG. **15I** depicts an isometric view of the inhaler of FIG. **15C** in an open configuration with mouthpiece covering, for example, cap **342** and cartridge **170** which are configured to correspond to the cartridge mounting area and allow a cartridge to be installed in cartridge holder **315** for use. In one embodiment, reconfiguration of a cartridge from a containment position, as provided after manufacturing, can be effectuated once the cartridge is installed in cartridge holder **315**, which is configured within housing **320** and to adapt to the inhaler so that the cartridge has the proper orientation in the inhaler and can only be inserted or installed in only one manner or orientation. For example, cartridge **170** can be configured with locking mechanism **301** that matches a locking mechanism configured in the inhaler housing, for example, the inhaler mounting area, or holder can comprise a beveled edge **301** which would correspond to a beveled edge **180** on the cartridge of, for example, cartridge **170** to be installed in the inhaler. In this embodiment, the beveled edges form the locking mechanism which prevents the cartridge from popping out of holder **315** during movement of sled **317**. In one particular embodiment illustrated in FIGS. **15J** and **15K**, the cartridge lid is configured with the beveled edge so that it remains secure in the housing in use. FIGS. **15J** and **15K** also show rack mechanism **319** configured with sled **317** to effectuate movement of a cartridge container **175** of cartridge **170** slideably under the cartridge top to align the container under the cartridge top undersurface configured to have dispensing port in a closed dosing position or configuration of the inhaler when inhaler **302** is ready for dosing a user. In the



23

dosing configuration, an air inlet port forms by the border of the cartridge top and the rim of the container, since the undersurface of the cartridge top is raised relative to the containment undersurface. In this configuration, an air conduit is defined through the cartridge by the air inlet, the internal volume of the cartridge which is exposed to ambient air and the openings in the cartridge top or dispensing port in the cartridge top, which air conduit is in fluid communication with air conduit 340 of the mouthpiece.

Inhaler 302 can further include a mouthpiece cap 342 to protect the oral placement portion of the mouthpiece. FIG. 15K depict the inhaler of FIG. 15C in cross-section through the mid-longitudinal axis with a cartridge installed in the cartridge holder and in an open configuration, and in the closed configuration FIG. 15K.

FIG. 15J illustrates the position of cartridge 350 installed in holder or mounting area 315 and showing the internal compartment parts, including boss 326 with dispensing ports 327; gear mechanism 360, 363 and snaps 380 which assist in maintaining the device in a closed configuration.

In yet another embodiment, dry powder inhaler 400 is disclosed having a relatively round body and comprising mouthpiece 430; cartridge holder section 415 and housing 420 as illustrated in FIGS. 16-18. FIG. 16 illustrates a perspective view of an alternate embodiment of the dry powder inhaler in the closed position, wherein mouthpiece 430 comprises the top portion of the body of the inhaler and housing 420 comprises the bottom portion of the inhaler in the dosing position. Mouthpiece 430 also comprises oral placement section 412 having air outlet port 435.

FIG. 17 illustrates the embodiment of FIG. 16 in an opened, loading/unloading configuration showing cartridge 450 seated in cartridge holder 415, showing top 456 of cartridge 450. In this embodiment, the mechanism for actuating movement of cartridge 450 from a containment position to an open configuration is, for example, a cam. Handle or lever 480 containing cartridge 450 can be moved by rotation of lever 480 to the closed position. In the closed position, cartridge 450 within the lever 480 is moved under oral placement portion 412 of mouthpiece 430.

FIG. 18 illustrates a mid-longitudinal section of the embodiment depicted in FIG. 16 in a closed, inhalation position having cartridge 450 installed in cartridge holder 415 in an open configuration. As seen in FIG. 18, in the cartridge dosing configuration, air inlet 459 is formed or defined by a gap between cartridge top 456 and container 451, which is in communication with dispensing ports 427 on boss 426. Dispensing ports 427 are in fluid communication with air conduit 440, thereby during an inhalation maneuver, airflow entering air conduit 440 from cartridge 450 exits the cartridge and combines with airflow in the air conduit entering air inlet 410 and a flow is swept in the direction of air outlet 435.

FIG. 19 through FIG. 28 illustrate two alternative embodiments of the dry powder inhaler. In these embodiments, the dry powder inhaler is structurally configured for single use as a unit dose inhaler and cartridge assembled together into a disposable, non-reusable unit. The inhalers in this embodiment are manufactured to contain the desired pre-metered, unit dose, drug formulation within the formed cartridge container. In this embodiments, the container is also capable of movement from a containment position to a dosing or dispensing configuration.

FIGS. 19-23 illustrate perspective views of an embodiment of a dry powder inhaler for single use. FIG. 19 shows the inhaler in a containment configuration. In this embodiment, inhaler 500 comprises a top surface 563 and a bottom or undersurface 562; a mouthpiece 530 and a mounted cartridge

24

assembly or sled 590. Mouthpiece 530 has an elongated shape and it is structurally configured with an air inlet 510 and an air outlet port 535. An air conduit extends from air inlet 510 to air outlet 535 which creates a secondary pathway for airflow entering inhaler 500 during inhalation.

FIG. 20 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler embodiment shown in FIG. 19, wherein the inhaler is in the dose configuration establishing a flow pathway through the interior of the cartridge and the dispensing ports wherein the inhaler is ready for use. FIG. 20 depicts mouthpiece 530 having an increasingly wider cross-sectional area of air conduit 540 from air inlet port 510 to air outlet port 535, being narrower at the inlet port end 510. Mouthpiece 530 also is structurally configured to have side extension or panels 532 integrally extending from the walls of mouthpiece conduit 540 which support sled 590. A space between the mouthpiece air conduit wall 540 and the panel is provided which allows the sled 590 to slide over mouthpiece 530. Sled 590 has a first bridge 567 spanning mouthpiece 530 on the top side, and has wings or flanges 565 which allow manual gripping or grasping of the sled 590 to configure the device from the containment to the dose position, and vice versa.

FIG. 21 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 19 in mid-longitudinal section in a containment position. In FIG. 21, cartridge container 551 is integrally adapted to the mouthpiece 530 so that it is flushed and sealed against the surface of mouthpiece 530. Container 551 has wing-like structures that can be suspended and moveable on tracts configured on the bottom surface of the mouthpiece panels or extensions 532. The mouthpiece panels 532 are structurally configured so that movement of container 551 is contained within panels 532. FIG. 23 depicts undersurface 562 showing sled 590 configured to have a second bridge 568 on the bottom side of inhaler 500 which can be configured to be in contact with container 551 for translational movement from the containment position to the dispensing or dosing position. When sled 590 is moved towards inlet port 510, it carries container 551 translationally to an open position and for alignment with dispensing ports 527 located in the floor of mouthpiece conduit 540. In the dosing configuration an inlet port is defined by the container rim and the mouthpiece undersurface to allow the internal volume to be exposed to ambient air. The dosing configuration also defines an air conduit between the inlet port, the internal volume of the container and the dispensing ports to allow a flow to transit the container and deliver a powder dose contained therein. Full alignment of container 551 and dispensing ports 527 is achieved by moving the sled from the containment position to the dose position until the sled cannot move further in panel 532. FIG. 22 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 20 in longitudinal section wherein the cartridge is in the open or dosing position. In this configuration, a primary air passage is established through the container as represented by inlet 556 and dispensing port 527 with the container's internal volume. A secondary flow passage is provided by mouthpiece conduit 540 from air inlet 510 to outlet 535 which is configured to provide a flow that impinges a flow exiting the dispensing ports to provide shear force and promote deagglomeration of powder particles as they exit the dispensing ports in use.

FIGS. 24-28 illustrate perspective views of yet another embodiment of a dry powder inhaler for single use. In this embodiment, the inhaler 600 has top surface 665 and bottom or undersurface 652 and comprises mouthpiece 630 and container 651. FIG. 24 shows the container 651 component in a containment configuration. In this embodiment, inhaler 600 comprises mouthpiece 630 and mounted container 651 attached and moveable relative to mouthpiece 630. Mouth-

25

piece 630 has an elongated shape and it is structurally configured with air inlet 610 and air outlet port 635. An air conduit 640 extends from air inlet 610 to air outlet 635 which is configured to create an additional or secondary pathway for airflow entering inhaler 600 during inhalation. FIG. 28 shows mouthpiece 630 undersurface 652 which is configured with parallel side panels 612 at each side of the inhaler, configured to have projections or wings 653 for holding or securely gripping inhaler 600. Panels 612 are configured on their bottom ends with, for example, a flange to form a track for adapting and supporting side wings 666 on the cartridge container. FIG. 26 shows undersurface 652 of mouthpiece 630 configured to hold the cartridge container in a sealed or containment position, and in this area, undersurface 652 is flushed against the top of cartridge container 651. Mouthpiece undersurface 615 is configured to have a concave-like or hollow form so that when the container 651 is moved to the inhalation or dosing position, air inlet 656 is created by the container wall and the mouthpiece undersurface. An air flow pathway is then established between inlet 656 and dispensing port 627.

FIG. 25 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 24 wherein the cartridge component is in the open configuration which allows air to flow through the interior of the cartridge. FIG. 26 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 24 in mid-longitudinal section wherein container 651 is in the containment position. FIG. 27 illustrates a perspective view of the inhaler shown in FIG. 25 in mid-longitudinal section wherein the cartridge is in the open or dosing position. In a dosing configuration, container inlet port 656 forms an air conduit with dispensing port 627 which is in communication with mouthpiece air conduit 640. Container 651 is supported by container wings 666 through parallel tracks and the undersurface of the device.

Perspective views of an alternate embodiment of the dry powder inhaler are illustrated in FIGS. 29-34. In this embodiment, the inhaler can be in a closed-containment configuration and in a closed-dosing configuration. The figures depict the inhaler with or without a cartridge, and depicting its relatively circular, disk-like body formed by a portion of mouthpiece 730 and housing 720, and having top and bottom surfaces. Mouthpiece 730 has an inlet port 710 and outlet port 735, and opening 755 in its undersurface. Mouthpiece 730 is configured to define the top portion 731 of the inhaler body and is movably attached by a hinge 760, which allows the inhaler to be opened from a containment position in an angular motion to load and unload a cartridge. Mouthpiece 730 can also be rotatably movable relative to housing 720 from a containment position to a closed, dosing position of the inhaler through an angle of about 180°. FIG. 30A also illustrates a medicament cartridge 780 for use with this inhaler which is also depicted in FIGS. 40 through 44 and comprises a top or lid 756 and container 751 configured to fit in holder 715 within housing 720. Housing 720 comprises cartridge holder 715 and is configured to define the bottom portion of the inhaler body. FIGS. 30A, 30B and 31 show the inhaler in a containment configuration wherein mouthpiece 730 and the housing 720 are configured to allow a cartridge to be loaded. When a medicament cartridge is installed in holder 715 as illustrated in FIGS. 30B, 31, 32 and 34 mouthpiece 730 has an engagement mechanism with the housing such as a snap ring and can rotate relative to housing 720. FIG. 30A additionally shows that mouthpiece 730 can engage with an intermediate structure or rotator 717 which is configured to adapt to the housing 720 by a ring and groove mechanism and is configured to hold a cartridge. As shown in FIG. 32, mouthpiece 730 also engages cartridge top 756 defining an air conduit between the

26

cartridge top and mouthpiece air conduit 740, wherein movement of mouthpiece 730 and cartridge top 756 move together relative to housing 720 to position cartridge boss 726 over container 751, aligning dispensing ports 727 over container 751 and holder 715. An inlet port 719 is defined by the cartridge top 756 over container 751 to allow air entry into the cartridge 780 and through the dispensing ports 727 in a dosing configuration. FIGS. 33 and 34 illustrate the inhaler in a closed-dosing configuration wherein rotation of the inhaler over cartridge container 751 also defines an air flow communication between an inhaler inlet port 710 of the inhaler body located over hinge 760 and the interior of the inhaler body with the cartridge inlet 719 which places the inhaler in a closed-dosing configuration. A portion of air flow entering the inhaler body through inlet port 710 enters the cartridge inlet 719 and exits through dispensing ports 727 into mouthpiece aperture 755 which then meets bypass air that enters the mouthpiece conduit 740 before reaching outlet port 735 and into a user. In this embodiment, the inhaler is configured to have a registration structure at predetermined sites to indicate the dosing position and the containment position once they are reached during rotational movement of the mouthpiece. As with other embodiments herein, a portion of the flow in use diverges and remains circulating in the internal volume of the container to promote entrainment and lifting of a powder medicament in the container and promote deagglomeration of the powder to form small masses of the powder that can exit through the dispensing ports.

Cartridge embodiments for use with the inhalers are describe above, such as cartridges 150, 170, 780, and 800 illustrated, respectively, in FIGS. 4B and 35; FIGS. 151 and 39A; FIG. 40 and FIG. 45. The present cartridges are configured to contain a dry powder medicament in a storage, tightly sealed or contained position and can be reconfigured within an inhaler from a powder containment position to an inhalation or dosing configuration. In certain embodiments, the cartridge comprises a lid or top and a container having one or more apertures, a containment configuration and dosing configuration, an outer surface, an inner surface defining an internal volume; and the containment configuration restricts communication to the internal volume and the dispensing configuration forms an air passage through said internal volume to allow an air flow to enter and exit the internal volume in a predetermined manner. For example, the cartridge container can be configured so that an airflow entering the cartridge air inlet is directed across the air outlets within the internal volume to meter the medicament leaving the cartridge so that rate of discharge of a powder is controlled; and wherein airflow in the cartridge can tumble substantially perpendicular to the air outlet flow direction, mix and fluidize a powder in the internal volume prior to exiting through dispensing apertures.

FIG. 35-38B further illustrate cartridge 150 comprising top or lid 156 and container 151 defining an interior space or volume. FIG. 36 exemplifies the cartridge top 156 having opposing ends and comprising recess area 154 and boss 126 at opposing ends of a longitudinal axis X, and relatively rectangular set of panels 152 along the sides and in the longitudinal axis X, which are integrally configured and attached to top 156 at their ends. The border 158 of cartridge top 156 extends downwardly and is continuous with panels 152. Panels 152 extend downwardly from either side of top 156 in the longitudinal axis X and are separated from the area of boss 126 and recess area 154 by a longitudinal space or slit 157. FIGS. 35-37 also show each panel 152 further comprising a flange 153 structurally configured to engage with projections or wings 166 of container 151, support container 151 and

27

allow container 151 to be movable from a containment position under recess area 154 to a dosing position under area of boss 126. Panels 152 are structurally configured with a stop 132 at each end to prevent container 151 from moving beyond their end where they are attached to border 158. In this embodiment, container 151 or lid 156 can be movable, for example, by translational movement upon top 156, or top 156 can be movable relative to the container 151. In one embodiment, container 151 can be movable by sliding on flanges 153 on lid 156 when lid or top 156 is stationary, or lid 156 can be movable by sliding on a stationary container 151 depending on the inhaler configuration. Border 158 near the boss 126 has a recess area which forms part of the perimeter of inlet port 119 in the dosing configuration of the cartridge.

FIG. 37 illustrates a bottom view of cartridge 150 showing the relationship of the structures in a containment configuration, such as container 151, dispensing ports 127, panels 152, flanges 153 and area under the boss 126 or undersurface 168 which is relatively hollow or recessed. FIG. 38A illustrates a cross-section through the mid-longitudinal axis X of cartridge 150 in a containment configuration and showing container 151 in tight contact with lid 156 at recess area 154 and supported by flanges 153. The undersurface of the boss 126 is hollow and can be seen relatively at a higher position than the top border of container 151. FIG. 38B illustrates cartridge 150 in a dosing configuration wherein the upper border of container 151 and panel 158 under the area of boss 126 form an inlet port 119 which allows flow entry into the interior of cartridge 151.

In another embodiment, a translational cartridge 170 is illustrated in FIGS. 39A-39I, which is an alternate embodiment of cartridge 150 and can be used with, for example, inhaler 302 depicted in FIGS. 15C-15L. FIG. 39A depicts cartridge 170 comprising an enclosure comprising a top or lid 172 and a container 175 defining an interior space, wherein the cartridge is shown in a containment configuration. In this cartridge configuration, the cartridge top 172 is configured to form a seal with container 175 and container or lid is movable relative to one another. Cartridge 170 can be configured from a containment position (FIGS. 39A and 39H) to a dosing position (FIGS. 39C-39G and 39I) and to a disposable position (not shown), for example, in the middle of the cartridge, to indicate that the cartridge has been used. FIG. 39A also illustrates the various features of cartridge 170, wherein top 172 comprises side panels 171 configured to partially cover the exterior of the container. Each side panel 172 comprises a flange 177 at its lower edge which forms a track to support wing-like structures of container 175, which allows movement of container 175 along the lower border of top 172. The cartridge top 172 further comprises an exterior relatively flat surface at one end, a relatively rectangular boss 174 having an opening or dispensing port 173, and a concave or recess area configured internally to maintain the contents of container 175 in a tight seal. In one embodiment, the dispensing port can be configured to have various sizes, for example, the width and length of the opening can be from about 0.025 cm to about 0.25 cm in width and from about 0.125 cm to about 0.65 cm in length at its entry within the interior of the cartridge. In one embodiment, the dispensing port entry measures approximately 0.06 cm in width to 0.3 cm in length. In certain embodiments, cartridge top 172 can comprise various shapes which can include grasping surfaces, for example, tabs 176, 179 and other configurations to orient the cartridge in the right orientation for proper placement in the holder, and a securing mechanism, for example, a chamfered or beveled edge 180 to adapt securely to a corresponding inhaler. The flanges, external geometry of the boss, tabs, and various other

28

shapes can constitute keying surfaces that can indicate, facilitate, and/or necessitate proper placement of the cartridge in the inhaler. Additionally, these structures can be varied from one inhaler-cartridge pairing system to another in order to correlate a particular medicament or dosage provided by the cartridge with a particular inhaler. In such manner, a cartridge intended for an inhaler associated with a first medicament or dosage can be prevented from being placed into or operated with a similar inhaler associated with a second medicament or dosage.

FIG. 39B is a top view of exemplifying the general shape of a cartridge top 172 with boss 174, dispensing port 173, recess area 178 and tabs 176 and 179. FIG. 39C is a bottom view of cartridge 170 showing container 175 in a containment position being supported by its wing-like projections 182 by each flange 177 from top 172. FIG. 39D depicts cartridge 170 in a dosing configuration further comprising an air inlet 181 formed by a notch on the cartridge top 172 and the container 175 upper border. In this configuration, air inlet 181 is in communication with the interior of the cartridge and forms and air conduit with dispensing port 173. In use, the cartridge air inlet 181 is configured to direct airflow entering the cartridge interior at the dispensing port 173.

FIG. 39F illustrates a side view of cartridge 150, showing the relationship of the structures in a dosing configuration, such as container 175, boss 174, side panels 172, and tab 176. FIG. 39G illustrates a cartridge 170 in a dosing configuration for use and comprising a container 175 and a top 172 having a relatively rectangular air inlet 181 and a relatively rectangular dispensing port 173 piercing through a boss 174 which is relatively centrally located on the cartridge top 172 upper surface. Boss 174 is configured to fit into an aperture within a wall of a mouthpiece of an inhaler. FIGS. 39H and 39I illustrate cross-sections through the mid-longitudinal axis X of cartridge 170 in a containment configuration and dosing configuration, respectively, showing container 175 in contact with the lid 172 undersurface of the recess area 178 and supported by flanges 177 which form tracks for the container to slide from one position to another. As shown in FIG. 39H, in the containment configuration, container 175 forms a seal with the undersurface of the cartridge top 172 at recess area 178. FIG. 39I depicts the cartridge 170 in the dosing configuration wherein the container is at opposing end of the recess area 181 and the container 175 and cartridge top form an air inlet 181 which allows ambient air to enter cartridge 170 as well as to form an air conduit with dispensing port 173 and the interior of container 175. In this embodiment, the cartridge top undersurface wherein the dosing position is attained is relatively flat and container 175 interior surface is configured to have somewhat of a U-shape. The boss 174 is configured to slightly protrude above the top surface of cartridge top 172.

In another embodiment of the cartridge, cartridge 780 is described above with reference to FIG. 30A and herewith illustrated in FIGS. 40-44. Cartridge 780 can be adapted to the dry powder inhalers disclosed herewith and is particularly suitable for use with an inhaler with a rotatable mechanism for moving the inhaler from a containment configuration to a dosing position, wherein the cartridge top is movable relative to the container, or for moving the container relative to the top in achieving alignment of the dispensing ports with the container to a dosing position, or moving either the container or the top to the containment configuration.

As described above, FIG. 40-44 further illustrate perspective views of cartridge 780 embodiment for use with, for example, the inhaler of FIG. 29, and show a cartridge in a containment configuration comprising a cartridge top or lid 756 and container 751 integrally attached to one another.

Container **751** and top **756** are movable relative to one another in a rotating motion from a containment position to a dosing or inhalation position and back. Cartridge top **756** is relatively circular in form and also comprises a recessed area **754** and a raised area or boss **726** having dispensing ports **727** and a circular panel **752** extending downwardly to enclose and attach to container **751** and defining an interior space. Top **756** also has a raised top border or top edge **759** configured to adapt with an inhaler and a groove in the inside surface of panel **752** for engaging with container **751**.

FIG. **41** illustrates an exploded view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. **40**, showing container **751** defining a chamber **757** for containing a medicament which is continuous with a relatively circular, top portion **747** of wider diameter to said chamber and configured to have an engaging mechanism to engage and move relative to cartridge top **756**. FIG. **42** shows, for example, that upper border **758** of the container can have a circular configuration, for example, a snap ring for engaging with groove **761** of panel **752** to form cartridge **780**. FIG. **42** also illustrates a perspective view of the cartridge embodiment of FIG. **40** in cross-section through the perpendicular axis and in the containment configuration, showing recess area **754** sealing container **751** and undersurface **767** of boss **726** being hollow. When recessed area **754** is over container chamber or internal volume **757**, the cartridge is in a containment configuration as illustrated in FIG. **42**.

FIG. **43** illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. **40** in a dosing configuration, wherein the chamber **757** of container **751** is directly under the boss **726** and the cartridge is configured to have an inlet port **719** in communication with dispensing ports **727**. FIG. **44** illustrates a perspective view of this embodiment in cross-section and in a dosing configuration to show the air inlet **719** and the position of the container and boss **726** with dispensing ports **727**. In this embodiment, recess area **754** of lid **756** and area **747** of container form a tight abutment or seal on each other.

The air inlet port of a cartridge for use with the present inhalers can be configured at any point on the cartridge so that a powder medicament within the container can remain in a containment position prior to inhalation. For example, FIGS. **45**, **46A**, **46B**, **47A** and **47B** illustrate two alternate embodiments of a cartridge for use with the dry powders inhaler, comprising a lid or top **856**, a container **851** structurally configured as in FIG. **35-39** above. In this embodiment, however, air inlet **819** into the cartridge interior can be incorporated within the cartridge top or lid **851** along with one or more dispensing ports **827**. In this embodiment, the cartridge comprises a container **851** and a lid or top **856**. Lid or top **856** can be provided with a groove in its interior surface to engage with the upper border of the container **851** as locking mechanism. The cartridge can also be provided with a seal **860** to contain a powder medicament within the cartridge and can be made from, for example, plastic film or laminated foil. Seal **860** can be made to contain a single cartridge for single dose use or multiple, single dose cartridges on a strip. Lid **856** contains at least two ports which at least one works as an air inlet and another as a dispensing port. FIGS. **46A** and **46B** illustrate the embodiment of the cartridge in FIG. **45** comprising a container **851** which can be adapted to a lid **856** wherein the relatively square lid has an inlet port **819** relative round and two outlet ports **827** and a side panel **852** configured to have a groove to adapt to container **851**, wherein container **851** is relatively shaped as a cup and has a protrusion on his upper border for engaging lid **856**. FIG. **46B** illustrates a perspective view of a cartridge embodiment of FIG. **45** in a cross-section and dosing configuration. In this embodiment, the cartridge top air inlet can have various con-

figurations. For example, FIGS. **47A** and **47B** illustrate and alternate embodiment of cartridge **800**, in which the cartridge top **856** is relatively semicircular and flat in shape having an air inlet port rectangular in shape. In this embodiment, the container and cartridge top can be manufactured from a thermoform material, for example, polyethylene terephthalate, stock to facilitate production.

In embodiments described herein, cartridges can be configured to deliver a single unit, pre-metered dose of a dry powder medicament. Cartridges such as cartridge **150**, **170**, **780** and **800** can be structurally configured to contain a dose of, for example, from 0.1 mg to about 50 mg of a dry powder formulation. Thus the size and shape of the container can vary depending on the size of the inhaler and the amount or mass of powder medicament to be delivered. For example, the container can have a relatively cylindrical shape with two opposing sides relatively flat and having an approximate distance between of from about 0.4 cm to about 2.0 cm. To optimize the inhaler performance, the height of the inside of the cartridge along the Y axis may vary depending on the amount of powder that is intended to be contained within the chamber. For example, a fill of 5 mg to 15 mg of powder may optimally require a height of from about 0.6 cm to about 1.2 cm.

In an embodiment, a medicament cartridge for a dry powder inhaler is provided, comprising: an enclosure configured to hold a medicament; at least one inlet port to allow flow into the enclosure, and at least one dispensing port to allow flow out of the enclosure; the at least one inlet port is configured to direct at least a portion of the flow entering the at least one inlet port at the at least one dispensing port within the enclosure in response to a pressure differential. In one embodiment, the inhaler cartridge is formed from a high density polyethylene plastic. The cartridge has a container which has an internal surface defining an internal volume and comprising a bottom and side walls contiguous with one another, and having one or more openings. The can have a cup-like structure and has one opening with a rim and it is formed by a cartridge top and a container bottom which are configurable to define one or more inlet ports and one or more dispensing ports. The cartridge top and container bottom are configurable to a containment position, and a dispensing or dosing position.

In embodiments described herein, the dry powder inhaler and cartridge form an inhalation system which can be structurally configured to effectuate a tunable or modular airflow resistance, as it can be effectuated by varying the cross-sectional area at any section of the airflow conduits of the system. In one embodiment, the dry powder inhaler system can have an airflow resistance value of from about 0.065 to about 0.200 (vPa)/liter per minute. In other embodiments, a check valve may be employed to prevent air flow through the inhaler until a desired pressure drop, such as 4 kPa has been achieved, at which point the desired resistance reaches a value within the range given herewith.

FIGS. **48-54** illustrate yet another embodiment of the dry powder inhaler. FIG. **48** depicts an inhaler **900** in an open configuration which is structurally configured similarly as inhaler **300** shown in FIGS. **12-15B**. Inhaler **900** comprises mouthpiece **930** and housing subassembly **920** which are attached to one another by a hinge so that mouthpiece **930** pivots relative to the housing subassembly **920**. Mouthpiece **930** further comprises integrally formed side panels **932** wider than housing **920**, which engage with housing protrusions **905** to attain the closed configuration of inhaler **900**. Mouthpiece **930** further comprises air inlet **910**, air outlet **935**; air flow conduit **940** extending from air inlet **910** to air

31

outlet 935 for contacting a user's lips or mouth, and aperture 955 on the floor or bottom surface which communicates with airflow conduit 940 of the inhaler. FIG. 49 illustrates inhaler 900 in an exploded view, showing the component parts of the inhaler, including the mouthpiece 930 and housing subassembly 920. As depicted in FIG. 49, the mouthpiece is configured as a single component and further comprises a bar, cylinder or tube 911 configured with teeth or gear 913 for articulating with housing 920 so that movement of mouthpiece 930 relative to housing 920 in an angular direction attains closure of the device. An air channel 912 can be provided to the housing which can direct an air flow towards mouthpiece air inlet 910. Air channel 912 is configured so that in use, a user's finger placed over the channel cannot limit or obstruct airflow into air conduit 940.

FIG. 48 illustrates the housing subassembly 920 comprising a cartridge placement or mounting area 908 and a notch 918 which is configured to define an air inlet when the inhaler is in a closed configuration. FIG. 49 illustrates housing 920 as an enclosure, further comprising two component parts for ease of manufacturing, although less or more parts can be used, including a tray 922, and a cover 925. Tray 922 is configured with notches 914 configured near its distal end which houses bar, cylinder or tube 911 in forming a hinge with mouthpiece 930. Tray 922 also houses sled 917. Sled 917 is configured to be movable within tray 922 and has a cartridge receiving area 921 and an arm-like structure having openings 915 for engaging the teeth or gear 913 of mouthpiece 930 so that in closing the device for use, movement of mouthpiece 930 relative to housing 920 moves the sled in a proximal direction, which results in the sled abutting a cartridge container seated on inhaler holder or mounting area 908 and translocates the container from a containment position to a dosing position. In this embodiment, a cartridge seated in the cartridge holder 908 has the air inlet opening in a dosing configuration facing towards the proximal end of the inhaler or the user. Housing cover 925 is configured so that it can securely attach to tray 922 by having, for example, protrusions 926 extending from the bottom border as a securing mechanism. FIG. 50 illustrates inhaler 900 in the open configuration depicting the position and orientation of a cartridge 150 in a containment configuration for mounting on the inhaler. FIG. 51 further illustrates inhaler 900 in the open configuration with cartridge 150 seated in the cartridge holder in the containment configuration. FIG. 52 illustrates a mid-longitudinal section of the inhaler in FIG. 51 showing the position of the gear 913 relative to sled 917 in the containment configuration of the cartridge container 151, which abuts sled 917. In this embodiment, container 151 moves relative to cartridge top 156. Upon closing inhaler 900 (FIG. 53) and as mouthpiece 930 moves to attain a closed configuration, sled 917 pushes container 151 until the dosing configuration is attained and mouthpiece aperture 955 slides over cartridge boss 126 so that dispensing ports 127 are in communication with the mouthpiece conduit 940 and an air flow pathway is established for dosing through air inlet aperture 918, cartridge air inlet 919 and dispensing ports 127 in air conduit 940. As seen in FIG. 54, mouthpiece 930 and therefore, air conduit 940 have a relatively tapered, hour-glass shape configuration at approximately mid to distal end. In this embodiment, sled 917 is configured so that when the inhaler is open after use, the sled cannot reconfigure a cartridge to the containment configuration. In some variations of this embodiment, it may be possible or desirable to reconfigure the cartridge.

In embodiments disclosed herein, inhaler apertures, for example, 155, 255, 355, 955 can be provided with a seal, for example, crushed ribs, conformable surfaces, gaskets, and

32

o-rings to prevent air flow leakage into the system so that the airflow only travels through the cartridge. In other embodiment, to effectuate the seal, the seal can be provided to the cartridge. The inhalers are also provided with one or more zones of deagglomeration, which are configured to minimize build-up of powder or deposition. Deagglomeration zones are provided, for example, in the cartridge, including, in the container and the dispensing ports, and at one or more locations in the air conduit of the mouthpiece.

In the embodiments disclosed herein, the dry powder inhaler system is configured to have a predetermined flow balance distribution in use, having a first flow pathway through the cartridge and second flow pathway through, for example, the mouthpiece air conduit. FIG. 55 and FIG. 56 depict a schematic representation of air conduits established by the cartridge and inhaler structural configurations which direct the balance of flow distribution. FIG. 55 depicts the general direction of flow within a cartridge in the dispensing or dosing position of a dry powder inhaler as shown by the arrows. FIG. 56 illustrates the movement of flow of an embodiment of a dry powder inhaler showing the flow pathways of the inhaler in the dosing position as indicated by the arrows.

The balance of mass flow within an inhaler is approximately 10% to 70% of the volume going through the cartridge flow pathway, and about 30% to 90% through the beginning portion of the mouthpiece conduit. In this embodiment, the airflow distribution through the cartridge mixes the medicament in a tumbling manner to fluidize or aerosolize the dry powder medicament in the cartridge container. Airflow fluidizing the powder within the container then lifts the powder and gradually letting it exit the cartridge container through the dispensing ports, then shear from the airflow entering the mouthpiece conduit converges with the airflow containing medicament emanating from the cartridge container. Predetermined or metered exiting airflow from the cartridge converge with bypass airflow entering the air conduit of the mouthpiece to further dilute and deagglomerate the powder medicament prior to exiting the mouthpiece outlet port and entering the patient.

In yet another embodiment, an inhalation system for delivering a dry powder formulation to a patient is provided, comprising an inhaler comprising a container mounting area configured to receive a container, and a mouthpiece having at least two inlet apertures and at least one exit aperture; wherein one inlet aperture of the at least two inlet apertures is in fluid communication with the container area, and one of the at least two inlet apertures is in fluid communication with the at least one exit aperture via a flow path configured to bypass the container area to deliver the dry powder formulation to the patient; wherein the flow conduit configured to bypass the container area delivers 30% to 90% of the total flow going through the inhaler during an inhalation.

In another embodiment, an inhalation system for delivering a dry powder formulation to a patient is also provided, comprising a dry powder inhaler comprising a container region and a container; said dry powder inhaler and container combined are configured to have rigid flow conduits in a dosing configuration and a plurality of structural regions that provide a mechanism for powder deagglomeration of the inhalation system in use; wherein at least one of the plurality of mechanisms for deagglomeration is an agglomerate size exclusion aperture in the container region having a smallest dimension between 0.5 mm and 3 mm.

In an alternate embodiment, an inhalation system for delivering a dry powder formulation to a patient is provided, comprising a dry powder inhaler comprising a mouthpiece and a

container; said dry powder inhaler and container combined are configured to have rigid flow conduits in a dosing configuration and a plurality of structural regions that provide a mechanism for powder deagglomeration of the inhalation system in use; wherein at least one of the plurality of mechanisms for deagglomeration is an air conduit configured in the mouthpiece which directs flow at an exit aperture in fluid communication with the container. In particular embodiments, the inhalation system of includes a container further comprising a mechanisms for cohesive powder deagglomeration which comprises a cup-like structure configured to guide a flow entering the container to rotate, re-circulating in the internal volume of the cup-like structure and lifting up a powder medicament so as to entrain the powder agglomerates in the flow until the powder mass is small enough prior to exiting the container. In this embodiment, the cup-like structure has one or more radii configured to prevent flow stagnation.

In embodiments describe herein, the cartridge is structurally configured having the inlet opening in close proximity to the dispensing ports in a horizontal and vertical axis. For example, the proximity of the inlet to the dispensing ports can be immediately next to the air inlet to about within one cartridge width, although this relationship can vary depending on the flow rate, the physical and chemical properties of the powder. Because of this proximity, flow from the inlet crosses the opening to the dispensing ports within the cartridge creating a flow configuration that inhibits fluidized powder or powder entrained within the airflow, from exiting the cartridge. In this manner, during an inhalation maneuver, flow entering the cartridge container can effectuate tumbling of the dry powder formulation in the cartridge container, and fluidized powder approaching the exit or dispensing ports of a cartridge can be impeded by flow entering the inlet port of the cartridge, thereby, flow within the cartridge can be restricted from exiting the cartridge container. Due to differences in inertia, density, velocity, charge interaction, position of the flow, only certain particles can navigate the path needed to exit the dispensing ports. Particles that do not pass through the exit port must continue to tumble until they possess the proper mass, charge, velocity or position. This mechanism, in effect, can meter the amount of medicament leaving the cartridge and can contribute to deagglomeration of powder. To further help meter the exiting fluidized powder, the size and number of dispensing ports can be varied. In one embodiment, two dispensing ports are used, configured to be circular in shape, each 0.10 cm in diameter and positioned near the inlet aperture about middle center line of the container to about 0.2 cm from the centerline towards the air inlet port. Other embodiments can, for example, have dispensing ports of various shapes including rectangular wherein the cross-sectional area of the one or more dispensing ports ranges from 0.05 cm<sup>2</sup> to about 0.25 cm<sup>2</sup>. In some embodiments, the sizes ranging of the dispensing ports can be from about 0.05 cm to about 0.25 cm in diameter. Other shapes and cross-sectional areas can be employed as long as they are similar in cross-sectional area to the values given herewith. Alternatively, for more cohesive powders larger cross sectional area of the dispensing port can be provided. In certain embodiments, the cross sectional area of the dispensing port can be increased depending on the size of the agglomerates relative to the minimum opening dimension of the port or ports so that the length relative to the width of the port remains large. In one embodiment, the intake aperture is wider in dimension than the width of the dispensing port or ports. In embodiments wherein the intake aperture is rectangular, the air inlet aperture comprises a width ranging from about 0.2 cm to about the maximal width of the car-

tridge. In one embodiment the height is about 0.15 cm, and width of about 0.40 cm. In alternate embodiments, the container can have a height of from about 0.05 cm to about 0.40 cm. In particular embodiments, the container can be from about 0.4 cm to about 1.2 cm in width, and from about 0.6 cm to about 1.2 cm in height. In an embodiment, the container comprise one or more dispensing ports having and each of the ports can have a diameter between 0.012 cm to about 0.25 cm.

In particular inhalation systems, a cartridge for a dry powder inhaler, comprising a cartridge top and a container is provided, wherein the cartridge top configured relatively flat and having one or more openings and one or more flanges having tracks configured to engage the container; said container having an inner surface defining an internal volume and is moveably attached to the tracks on the one or more flanges on the cartridge top and configurable to attain a containment position and a dispensing or dosing position by moving along the tracks of the one or more flanges.

In another embodiment, the inhalation system comprises an enclosure having one or more exit ports configured to exclude a powder mass of a dry powder composition having a smallest dimension greater than 0.5 millimeters and less than 3 mm. In one embodiment, a cartridge for a dry powder inhaler, comprising an enclosure having two or more rigid parts; the cartridge having one or more inlet ports and one or more dispensing ports, wherein one or more inlet ports have a total cross-sectional area which is larger than the total cross-sectional area of the dispensing ports, including wherein the total cross-sectional area of one or more dispensing ports ranges from 0.05 cm<sup>2</sup> to about 0.25 cm<sup>2</sup>.

In one embodiment, a method for deagglomerating and dispersing a dry powder formulation for inhalation, comprising the steps of: generating an airflow in a dry powder inhaler comprising a mouthpiece and a container having at least one inlet port and at least one dispensing port and containing a dry powder formulation; said container forming an air conduit between the at least one inlet port and the at least one dispensing port and said inlet port directs a portion of the airflow entering said container to the at least one dispensing port; allowing airflow to tumble powder within the container so as to lift and mix the dry powder medicament in the container to form an airflow medicament mixture; and accelerating the airflow exiting the container through the at least one dispensing port. In this embodiment, the powder medicament that passes through the dispensing ports can immediately accelerate due to reduction in cross-sectional area of the exit ports relative to the inlet port. This change in velocity may further deagglomerate the fluidized and aerosolized powder medicament during inhalation. Additionally, because of the inertia of the particles or groups of particles in the fluidized medicament, the velocity of the particles leaving the dispensing ports is not the same. The faster moving air flow in the mouthpiece conduit imparts a drag or shear force on each particle or group of particles of the slower moving fluidized powder leaving the exit or dispensing port or ports, which can further deagglomerate the medicament.

The powder medicament that passes through the dispensing port or ports immediately accelerates due to reduction in cross-sectional area of the exit or dispensing ports relative to the container, which are designed to be narrower in cross-sectional area than the air inlet of the container. This change in velocity may further deagglomerate the fluidized powder medicament. Additionally, because of the inertia of the particles or groups of particles in the fluidized medicament, the velocity of the particles leaving the dispensing ports and the velocity of the flow passing the dispensing ports is not the same.

35

In embodiments described herein, powder exiting the dispensing ports can further accelerate, for example, by an imparted change in direction and/or velocity of the fluidized medicament. Directional change of fluidized powder leaving the dispensing port and entering the mouthpiece conduit can occur at an angle of approximately 0° to about 180°, for example approximately 90°, to the axis of the dispensing port. Change in flow velocity and direction may further deagglomerate the fluidized powder through the air conduits. The change in direction can be accomplished through geometric configuration changes of the air flow conduit and/or by impeding the air flow exiting the dispensing ports with a secondary air flow entering the mouthpiece inlet. The fluidized powder in the mouthpiece conduit expands and decelerates as it enters the oral placement portion of the mouthpiece prior to exiting due to a cross-sectional area increase in the conduit. Gas trapped within agglomerates also expands and may help to break apart the individual particles. This is a further deagglomeration mechanism of the embodiments described herein. Airflow containing medicament can enter the patient's oral cavity and be delivered effectively, for example, into the pulmonary circulation.

Each of the deagglomeration mechanisms described herein and part of the inhalation system represent a multi-stage approach which maximizes powder deagglomeration. Maximal deagglomeration and delivery of powder can be obtained by optimizing the effect of each individual mechanism, including, one or more acceleration/deceleration conduits, drag, or expansion of gas trapped within the agglomerates, interactions of powder properties with those of the inhaler components material properties, which are integral characteristics of the present inhaler system. In the embodiments described herein, the inhalers are provided with relatively rigid air conduits or plumbing system to maximize deagglomeration of powder medicament so that there is consistency of the powder medicament discharge from the inhaler during repeated use. Since the present inhalers are provided with conduits which are rigid or remain the same and cannot be altered, variations in the air conduit architecture resulting from puncturing films or peeling films associated with prior art inhalers using blister packs are avoided.

In one embodiment, there is provided a method of deagglomerating a powder formulation in a dry powder inhalation system, comprising: providing the dry powder formulation in a container having an internal volume to a dry powder inhaler; allowing a flow to enter said container which is configured to direct a flow to lift, entrain and circulate the dry powder formulation until the powder formulation comprises powder masses sufficiently small to pass through one or more dispensing apertures into a mouthpiece. In this embodiment, the method can further comprise the step of accelerating the powder masses entrained in the flow leaving the one or more dispensing apertures and entering the mouthpiece.

In embodiments disclosed herein, a dry powder medicament is dispensed with consistency from the inhaler in less than about 2 seconds. The present inhaler system has a high resistance value of approximately 0.065 to about 0.20 (√kPa)/liter per minute. Therefore, in the system comprising a cartridge, peak inhalation pressure drops applied of between 2 and 20 kPa produce resultant peak flow rates of about through the system of between 7 and 70 liters per minute. These flow rates result in greater than 75% of the cartridge contents dispensed in fill masses between 1 and 30 mg of powder. In some embodiments, these performance characteristics are achieved by end users within a single inhalation maneuver to produce cartridge dispense percentage of greater than 90%. In certain embodiments, the inhaler and cartridge system are

36

configured to provide a single dose by discharging powder from the inhaler as a continuous flow, or as one or more pulses of powder delivered to a patient. In an embodiment, an inhalation system for delivering a dry powder formulation to a patient's lung is provided, comprising a dry powder inhaler configured to have flow conduits with a total resistance to flow in a dosing configuration ranging in value from 0.065 to about 0.200 (√kPa)/liter per minute. In this and other embodiments, the total resistance to flow of the inhalation system is relatively constant across a pressure differential range of between 0.5 kPa and 7 kPa.

The structural configuration of the inhaler allows the deagglomeration mechanism to produce respirable fractions greater than 50% and particles of less than 5.8 μm. The inhalers can discharge greater than 85% of a powder medicament contained within a container during an inhalation maneuver. Generally, the inhalers herein depicted in FIG. 151 can discharge greater than 90% of the cartridge contents or container contents in less than 3 seconds at pressure differentials between 2 and 5 kPa with fill masses ranging up to 30 mg.

While the present inhalers are primarily described as breath-powered, in some embodiments, the inhaler can be provided with a source for generating the pressure differential required to deagglomerate and deliver a dry powder formulation. For example, an inhaler can be adapted to a gas powered source, such as compressed gas stored energy source, such as from a nitrogen can, which can be provided at the air inlet ports. A spacer can be provided to capture the plume so that the patient can inhale at a comfortable pace.

In embodiments described herewith, the inhaler can be provided as a reusable inhaler or as a single use inhaler. In alternate embodiments, a similar principle of deagglomeration can be adapted to multidose inhalers, wherein the inhaler can comprise a plurality of, for example, cartridge like structures in a single tray and a single dose can be dialed as needed. In variations of this embodiment, the multidose inhaler can be provided with enough doses for example for a day, a week or a month supply of a medication. In the multidose embodiments described herein, end-user convenience is optimized. For example, in prandial regimens breakfast, lunch and dinner dosing is achieved for a course of 7 days in a single device. Additional end-user convenience is provided by an indicator mechanism that indicates the day and dosing, for example, day 3 (D3), lunchtime (L). An exemplary embodiment is illustrated in FIGS. 57-68, wherein the inhaler 950 comprises a relatively circular shape comprising a plurality of dosing units as part of a disk-like cartridge system. Inhaler 950 comprises a mouthpiece 952 having air inlet 953 and air outlet 954 and housing subassembly 960. Mouthpiece 952 is configured to have a relatively hour glass shape and therefore air conduit 980 (FIG. 67) is configured with a corresponding shape. Mouthpiece 952 also comprises a cover for engaging with housing subassembly 960 and an air conduit 980 having an opening 985 (FIG. 67) which communicates with the interior of housing subassembly 960.

FIG. 58 is an exploded view of the inhaler of FIG. 57 showing the component parts, including mouthpiece 952; housing subassembly 960 comprising multiple parts, including bottom cover or tray 955, an actuator 956 having a ratchet 957, a cartridge disk system with a bottom tray portion 958 and a lid portion 959 and a seal disk or plate 961. In one embodiment, a spring can be provided with ratchet 957 to index tray 958. Housing tray 955 is structurally configured so that it can engage securely with the mouthpiece, for example, snap fits, ultrasonic weld, threads and the like. FIG. 59 illustrates the bottom tray portion 958 of the cartridge disk system



37

showing an outer gear mechanism **963** and an inner gear mechanism **964** with relative position around the center axis of the cartridge disk. The cartridge system is configured to have a centrally located aperture for engaging with the actuator. FIG. **59** also shows the position of the plurality of unit dose containers **962**, each configured of the same dimension and shape and are radially located towards the periphery of the cartridge disk system. FIG. **60** illustrates the housing tray showing the actuator **956** and the ratchet system **957**, **957'** in place without a return spring. FIG. **61** depicts the bottom portion **958** of the cartridge disk system showing the plurality of containers **962** radially located within the disk and also showing a relatively circular raised area **965** comprising two projections **966** place in the horizontal plane of the disk and a second projection **967** located in the central axis and projecting upwards and perpendicular to the disk. FIG. **62** illustrates housing tray **955** with the cartridge disk system **958**, **959**, actuator **956**, and ratchet system assembled therein.

FIG. **63** depicts the cartridge disk system of inhaler **950** in an assembled configuration showing the plurality of containers **962** and can engageably attach to one another to provide powder containment. The cartridge system lid portion **959** comprises a plurality of cartridge-like tops **970** which in alignment correspond to the containers **962** of the bottom tray of the cartridge disk system to form a plurality of unit dose cartridge units within the cartridge disk system. Alignment of the cartridge system lid **959** and bottom tray portion is achieved by the lid portion **959** having a centrally located aperture **969** configured with two notches **968** which engage securely with the raised area of the bottom tray portion **958**. In this embodiment, the cartridge disk system is also configured to have a plurality of air inlets **971** and a plurality of dispensing ports **972**, wherein each unit dose cartridge comprises at least one air inlet **971** and one or more dispensing ports **972**. FIG. **64** shows a cross-section of a cartridge disk system **958**, **959** showing air inlet **971** establishing an air conduit pathway in the interior compartment of the container with the dispensing ports **972** so that an airflow entering the unit compartment enters through air inlet **971**, tumbles inside the container and exits through the dispensing ports.

FIG. **65** illustrates the housing subassembly **960** assembled with its component parts, in particular, the seal disk **961** is illustrated comprising an aperture **977** located toward the edge of the disk which aligns with the dispensing ports **972** of a unit dose cartridge of the cartridge disk system in the dosing position. Seal disk **961** is also configured to seal dispensing ports **972** and air inlets **971** into the unit dose cartridge of the cartridge disk system, except for the unit dose cartridge that is in alignment with aperture **977**. In this manner, powder containment in a filled cartridge system is maintained. Seal disk **961** also has a central opening **975** and a plurality of spring-like structures, exemplified as undulating elements, or arms **973** extending from the disk inner portion with reference to the central axis, which form a plurality of openings **976** that allow air flow into the interior of the inhaler **950** and into the unit dose cartridge being dispensed when in use. FIG. **66** is a cross-section of the housing subassembly **960** showing seal disk **961** configuration which restricts air passage into the unit dose cartridge of all cartridge units except at aperture **977** of the seal disk cartridge disk system. FIG. **67** shows inhaler **950** in cross-section showing the dosing configuration, wherein the mouthpiece shows air conduit **980** and mouthpiece aperture **985** aligned with the dispensing ports **972** of a unit dose cartridge and aperture **977** of the seal disk. The other units in the cartridge are in containment by seal disk **961**.

In this embodiment, the inhaler device **950** is simple to use and can be used one cartridge at a time and for dosing. After

38

all dosages are dispensed the inhaler can be disposed or reloaded with a new cartridge disk system. In this embodiment, movement from an initial position to an adjacent cartridge is effectuated by actuator **956** through a complementary ratchet system **957**. One ratchet which is attached to the actuator advances the cartridge disk, while another holds the cartridge disk in place while the actuator resets to its original position.

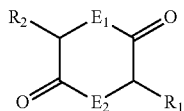
FIGS. **68** through **79** illustrate an alternate embodiment of a multidose inhaler **990** comprising a mouthpiece **952** and an inhaler body **991**. Mouthpiece **952** having an air inlet port **953**, an air outlet port **954** and configured to have a relatively hour glass shape having an aperture for communicating with the body **991** and attached to inhaler body **991**. FIGS. **69-73** disclosed the various component parts of inhaler **990**. In this embodiment, inhaler body **991** comprises several parts with the cartridge disk system forming the bottom portion of the body **991**. FIG. **74** shows a gear drive assembly comprising first gear **992** and second gear **993** is used to rotate a unit dose cartridge to alignment with the mouthpiece aperture for dispensing. An alphanumeric indicator system can be applied to the cartridge container to indicate the dose unit being dispensed. FIG. **75** shows the cartridge unit system comprising bottom tray portion **958** comprising a plurality of wells or unit dose containers **962** radially located and a plurality of air inlet ports, and a lid or top portion **959** comprising a cartridge cover plate that can be glued or welded permanently on the bottom disk containing the wells. FIG. **76** shows a back view of the cartridge disk system and FIG. **77** shows a front view of the cartridge disk comprising a plurality of cartridge tops which can be movable in the cartridge from a containment position to a dosing position. FIG. **78** shows a bottom view of the cartridge system of the inhaler **990** showing the position numerically, represented by at least one numeral **994** of the order in which the doses are dispensed. FIG. **79** shows a disk seal having an aperture to align with the dispensing ports of a unit dose cartridge of the cartridge disk system.

In one embodiment, the dry powder medicament may comprise, for example, a diketopiperazine and a pharmaceutically active ingredient. In this embodiment, the pharmaceutically active ingredient or active agent can be any type depending on the disease or condition to be treated. In another embodiment, the diketopiperazine can include, for example, symmetrical molecules and asymmetrical diketopiperazines having utility to form particles, microparticles and the like, which can be used as carrier systems for the delivery of active agents to a target site in the body. The term 'active agent' is referred to herein as the therapeutic agent, or molecule such as protein or peptide or biological molecule, to be encapsulated, associated, joined, complexed or entrapped within or adsorbed onto the diketopiperazine formulation. Any form of an active agent can be combined with a diketopiperazine. The drug delivery system can be used to deliver biologically active agents having therapeutic, prophylactic or diagnostic activities.

One class of drug delivery agents that has been used to produce microparticles that overcome problems in the pharmaceutical arts such as drug instability and/or poor absorption, are the 2,5-diketopiperazines. 2,5-diketopiperazines are represented by the compound of the general Formula 1 as shown below where E=N. One or both of the nitrogens can be replaced with oxygen to create the substitution analogs diketomorpholine and diketodioxane, respectively.



39

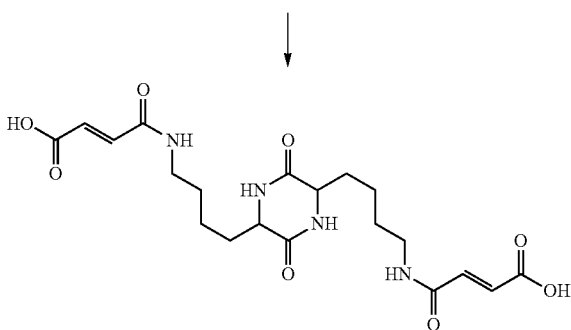


Formula 1

These 2,5 diketopiperazines have been shown to be useful in drug delivery, particularly those bearing acidic R groups (see for example U.S. Pat. No. 5,352,461 entitled "Self Assembling Diketopiperazine Drug Delivery System;" U.S. Pat. No. 5,503,852 entitled "Method For Making Self-Assembling Diketopiperazine Drug Delivery System;" U.S. Pat. No. 6,071,497 entitled "Microparticles For Lung Delivery Comprising Diketopiperazine;" and U.S. Pat. No. 6,331,318 entitled "Carbon-Substituted Diketopiperazine Delivery System," each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety for all that it teaches regarding diketopiperazines and diketopiperazine-mediated drug delivery). Diketopiperazines can be formed into drug adsorbing microparticles. This combination of a drug and a diketopiperazine can impart improved drug stability and/or absorption characteristics. These microparticles can be administered by various routes of administration. As dry powders these microparticles can be delivered by inhalation to specific areas of the respiratory system, including the lungs.

Methods for synthesizing diketopiperazines are described in, for example, Katchalski, et al., *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* 68, 879-880 (1946) and Kopple, et al., *J. Org. Chem.* 33(2), 862-864 (1968), the teachings of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. 2,5-diketo-3,6-di(aminobutyl)piperazine (Katchalski et al. refer to this as lysine anhydride) can also be prepared via cyclodimerization of N-ε-P-L-lysine in molten phenol, similar to the Kopple method, followed by removal of the blocking (P)-groups with 4.3 M HBr in acetic acid. This route can be preferred because it uses a commercially available starting material, it involves reaction conditions that are reported to preserve stereochemistry of the starting materials in the product and all steps can be easily scaled up for manufacture. Methods for synthesizing diketopiperazines are also described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2006/004133 entitled, "Catalysis of Diketopiperazine Synthesis," which is also incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same.

The fumaryl diketopiperazine (bis-3,6-(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine; FDKP) is one preferred diketopiperazine for pulmonary applications:



FDKP

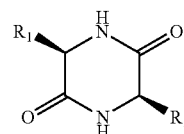
FDKP provides a beneficial microparticle matrix because it has low solubility in acid but is readily soluble at neutral or

40

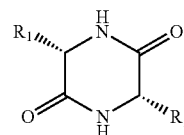
basic pH. These properties allow FDKP to crystallize under acidic conditions and the crystals self-assemble to form particles. The particles dissolve readily under physiological conditions where the pH is neutral. As noted, microparticles having a diameter of between about 0.5 and about 10 microns can reach the lungs, successfully passing most of the natural barriers. Particles in this size range can be readily prepared from FDKP. In one embodiment, the microparticles disclosed herein are FDKP microparticles loaded with an active agent such as insulin.

FDKP is a chiral molecule having trans and cis isomers with respect to the arrangement of the substituents on the substituted carbons on the DKP ring. As described in U.S. Provisional Patent Application No. 61/186,779 entitled DIKETOPIPERAZINE MICROPARTICLES WITH DEFINED ISOMER CONTENTS filed on date even with the present disclosure, more robust aerodynamic performance and consistency of particle morphology can be obtained by confining the isomer content to about 45-65% trans. Isomer ratio can be controlled in the synthesis and recrystallization of the molecule. Exposure to base promotes ring epimerization leading to racemization, for example during the removal of protecting groups from the terminal carboxylate groups. However increasing methanol content of the solvent in this step leads to increased trans isomer content. The trans isomer is less soluble than the cis isomers and control of temperature and solvent composition during recrystallization can be used to promote or reduce enrichment for the trans isomer in this step.

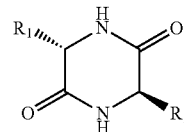
FDKP possesses two asymmetric centers in the diketopiperazine ring. FDKP is manufactured as a mixture of geometric isomers that are identified as "cis-FDKP" and "trans-FDKP" according to the arrangement of side chains relative to the central "ring" of the diketopiperazine. The R,R and S,S enantiomers have the propenyl(amidobutyl) "side arms" projecting from the same planar side of the diketopiperazine ring (A and B below) and are thus referred to as the cis isomers while the R,S compound has the "side arms" projecting from opposite planar sides of the diketopiperazine ring (C below) and is referred to as the trans isomer.



A



B



C

FDKP microparticle powders with acceptable aerodynamic performance, as measured by RF/fill with moderately efficient inhalers such as the MEDTONE® inhaler disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 7,464,706 entitled, "Unit Dose Cartridge and Dry Powder Inhaler," which is incorporated by reference

41

herein for its teachings regarding the same, have been produced from FDKP with a trans isomer content ranging from about 45 to about 65%. Particles with isomer content in this range also perform well with high efficiency inhalers such as that disclosed in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 12/484,137 entitled, "A Dry Powder Inhaler and System for Drug Delivery," filed on Jun. 12, 2009, which is incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same. Microparticle powders containing more than 65% trans-FDKP tend to have lower and more variable RF/fill (FIG. 82). Trans-enriched particles have altered morphology and also lead to viscous suspensions which are difficult to process.

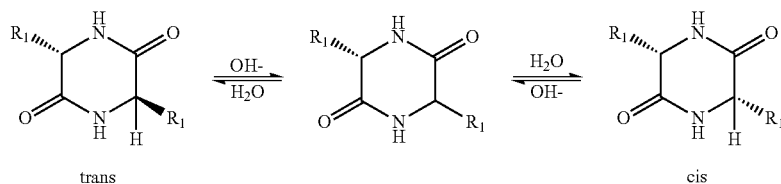
In other experiments done under comparable conditions to those reported in FIG. 82, microparticles made from about 95% trans-enriched FDKP and loaded with insulin gave an RF/fill of about 24% whereas control samples with a trans isomer content of about 59% gave an RF/fill of about 49-52% (data not shown). Accordingly, a microparticle powder having a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65% provides a powder with acceptable aerodynamic properties. In alternate embodiments the trans isomer content ranges from about 53 to about 65% (see FIG. 82) or from about 53 to about 63%, or from about 50 to about 56%, or from about 54 to about 56%.

Based on the foregoing, it is desirable to produce microparticle powders having a trans isomer content within the range of about 45 to about 65%. That isomer content would affect the aerodynamic performance of FDKP microparticles was not anticipated. However, it was discovered that improved consistency could be obtained by carefully controlling the isomer content of the FDKP used to make the microparticles. In FIG. 82, the solid curved line represents predicted RF/fill and the dashed curved line represents the one-sided lower 95% confidence limit of obtaining an appropriate RF/fill score. The vertical dashed lines provide limits on the trans isomer content for one exemplary embodiment disclosed herein.

The FDKP cis/trans isomer ratio is established during the manufacturing steps depicted in FIG. 83.

Control of the Lower End of the Trans Isomer Content

The lower end of the trans isomer content is controlled by exposing the DKP ring to a strong base. In one manufacturing step, ethyl protecting groups are removed by saponification with sodium hydroxide. These basic conditions promote ring epimerization between isomers as shown below, without regard for which isomer is in excess. Thus, the addition of base to material with 95% trans isomer appeared to favor an approximate 50/50 mixture of cis and trans isomers (FIG. 84). Other factors, such as concentration of co-solvents like methanol, may also affect isomer content.



Control of the Upper End of the Trans Isomer Range

Differences in solubility between the isomers affect the FDKP isomer content. For instance, FDKP can be recrystallized from trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) and glacial acetic acid (GAA). Trans FDKP is less soluble in this solvent system than cis FDKP. Accordingly, conditions that favor selective

42

precipitation of the less soluble trans isomer can be used to increase the trans isomer content of the final product. Such conditions include decreased recrystallization time, anti-solvent addition at low temperature and/or rapid cooling of the TFA-GAA mixture (FIG. 85). It will also be appreciated that elevating the trans isomer content by such methods provides a residual solution of FDKP enriched in the cis isomers.

TABLE 1

Exemplary Manufacturing Ranges	
Parameter	Suggested Operating Range
TFA/GAA Ratio	0.67 ± 0.05
Crystallization Time (hrs)	6 ± 0.5
Crystallization Temp (° C.)	15-25
Cooling Ramp Post GAA Addition (° C./hr)	7-10

Providing microparticles with an isomer content in the about 45 to about 65% range provides microparticles with beneficial aerodynamic characteristics.

As long as the microparticles described herein retain the required isomer content, they can adopt other additional characteristics beneficial for delivery to the lung and/or drug adsorption. U.S. Pat. No. 6,428,771 entitled "Method for Drug Delivery to the Pulmonary System" describes DKP particle delivery to the lung and is incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same. U.S. Pat. No. 6,444,226, entitled, "Purification and Stabilization of Peptide and Protein Pharmaceutical Agents" describes beneficial methods for adsorbing drugs onto microparticle surfaces and is also incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same. Microparticle surface properties can be manipulated to achieve desired characteristics as described in U.S. patent application Ser. No. 11/532,063 entitled "Method of Drug Formulation based on Increasing the Affinity of Crystalline Microparticle Surfaces for Active Agents" which is incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same. U.S. patent application Ser. No. 11/532,065 entitled "Method of Drug Formation based on Increasing the Affinity of Active Agents for Crystalline Microparticle Surfaces" describes methods for promoting adsorption of active agents onto microparticles. U.S. patent application Ser. No. 11/532,065 is also incorporated by reference herein for its teachings regarding the same.

Selection and Incorporation of Active Agents

The microparticles described herein can be loaded with one or more active agents. As used herein "active agent", used interchangeably with "drug" refers to pharmaceutical substances, small molecule pharmaceuticals, biologicals and

bioactive agents. Active agents can be naturally occurring, recombinant or synthetic proteins, polypeptides, peptides, nucleic acids, organic macromolecules, synthetic organic compounds, polysaccharides and other sugars, fatty acids, and lipids, and antibodies and fragments thereof, including, but not limited to, humanized or chimeric antibodies, F(ab),

43

F(ab)<sub>2</sub>, a single-chain antibody alone or fused to other polypeptides or therapeutic or diagnostic monoclonal antibodies to cancer antigens. The active agents can fall under a variety of biological activity classes, such as vasoactive agents, neuroactive agents, hormones, anticoagulants, immunomodulating agents, cytotoxic agents, antibiotics, antiviral agents, antigens, infectious agents, inflammatory mediators, hormones, and cell surface antigens. More particularly, active agents can include, in a non-limiting manner, cytokines, lipokines, enkephalins, alkynes, cyclosporins, anti-IL-8 antibodies, IL-8 antagonists including ABX-IL-8; prostaglandins including PG-12, LTB receptor blockers including LY29311, BIIL 284 and CP105696; triptans such as sumatriptan and palmitoleate, insulin and analogs thereof, growth hormone, parathyroid hormone (PTH), parathyroid hormone related peptide (PTHrP), ghrelin, granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), amylin, amylin analogs, glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1), Texas Red, clopidogrel, PPACK (D-phenylalanyl-L-prolyl-L-arginine chloromethyl ketone), oxyntomodulin (OXN), peptide YY(3-36) (PYY), adiponectin, cholecystokinin (CCK), secretin, gastrin, glucagon, motilin, somatostatin, brain natriuretic peptide (BNP), atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP), IGF-1, growth hormone releasing factor (GHRF), integrin beta-4 precursor (ITB4) receptor antagonist, nociceptin, nocistatin, orphanin FQ2, calcitonin, CGRP, angiotensin, substance P, neurokinin A, pancreatic polypeptide, neuropeptide Y, delta-sleep-inducing peptide and vasoactive intestinal peptide.

The range of loading of the drug to be delivered is typically between about 0.01% and about 20%, depending on the form and size of the drug to be delivered. For insulin, preferred loads are about 10-15% (corresponding to 3-4 U/mg).

The following describes a manufacturing process that can be used to produce insulin-loaded FDKP microparticles with a trans isomer content from about 45 to about 65%.

Insulin-loaded FDKP microparticles can be prepared according to the schematic depicted in FIG. 5. Using a Dual-feed Sonolator™, equal masses of about 10.5 wt % acetic acid and about 2.5 wt % FDKP solutions at about 16° C. ± about 2° C. (Table 2 and 3) can be fed at 2000 psi through a 0.001-in<sup>2</sup> orifice. The precipitate can be collected in a DI water reservoir of about equal mass and temperature. At this point the suspension contains about 0.8% solids. The precipitate can be concentrated and washed by tangential flow filtration. The precipitate can be first concentrated to about 4% solids then washed with DI water. The suspension can be finally concentrated to about 10% solids based on the initial mass of FDKP. The concentrated suspension can be assayed for solids content by an oven drying method.

A concentrated insulin stock solution can be prepared with 1 part insulin and 9 parts about 2% wt acetic acid. The insulin stock can be added gravimetrically to the suspension to obtain a load of about 11.4% wt. The insulin-loaded suspension can be mixed at least about 15 minutes, and then titrated with about 14 to about 15 wt % aqueous ammonia to a pH of about 4.5 from an initial pH of about 3.5. The suspension can be flash frozen in liquid nitrogen to form pellets and lyophilized to yield the bulk insulin-loaded FDKP microparticles with a % trans isomer content of between about 45% and 65%. Blank FDKP microparticles can be manufactured identically minus the insulin loading and pH adjustment steps.

44

TABLE 2

10.5% Acetic Acid Solution	
Component	wt %
DI Water	89.00
GAA	10.50
10% Polysorbate 80	0.50

0.2 µm filtered

TABLE 3

2.5% FDKP Solution	
Component	wt %
DI Water	95.40
FDKP	2.50
NH <sub>4</sub> OH	1.60
10% Polysorbate 80	0.50

0.2 µm filtered

As used herein, "solvent" refers to the fluid medium in which the active agent and microparticle are "bathed." It should not be interpreted to require that all components are in solution. Indeed in many instances it may be used to refer to the liquid medium in which the microparticles are suspended.

As is evident from the foregoing disclosure, microparticles of embodiments disclosed herein can take many different forms and incorporate many different drugs or active agents. The common attribute of each of these embodiments, however, is that the formed microparticles have a trans isomer content of about 45 to about 65%.

Microparticles having a diameter of between about 0.5 and about 10 microns can reach the lungs, successfully passing most of the natural barriers. A diameter of less than about 10 microns is required to navigate the turn of the throat and a diameter of about 0.5 microns or greater is required to avoid being exhaled. DKP microparticles with a specific surface area (SSA) of between about 35 and about 67 m<sup>2</sup>/g exhibit characteristics beneficial to delivery of drugs to the lungs such as improved aerodynamic performance and improved drug adsorption.

As described in U.S. Provisional Patent Application No. 61/186,773 entitled DIKETOPIPERAZINE MICROPARTICLES WITH DEFINED SPECIFIC SURFACE AREAS filed on date even with the present disclosure, the size distribution and shape of FDKP crystals are affected by the balance between the nucleation of new crystals and the growth of existing crystals. Both phenomena depend strongly on concentrations and supersaturation in solution. The characteristic size of the FDKP crystal is an indication of the relative rates of nucleation and growth. When nucleation dominates, many crystals are formed but they are relatively small because they all compete for the FDKP in solution. When growth dominates, there are fewer competing crystals and the characteristic size of the crystals is larger.

Crystallization depends strongly on supersaturation which, in turn, depends strongly on the concentration of the components in the feed streams. Higher supersaturation is associated with the formation of many small crystals; lower supersaturation produces fewer, larger crystals. In terms of supersaturation: 1) increasing the FDKP concentration raises the supersaturation; 2) increasing the concentration of ammonia shifts the system to higher pH, raises the equilibrium solubility and decreases the supersaturation; and 3) increasing the acetic acid concentration increases the supersaturation by shifting

the endpoint to lower pH where the equilibrium solubility is lower. Decreasing the concentrations of these components induces the opposite effects.

Temperature affects FDKP microparticle formation through its effect on FDKP solubility and the kinetics of FDKP crystal nucleation and growth. At low temperatures, small crystals are formed with high SSA. Suspensions of these particles exhibit high viscosity indicating strong inter-particle attractions. A temperature range of about 12 to about 26° C. produced particles with acceptable (or better) aerodynamic performance with various inhaler systems including inhaler systems disclosed herein.

These present devices and systems are useful in the pulmonary delivery of powders with a wide range of characteristics. Embodiments of the invention include systems comprising an inhaler, an integral or installable unit dose cartridge, and powder of defined characteristic(s) providing an improved or optimal range of performance. For example, the devices constitute an efficient deagglomeration engine and thus can effectively deliver cohesive powders. This is distinct from the course pursued by many others who have sought to develop dry powder inhalation systems based on free flowing or flow optimized particles (see for example U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,997,848 and 7,399,528, US Patent Application No. 2006/0260777; and Ferrari et al. AAPS PharmSciTech 2004; 5 (4) Article 60). Thus embodiments of the invention include systems of the device plus a cohesive powder.

Cohesiveness of a powder can be assessed according to its flowability or correlated with assessments of shape and irregularity such as rugosity. As discussed in the US Pharmacopeia USP 29, 2006 section 1174 four techniques commonly used in the pharmaceutical arts to assess powder flowability: angle of repose; compressibility (Carr's) index and Hausner ratio; flow through an orifice; and shear cell methods. For the latter two no general scales have been developed due to diversity of methodology. Flow through an orifice can be used to measure flow rate or alternatively to determine a critical diameter that allows flow. Pertinent variables are the shape and diameter of the orifice, the diameter and height of the powder bed, and the material the apparatus is made of. Shear cell devices include cylindrical, annular, and planar varieties and offer great degree of experimental control. For either of these two methods description of the equipment and methodology are crucial, but despite the lack of general scales they are successfully used to provide qualitative and relative characterizations of powder flowability.

Angle of repose is determined as the angle assumed by a cone-like pile of the material relative to a horizontal base upon which it has been poured. Hausner ratio is the unsettled volume divided by the tapped volume (that is the volume after tapping produces no further change in volume), or alternatively the tapped density divided by the bulk density. The compressibility index (CI) can be calculated from the Hausner ratio (HR) as

$$CI=100 \times (1 - (1/HR)).$$

Despite some variation in experimental methods generally accepted scales of flow properties have been published for angle of repose, compressibility index and Hausner ratio (Carr, R L, Chem. Eng. 1965, 72:163-168).

Flow Character	Angle of Repose	Hausner Ratio	Compressibility Index (%)
Excellent	25-30°	1.00-1.11	≤10
Good	31-35°	1.12-1.18	11-15

-continued

Flow Character	Angle of Repose	Hausner Ratio	Compressibility Index (%)
Fair	36-40°	1.19-1.25	16-20
Passable	41-45°	1.26-1.34	21-25
Poor	46-55°	1.35-1.45	26-31
Very Poor	56-65°	1.46-1.59	32-27
Very, Very Poor	≥66°	≥1.60	≥38

The CEMA code provides a somewhat different characterization of angle of repose.

Angle of repose	Flowability
≤19°	Very free flowing
20-29°	Free flowing
30-39°	Average
≥40°	Sluggish

Powders with a flow character according to the table above that is excellent or good can be characterized in terms of cohesiveness as non- or minimally cohesive, and the powders with less flowability as cohesive and further dividing them between moderately cohesive (corresponding to fair or passable flow character) and highly cohesive (corresponding to any degree of poor flow character). In assessing angle of repose by the CEMA scale powders with an angle of repose ≥30° can be considered cohesive and those ≥40° highly cohesive. Powders in each of these ranges, or combinations thereof, constitute aspects of distinct embodiments of the invention.

Cohesiveness can also be correlated with rugosity, a measure of the irregularity of the particle surface. The rugosity is the ratio of the actual specific surface area of the particle to that for an equivalent sphere:

$$\text{Rugosity} = \frac{(SSA)_{\text{particle}}}{(SSA)_{\text{sphere}}}$$

Methods for direct measurement of rugosity, such as air permeametry, are also known in the art. Rugosity of 2 or greater has been associated with increased cohesiveness. It should be kept in mind that particle size also affects flowability so that larger particles (for example on the order of 100 microns) can have reasonable flowability despite somewhat elevated rugosity. However for particles useful for delivery into the deep lung, such as those with primary particle diameters of 1-3 microns, even modestly elevated rugosity or 2-6 may be cohesive. Highly cohesive powders can have rugosities ≥10 (see example A below).

Many of the examples below involve the use of dry powders comprising fumaryl diketopiperazine (bis-3,6-(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine; FDKP). The component microparticles are self-assembled aggregates of crystalline plates. Powders comprised of particles with plate-like surfaces are known to have generally poor flowability, that is, they are cohesive. Indeed smooth spherical particles generally have the best flowability, with flowability generally decreasing as the particles become oblong, have sharp edges, become substantially two dimensional and irregularly shaped, have irregular interlocking shapes, or are fibrous. While not wanting to be bound, it is the applicants' present understanding that the crystalline plates of the FDKP micro-

particles can interleave and interlock contributing to the cohesiveness (the inverse of flowability) of bulk powders comprising them and additionally making the powder more difficult to deagglomerate than less cohesive powders. Moreover factors affecting the structure of the particles can have effects on aerodynamic performance. It has been observed that as specific surface area of the particles increases past a threshold value their aerodynamic performance, measured as respirable fraction, tends to decrease. Additionally FDKP has two chiral carbon atoms in the piperazine ring, so that the N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl arms can be in cis or trans configurations with respect to the plane of the ring. It has been observed that as the trans-cis ratio of the FDKP used in making the microparticles departs from an optimal range including the racemic mixture respirable fraction is decreased and at greater departures from the preferred range the morphology of the particles in SEM becomes visibly different. Thus embodiments of the invention include systems of the device plus DKP powders with specific surface areas within preferred ranges, and the device plus FDKP powders with trans-cis isomer ratios within preferred ranges.

FDKP microparticles either unmodified or loaded with a drug, for example insulin, constitute highly cohesive powders. FDKP microparticles have been measured to have a Hausner ratio of 1.8, a compressibility index of 47%, and an angle of repose of 40°. Insulin loaded FDKP microparticles (TECHNOSPHERE® INSULIN; TI) have been measured to have a Hausner ratio of 1.57, a compressibility index of 36%, and an angle of repose of 50°±3°. Additionally in critical orifice testing it was estimated that to establish flow under gravity an orifice diameter on the order of 2 to 3 feet (60-90 cm) would be needed (assumes a bed height of 2.5 feet; increased pressure increased the size of the diameter needed). Under similar conditions a free flowing powder would require an orifice diameter on the order of only 1-2 cm (Taylor, M. K. et al. *AAPS PharmSciTech* 1, art. 18).

Accordingly, in one embodiment, the present inhalation system comprises a dry powder inhaler and a container for deagglomerating cohesive powder is provided, comprising a cohesive dry powder having a Carr's index ranging from 16 to 50. In one embodiment, the dry powder formulation comprises a diketopiperazine, including, FDKP and a peptide or protein including an endocrine hormone such as insulin, GLP-1, parathyroid hormone, oxyntomodulin, and others as mentioned elsewhere in this disclosure.

Microparticles having a diameter of between about 0.5 and about 10 microns can reach the lungs, successfully passing most of the natural barriers. A diameter of less than about 10 microns is required to navigate the turn of the throat and a diameter of about 0.5 microns or greater is required to avoid being exhaled. Embodiments disclosed herein show that microparticles with a specific surface area (SSA) of between about 35 and about 67 m<sup>2</sup>/g exhibit characteristics beneficial to delivery of drugs to the lungs such as improved aerodynamic performance and improved drug adsorption.

Disclosed herein are also fumaryl diketopiperazine (FDKP) microparticles having a specific trans isomer ratio of about 45 to about 65%. In this embodiment, the microparticles provide improved flyability.

In one embodiment, there is also provided a system for the delivery of an inhalable dry powder comprising: a) a cohesive powder comprising a medicament, and b) an inhaler comprising an enclosure defining an internal volume for containing a powder, the enclosure comprising a gas inlet and a gas outlet wherein the inlet and the outlet are positioned so that gas flowing into the internal volume through the inlet is directed at the gas flowing toward the outlet. In an embodiment, the

system is useful for deagglomerating a cohesive powder having a Carr's index of from 18 to 50. The system can also be useful for delivering a powder when the cohesive powder has an angle of repose from 30° to 55°. The cohesive powder can be characterized by a critical orifice dimension of ≤3.2 feet for funnel flow or ≤2.4 feet for mass flow, a rugosity>2. Exemplary cohesive powder particles include particles comprising of FDKP crystals wherein the ratio of FDKP isomers in the range of 50% to 65% trans:cis.

In another embodiment, the inhalation system can comprise an inhaler comprising a mouthpiece and upon applying a pressure drop of kPa across the inhaler to generate a plume of particles which is emitted from the mouthpiece wherein 50% of said emitted particles have a VMAD of ≤10 micron, wherein 50% of said emitted particles have a VMAD of microns, or wherein 50% of said emitted particles have a VMAD of ≤4 microns.

In yet another embodiment, a system for the delivery of an inhalable dry powder comprising: a) a dry powder comprising particles composed of FDKP crystals wherein the ratio of FDKP isomers in the range of 50% to 65% trans:cis, and a medicament; and b) an inhaler comprising a powder containing enclosure, the chamber comprising a gas inlet and a gas outlet; and a housing in which to mount said chamber and defining two flow pathways, a first flow pathway allowing gas to enter the gas inlet of the chamber, a second flow pathway allowing gas to bypass the chamber gas inlet; wherein flow bypassing the enclosure gas inlet is directed to impinge upon the flow exiting the enclosure substantially perpendicular to the gas outlet flow direction.

In certain embodiments, a system for the delivery of an inhalable dry powder is provided, comprising: a) a dry powder comprising particles composed of FDKP crystals wherein the microparticles have a specific surface area (SSA) of between about 35 and about 67 m<sup>2</sup>/g which exhibit characteristics beneficial to delivery of drugs to the lungs such as improved aerodynamic performance and improved drug adsorption per milligram, and a medicament; and b) an inhaler comprising a powder containing enclosure, wherein the enclosure comprises a gas inlet and a gas outlet; and a housing in which to mount said chamber and defining two flow pathways, a first flow pathway allowing gas to enter the gas inlet of the chamber, a second flow pathway allowing gas to bypass the chamber gas inlet; wherein flow bypassing the chamber gas inlet is directed to impinge upon the flow exiting the enclosure substantially perpendicular to the gas outlet flow direction.

A system for the delivery of an inhalable dry powder is also provided, comprising: a) a dry powder comprising a medicament, and b) an inhaler comprising a powder containing cartridge, the cartridge comprising a gas inlet and a gas outlet, and a housing in which to mount the cartridge and defining two flow pathways, a first flow pathway allowing gas to enter the gas inlet of the cartridge, a second flow pathway allowing gas to bypass the enclosure gas inlet, and a mouthpiece and upon applying a pressure drop of ≥2 kPa across the inhaler plume of particles is emitted from the mouthpiece wherein 50% of said emitted particles have a VMAD of ≤10 microns, wherein flow bypassing the cartridge gas inlet is directed to impinge upon the flow exiting the enclosure substantially perpendicular to the gas outlet flow direction.

Active agents for use in the compositions and methods described herein can include any pharmaceutical agent. These can include, for example, synthetic organic compounds, proteins and peptides, polysaccharides and other sugars, lipids, inorganic compound, and nucleic acid sequences, having therapeutic, prophylactic, or diagnostic

activities. Peptides, proteins, and polypeptides are all chains of amino acids linked by peptide bonds.

Examples of active agents that can be delivered to a target or site in the body using the diketopiperazine formulations, include hormones, anticoagulants, immunomodulating agents, vaccines, cytotoxic agents, antibiotics, vasoactive agents, neuroactive agents, anaesthetics or sedatives, steroids, decongestants, antivirals, antisense, antigens, and antibodies. More particularly, these compounds include insulin, heparin (including low molecular weight heparin), calcitonin, felbamate, sumatriptan, parathyroid hormone and active fragments thereof, growth hormone, erythropoietin, AZT, DDI, granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), lamotrigine, chorionic gonadotropin releasing factor, luteinizing releasing hormone, beta-galactosidase, exendin, vasoactive intestinal peptide, and argatroban. Antibodies and fragments thereof can include, in a non-limiting manner, anti-SSX-2<sub>41-49</sub> (synovial sarcoma, X breakpoint 2), anti-NY-ESO-1 (esophageal tumor associated antigen), anti-PRAME (preferentially expressed antigen of melanoma), anti-PSMA (prostate-specific membrane antigen), anti-Melan-A (melanoma tumor associated antigen) and anti-tyrosinase (melanoma tumor associated antigen).

In certain embodiments, a dry powder formulation for delivering to the pulmonary circulation comprises an active ingredient or agent, including a peptide, a protein, a hormone, analogs thereof or combinations thereof, wherein the active ingredient is insulin, calcitonin, growth hormone, erythropoietin, granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), chorionic gonadotropin releasing factor, luteinizing releasing hormone, follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), vasoactive intestinal peptide, parathyroid hormone (including black bear PTH), parathyroid hormone related protein, glucagon-like peptide-1 (GLP-1), exendin, oxyntomodulin, peptide YY, interleukin 2-inducible tyrosine kinase, Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK), inositol-requiring kinase 1 (IRE1), or analogs, active fragments, PC-DAC-modified derivatives, or O-glycosylated forms thereof. In particular embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition or dry powder formulation comprises fumaryl diketopiperazine and the active ingredient is one or more selected from insulin, parathyroid hormone 1-34, GLP-1, oxyntomodulin, peptide YY, heparin and analogs thereof.

In one embodiment, a method of self-administering a dry powder formulation to one's lung with a dry powder inhalation system is also provided, comprising: obtaining a dry powder inhaler in a closed position and having a mouthpiece; obtaining a cartridge comprising a premeasured dose of a dry powder formulation in a containment configuration; opening the dry powder inhaler to install the cartridge; closing the inhaler to effectuate movement of the cartridge to a dose position; placing the mouthpiece in one's mouth, and inhaling once deeply to deliver the dry powder formulation.

In one embodiment, a method of delivering an active ingredient comprising: a) providing dry powder inhaler containing a cartridge with a dry powder formulation comprising a diketopiperazine and the active agent; and b) delivering the active ingredient or agent to an individual in need of treatment. The dry powder inhaler system can deliver a dry powder formulation such as insulin FDKP having a respirable fraction greater than 50% and particles sizes less than 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$ .

In still yet a further embodiment, a method of treating obesity, hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, and/or diabetes is disclosed. The method comprises the administration of an inhalable dry powder composition or formulation comprising a diketopiperazine having the formula 2,5-diketo-3,6-di(4-X-aminobutyl)piperazine, wherein X is selected from the group

consisting of succinyl, glutaryl, maleyl, and fumaryl. In this embodiment, the dry powder composition can comprise a diketopiperazine salt. In still yet another embodiment of the present invention, there is provided a dry powder composition or formulation, wherein the diketopiperazine is 2,5-diketo-3,6-di-(4-fumaryl-aminobutyl)piperazine, with or without a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, or excipient.

An inhalation system for delivering a dry powder formulation to a patient's lung, comprising a dry powder inhaler configured to have flow conduits with a total resistance to flow in a dosing configuration ranging in value from 0.065 to about 0.200 ( $\sqrt{\text{kPa}}$ )/liter per minute.

In one embodiment, a dry powder inhalation kit is provided comprising a dry powder inhaler as described above, one or more medicament cartridge comprising a dry powder formulation for treating a disorder or disease such as respiratory tract disease, diabetes and obesity.

#### EXAMPLE 1

##### Measuring the Resistance and Flow Distribution of a Dry Powder Inhaler—Cartridge System

Several dry powder inhaler designs were tested to measure their resistance to flow—an important characteristic of inhalers. Inhalers exhibiting high resistance require a greater pressure drop to yield the same flow rate as lower resistance inhalers. Briefly, to measure the resistance of each inhaler and cartridge system, various flow rates are applied to the inhaler and the resulting pressures across the inhaler are measured. These measurements can be achieved by utilizing a vacuum pump attached to the mouthpiece of the inhaler, to supply the pressure drop, and a flow controller and pressure meter to change the flow and record the resulting pressure. According to the Bernoulli principle, when the square root of the pressure drop is plotted versus the flow rate, the resistance of the inhaler is the slope of the linear portion of the curve. In these experiments, the resistance of the inhalation system, comprising a dry powder inhaler and cartridge as described herein, were measured in the dosing configuration using a resistance measuring device. The dosing configuration forms an air pathway through the inhaler air conduits and through the cartridge in the inhaler.

Since different inhaler designs exhibit different resistance values due to slight variations in geometries of their air pathways, multiple experiments were conducted to determine the ideal interval for pressure settings to use with a particular design. Based on the Bernoulli principle of linearity between square root of pressure and flow rate, the intervals for assessing linearity were predetermined for the three inhalers used after multiple tests so that the appropriate settings could be used with other batches of the same inhaler design. An exemplary graph for an inhaler can be seen in FIG. 80 for an inhalation system depicted in FIG. 151. The graph depicted in FIG. 80 indicates that the resistance of the inhalation system as depicted in FIG. 151 can be measured with good correlation to the Bernoulli principle at flow rates ranging from about 10 to 25 L/min. The graph also shows that the resistance of the exemplary inhalation system was determined to be 0.093  $\sqrt{\text{kPa}}$ /LPM. FIG. 80 illustrates that flow and pressure are related. Therefore, as the slope of the line in square root of pressure versus flow graph decreases, i.e., inhalation systems exhibiting lower resistance, the change in flow for a given change in pressure is greater. Accordingly, higher resistance inhalation systems would exhibit less variability in flow rates for given changes in pressure provided by the patient with a breath powered system.

## 51

The data in Tables 1 show the results of a set of experiments using the inhalers described in FIG. 50 (DPI 1), and FIGS. 15C-15K (DPI 2). For the dry powder inhaler 1 (DPI 1), the cartridge illustrated in design 150, FIGS. 35-38, was used, and the cartridge illustrated in design 170, FIG. 39A-I was used with DPI 2. Accordingly, DPI 1 used Cartridge 1 and DPI 2 used Cartridge 2.

TABLE 1

Device Tested	Total Device Resistance	Cartridge Resistance	% of Total Flow Through Cartridge
MedTone ®	0.1099	0.368	15.28
DPI 1	0.0874	0.296	29.50
DPI 2	0.0894	0.234	35.56

Table 1 illustrates the resistance of the inhalation system tested herewith is 0.0874 and 0.0894  $\sqrt{\text{kPa/LPM}}$ , respectively for DPI 1 and DPI 2. The data show that the resistance of the inhalation system to flow is in part determined by the geometry of the air conduits within the cartridge.

## EXAMPLE 2

## Measurement of Particle Size Distribution Using an Inhaler System with an Insulin Formulation

Measurements of the particle size distribution with a laser diffraction apparatus (Helos Laser Diffraction system, Sympatec Inc.) with an adaptor (MannKind Corp.) were made of a formulation of various amounts in milligram (mg) of an insulin and fumaryl diketopiperazine particles provided in a cartridge-inhaler system as described herewith (inhaler of FIGS. 15C-15K with cartridge 170 shown in FIGS. 39A-39I). The device is attached at one end to a tubing, which is adapted to a flow meter (TSI, Inc. Model 4043) and a valve to regulate pressure or flow from a compressed air source. Once the laser system is activated and the laser beam is ready to measure a plume, a pneumatic valve is actuated to allow the powder to be discharged from the inhaler. The laser system measures the plume exiting the inhaler device automatically based on predetermined measurement conditions. The laser diffraction system is operated by software integrated with the apparatus and controlled by computer program. Measurements were made of samples containing different amounts of powder and different powder lots. The measurement conditions are as follows:

Laser measurement start trigger conditions: when  $\geq 0.6\%$  laser intensity is detected on a particular detector channel;  
Laser measurement end trigger conditions: when  $\leq 0.4\%$  laser intensity is detected on a particular detector channel;  
Distance between vacuum source and inhaler chamber is approximately 9.525 cm.

Multiple tests were carried out using different amounts of powders or fill mass in the cartridges. Cartridges were only used once. Cartridge weights were determined before and after powder discharge from the inhaler to determine discharged powder weights. Measurements in the apparatus were determined at various pressure drops and repeated multiple times as indicated in Table 2 below. Once the powder plume is measured, the data is analyzed and graphed. Table 2 depicts data obtained from the experiments, wherein CE denotes cartridge emptying (powder discharged) and Q3 (50%) is the geometric diameter of the 50<sup>th</sup> percentile of the cumulative powder particle size distribution of the sample,

## 52

and q3(5.8  $\mu\text{m}$ ) denotes the percentage of the particle size distribution smaller than 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$  geometric diameter.

TABLE 2

Test No.	Pressure Drop (kPa)	Discharge Time (s)	Fill Mass (mg)	Sample Size	% CE	Q3 (50%)	q3 (5.8 $\mu\text{m}$ )
1	4	3	6.7	30	98.0	4.020	63.8
2	4	3	6.7	20	97.0	3.700	67.4
3	4	3	6.7	20	98.4	3.935	64.6
4	4	3	3.5	20	97.8	4.400	61.0
5	2	4	6.7	7	92.9	4.364	61.0
6	2	4	6.7	7	95.1	4.680	57.9
7	4	4	6.7	7	97.0	3.973	64.4
8	4	4	6.7	7	95.5	4.250	61.7
9	6	4	6.7	7	97.3	3.830	65.3
10	6	4	6.7	7	97.8	4.156	62.2

The data in Table 2 showed that 92.9% to 98.4% of the total powder fill mass was emitted from the inhalation system. Additionally, the data indicate that regardless of the fill mass, 50% of the particles emitted from the inhalation system had a geometric diameter of less than 4.7  $\mu\text{m}$  as measured at the various times and pressure drops tested. Moreover, between 60% and 70% of the particles emitted had a geometric diameter of less than 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$ .

FIG. 81 depicts data obtained from another experiment in which 10 mg of powder fill mass was used. The graph shows the particle size distribution of the sample containing particles of a formulation comprising insulin and fumaryl diketopiperazine resulted in 78.35% of the measured particles had a particle size of  $\leq 5.8 \mu\text{m}$ . The laser detected 37.67% optical concentration during the measurement duration of 0.484 seconds at the above measurement conditions. The data show that the inhalation system effectively deagglomerates the insulin-FDKP formulation to small sizes over a relevant and lower range of user inhalation capacities, i.e., pressure drops. These small geometric sizes for this cohesive (Carr's index=36%) formulation are believed to be respirable.

## EXAMPLE 3

## Measurement of Powder Discharge from a Cartridge as a Measure of Inhalation System Performance

The experiments were conducted using the inhalation system described herewith using multiple inhaler prototypes depicted in FIGS. 15C-15K with cartridge 170 prototypes as shown in FIGS. 39A-39I. Multiple cartridges were used with each inhaler. Each cartridge was weighed in an electronic balance prior to fill. The cartridges were filled with a predetermined mass of powder, again weighed and each filled cartridge was placed in an inhaler and tested for efficiency of emptying a powder formulation, i.e., Technosphere® Insulin (insulin-FDKP; typically 3-4 U insulin/mg powder, approximately 10-15% insulin w/w) powder batches. Multiple pressure drops were used to characterize the consistency of performance. Table 3 depicts results of this testing using 35 cartridge discharge measurements per inhaler. In the data in Table 3, all tests were carried out using the same batch of a clinical grade insulin-FDKP powder. The results show that relevant user pressure drops, ranging from 2 through 5 kPa demonstrated a highly efficient emptying of the powder from the cartridge.

53

TABLE 3

Test No.	Pressure Drop (kPa)	Discharge Time (s)	Fill Mass (mg)	Sample Size	Mean % CE	% CE SD
1	5.00	3.00	3.08	35	99.42	0.75
2	5.00	3.00	3.00	35	98.11	1.11
3	5.00	3.00	6.49	35	99.49	0.81
4	5.00	3.00	6.55	35	99.05	0.55
5	5.00	2.00	6.57	35	98.69	0.94
6	5.00	2.00	6.57	35	99.33	1.03
7	4.00	3.00	6.47	35	98.15	1.15
8	4.00	3.00	6.50	35	99.37	0.46
9	4.00	3.00	3.28	35	98.63	0.93
10	4.00	3.00	3.18	35	98.63	1.48
11	4.00	2.00	6.61	35	92.30	3.75
12	4.00	2.00	6.58	35	98.42	1.71
13	3.00	3.00	6.55	35	92.91	5.04
14	3.00	3.00	6.56	35	98.88	0.63
15	3.00	2.00	6.56	35	96.47	3.19
16	3.00	2.00	6.59	35	99.49	0.54
17	3.00	1.00	6.93	35	98.06	2.37
18	3.00	1.00	6.95	35	98.74	0.67
19	3.00	1.00	3.12	35	97.00	1.06
20	3.00	1.00	3.15	35	96.98	0.99
21	2.00	1.00	6.53	35	97.24	1.65
22	2.00	1.00	6.49	35	98.48	2.27

## EXAMPLE 4

## Measurement of Predictive Deposition by Andersen Cascade Impaction

The experiments were conducted using an Andersen Cascade Impactor to collect stage plate powder deposits during a simulated dose delivery using flow rates of 28.3 LPM. This flow rate resulted in a pressure drop across the inhalation system (DPI plus cartridge) of approximately 6 kPa. Depositions on the plate stages were analyzed gravimetrically using filters and electronic balances. Fill weights of a cohesive powder in 10 mg, 6.6 mg and 3.1 mg fill mass were evaluated for inhalation system performance. Each impaction test was conducted with five cartridges. The cumulative powder mass collected on stages 2-F was measured in accordance with aerodynamic particle sizes less than 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$ . The ratio of the collected powder mass to the cartridge fill content was determined and is provided as percent respirable fraction (RF) over the fill weight. The data is presented in Table 4.

The data show that a respirable fraction ranging from 50% to 70% was achieved with multiple powder batches. This range represents a normalized performance characteristic of the inhalation system.

The inhaler system performance measurements were repeated 35 times with a different cartridge. Fill mass (mg) and discharge time (seconds) were measured for each inhaler cartridge system used. Additionally, the percent of respirable fraction, i.e., particles suitable for pulmonary delivery, in the powder was also measured. The results are presented in Table 4 below. In the table, the RF/fill equals the percent of particles having a size ( $\leq 5.8 \mu\text{m}$ ) that would travel to the lungs in the powder; CE indicates cartridge emptying or powder delivered; RF indicates respirable fraction. In Table 4, Test Nos. 1-10 were conducted using a second batch of a clinical grade of the insulin-FDKP powder, but the test powder for 11-17 used the same powder as the tests conducted and presented in Table 3.

54

TABLE 4

No.	Pressure Drop (kPa)	Discharge Time (s)	Fill Mass (mg)	Sample Size	Mean % CE	% RF/ Fill	% RF/ Delivered
1	6.4	8	9.7	5	98.9	56.6	58.3
2	6.4	8	9.9	5	88.8	53.7	60.4
3	6.4	8	8.2	5	97.5	54.9	56.9
4	6.4	8	6.7	5	98.4	56.8	58.1
5	6.4	8	10.0	5	89.2	60.4	67.8
6	6.4	8	9.6	5	99.3	53.5	53.9
7	6.4	8	9.6	5	98.2	57.3	58.4
8	6.4	8	9.6	5	99.0	56.9	57.5
9	6.4	8	9.6	5	95.4	59.3	62.1
10	6.4	8	6.6	5	99.4	61.7	62.1
11	6.4	8	6.6	5	99.6	59.0	59.2
12	6.4	8	6.6	5	96.5	62.6	64.8
13	6.4	8	6.6	5	98.7	59.8	60.6
14	6.4	8	3.1	5	99.5	66.3	66.6
15	6.4	8	3.1	5	99.7	70.7	70.9
16	6.4	8	3.1	5	97.6	65.9	67.5
17	6.4	8	3.1	5	98.2	71.6	73.0

The data above show that the present inhalation system comprising a dry powder inhaler and a cartridge containing a cohesive powder, i.e., TECHNOSPHERE® Insulin (FDKP particles comprising insulin) can discharge effectively almost all of the powder content, since greater than 85% and in most cases greater than 95% of the total powder content of a cartridge at variable fill masses and pressure drops were obtained with consistency and significant degree of emptying. The Andersen cascade impaction measurements indicated that greater than 50% of the particles are in the respirable range wherein the particles are less than 5.8  $\mu\text{m}$  and ranging from 53.5% to 73% of the total emitted powder.

## EXAMPLE 5

## Rugosity of Technosphere® Insulin (TI)

The rugosity is the ratio of the actual specific surface area of the particle to that for an equivalent sphere. The specific surface area of a sphere is:

$$SSA_{\text{sphere}} = \frac{\pi d_{\text{eff}}^2}{\rho \frac{4}{3} \pi d_{\text{eff}}^3} = \frac{6}{\rho d_{\text{eff}}}$$

where  $d_{\text{eff}} = 1.2 \mu\text{m}$  is the surface-weighted diameter of TI particles from Sympatec/RODOS laser diffraction measurements.

An average sphere with the same density as the TI particle matrix ( $1.4 \text{ g/cm}^3$ ) would therefore have an SSA of

$$\begin{aligned} SSA_{\text{sphere}} &= \frac{6}{\rho d_{\text{eff}}} \\ &= \frac{6}{\left(1.4 \frac{\text{g}}{\text{cm}^3}\right) (1.2 \times 10^{-6} \text{ m})} \left(\frac{\text{m}^3}{10^6 \text{ cm}^3}\right) \\ &= 3.6 \text{ m}^2/\text{g} \end{aligned}$$

Thus for TI particles with specific surface area (SSA) of approximately  $40 \text{ m}^2/\text{g}$



55

$$\text{Rugosity} = \frac{(SSA)_{PI}}{(SSA)_{sphere}} = \frac{40 \text{ m}^2/\text{g}}{3.6 \text{ m}^2/\text{g}} \approx 11.$$

For similarly sized particles with specific surface area of 50 or 60 m<sup>2</sup>/g the rugosity would be roughly 14 and 16 respectively.

## EXAMPLE 6

Geometric Particle Size Analysis of Emitted Formulations by Volumetric Median Geometric Diameter (VMGD) Characterization

Laser diffraction of dry powder formulations emitted from dry powder inhalers is a common methodology employed to characterize the level of de-agglomeration subjected to a powder. The methodology indicates a measure of geometric size rather than aerodynamic size as occurring in industry standard impaction methodologies. Typically, the geometric size of the emitted powder includes a volumetric distribution characterized by the median particle size, VMGD. Importantly, geometric sizes of the emitted particles are discerned with heightened resolution as compared to the aerodynamic sizes provided by impaction methods. Smaller sizes are preferred and result in greater likelihood of individual particles being delivered to the pulmonary tract. Thus, differences in inhaler deagglomeration and ultimate performance can be easier to resolve with diffraction. In these experiments, an inhaler as specified in EXAMPLE 3 and a predicate inhaler are tested with laser diffraction at pressures analogous to actual patient inspiratory capacities to determine the effectiveness of the inhalation system to de-agglomerate powder formulations. Specifically, the formulations included cohesive diketopiperazine powders with an active insulin loaded ingredient and without. These powder formulations possessed characteristic surface areas, isomer ratios, and Carr's indices. Reported in Table 5 are a VMGD and an efficiency of the container emptying during the testing. FDKP powders have an approximate Carr's index of 50 and TI powder has an approximate Carr's index of 40.

TABLE 5

Inhaler system	powder	% trans	SSA	pressure drop (kPa)	sample size	% CE	VMGD (micron)
DPI 2	FDKP	56	55	4	15	92.5	6.800
MedTone ®	FDKP	56	55	4	30	89.5	21.200
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	30	98.0	4.020
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	20	97.0	3.700
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	20	98.4	3.935
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	20	97.8	4.400
MedTone ®	FDKP + active	56	45	4	10	86.1	9.280
MedTone ®	FDKP + active	56	45	4	10	92.3	10.676
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	2	7	92.9	4.364
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	2	7	95.1	4.680
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	7	97.0	3.973
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	45	4	7	95.5	4.250

56

TABLE 5-continued

Inhaler system	powder	% trans	SSA	pressure drop (kPa)	sample size	% CE	VMGD (micron)
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	56	4	10	99.6	6.254
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	14	4	10	85.5	4.037
MedTone ®	FDKP + active	56	56	4	20	89.7	12.045
MedTone ®	FDKP + active	56	14	4	20	37.9	10.776
DPI 2	FDKP + active	54	50	4	10	97.1	4.417
DPI 2	FDKP + active	54	44	4	10	96.0	4.189
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	35	4	10	92.0	3.235
DPI 2	FDKP + active	50	34	4	10	93.2	5.611
DPI 2	FDKP + active	66	33	4	10	79.0	4.678
DPI 2	FDKP + active	45	42	4	10	93.2	5.610
DPI 2	FDKP + active	56	9	4	10	78.9	5.860

These data in Table 5 show an improvement in powder deagglomeration over a predicate inhaler system as compared to the inhaler system described herein. Diketopiperazine formulations with surface areas ranging from 14-56 m<sup>2</sup>/g demonstrated emptying efficiencies in excess of 85% and VMGD less than 7 microns. Similarly, formulations possessing an isomer ratio ranging from 45-66% trans demonstrated improved performance over the predicate device. Last, performance of the inhaler system with formulations characterized with Carr's indices of 40-50 were shown to be improved over the predicate device as well. In all cases, the reported VMGD values were below 7 microns.

## EXAMPLE 7

Relationship Between Trans Isomer Content and RF/Fill

Microparticles were manufactured from FDKP and insulin. FDKP was dissolved in aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>OH to form a solution. A feed stream of this solution was combined with a feed stream of an aqueous HOAc solution in a high shear mixer to form an aqueous suspension of microparticles.

The FDKP feed solution was prepared with about 2.5 wt % FDKP, about 1.6 wt % concentrated NH<sub>4</sub>OH (about 28 to about 30 wt % NH<sub>3</sub>) and about 0.05 wt % polysorbate **80**. The acetic acid feed solution was prepared at about 10.5 wt % GAA and about 0.05 wt % polysorbate **80**. Both feed solutions were filtered through an about 0.2 µm membrane prior to use.

Equal amounts (by mass) of each feed solution were pumped through a Dual-Feed Sonolator™ equipped with the #5 orifice (0.0011 sq. inch). The minor pump was set to 50% for equal flow rates of each feed stream and the feed pressure was about 2000 psi. The receiving vessel contained DI water equal to the mass of either feed solution (e.g. 4 kg FDKP feed solution and 4 kg HOAc feed solution would be pumped through the Sonolator™ into the receiving vessel containing 4 kg of DI water).

The resulting suspension was concentrated and washed by means of tangential flow filtration using a 0.2 m<sup>2</sup> PES membrane. The suspensions were first concentrated to about 4% solids then diafiltered with DI water and finally concentrated

57

to about 16% nominal solids. The actual percent solids of the washed suspension was determined by "loss on drying."

Insulin stock solutions were prepared containing about 10 wt % insulin (as received) in a solvent comprising about 2 wt % HOAc in DI water and sterile filtered. The stock solution was filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ m filter prior to use. Based on the solids content of the suspension, the appropriate amount of stock solution was added to the mixed suspension. The resulting microparticle/insulin was then adjusted from a pH of about 3.6 to a pH of about 4.5 using an ammonia solution.

The microparticle/insulin suspension was then flash frozen by pelletizing (cryo-granulating) into liquid nitrogen. The ice pellets were lyophilized until the drying was complete.

The respirable fraction (RF/fill) of bulk powders is a measure of aerodynamic microparticle size distribution and is determined by testing with the Andersen cascade impacter. To obtain RF/fill values, cartridges are filled with bulk powder and discharged through a MEDTONE® inhaler at 30 L/min. The powder collected on each inhaler stage is weighed and the total powder collected is normalized to the total amount filled in the cartridges. Accordingly, RF/fill is powder collected on those stages of the impacter representing the respirable fraction divided by powder loaded into cartridges.

As shown in FIG. 82, FDKP powders with acceptable aerodynamic performance measured as RF/fill have been produced from FDKP with as little as 45% trans isomer (FIG. 82). Powders containing more than 65% trans-FDKP tended to have lower and more variable RF/fill.

This study determined the upper end of the trans isomer content range with beneficial aerodynamic properties. The next sections describe experiments conducted to evaluate processing conditions that can generate the specified isomer contents.

#### EXAMPLE 8

##### Saponification Solvent

Experiments were conducted to determine the effect, if any, of the saponification solvent on % trans isomer FDKP (FIG. 83).

A mixture of 004 and 590 mL of reaction solvent (see Table 5) was heated to about 57° C. After the reaction temperature had stabilized, about 50% NaOH solution was added dropwise via addition funnel over about 60 minutes. The reaction was held for about 30 minutes after the NaOH addition was complete and then filtered to remove any unreacted solids. The filtrate was acidified with acetic acid to a pH of about 5 and the resulting solids isolated by filtration, washed with water and acetone, dried in a vacuum oven, and analyzed by HPLC to determine cis and trans isomer content.

Accordingly, five different solvent systems ranging from aqueous (Table 5, A) to organic (Table 5, E) were evaluated. In general, the results showed that as methanol content in the methanol/water solvent system increased, the percent of trans FDKP also increased, although saponification in 100% methanol gave FDKP with low trans isomer content and was complicated by low FDKP solubility in methanol:

TABLE 5

Affect of water:methanol Solvent Ratio in Step 5 on FDKP Isomer Content		
Sample ID	Water:Methanol Ratio (v:v)	% Trans FDKP
A	4:0	51

58

TABLE 5-continued

Affect of water:methanol Solvent Ratio in Step 5 on FDKP Isomer Content		
Sample ID	Water:Methanol Ratio (v:v)	% Trans FDKP
B	3:1	53
C	2:2	55
D	1:3	78
E	0:4	33

#### EXAMPLE 9

##### Recrystallization Conditions

FDKP can be recrystallized from a TAA (solvent)/GAA (anti-solvent) mixture (FIG. 86; step 6). Controlled process parameters were evaluated to characterize this recrystallization process and its effects on FDKP isomer contents. The effect of each parameter on the isomer content varied as a function of reaction yield. That is, low product recovery resulted in elevated trans isomer levels because cis FDKP has a greater solubility in TFA. These yield effects complicated data interpretation, so it was difficult to characterize the effect of a given parameter on % trans FDKP alone. However, the data suggest that an about 40 to about 65% yield is necessary to meet the about 45 to about 65% trans FDKP range. Accordingly, data points that did not meet this required minimum yield were excluded.

The following experiments used the following procedure unless a parameter was modified to examine its effect on FDKP isomer contents and yield.

A reactor was charged with crude FDKP (about 75 g) and TFA (about 250 mL) and stirring was initiated. The suspension was heated to reflux (about 80 to about 85° C.) and held for about 10 minutes or until all solids were dissolved. The mixture was cooled to below about 60° C. Glacial acetic acid (about 375 mL) was added to the solution. The mixture was cooled and held for a minimum of about 6 hours at about 10 to about 20° C. The precipitated product was filtered and washed with GAA (3×about 100 mL), acetone (3×about 100 mL) and water (1×about 100 mL). The product was dried at about 55° C. under vacuum (about 22 to about 25 in. Hg) for about 12 to about 18 hours.

Initially, four factors were tested including solvent quantity, anti-solvent quantity, crystallization time and crystallization temperature. A solvent quantity of about 2.68 or about 3.34 mL/g FDKP provided acceptable % trans isomer. At around 6.68 mL solvent/g FDKP, an unacceptably high trans isomer content was produced. The amount of anti-solvent did not significantly affect % trans FDKP isomer content at up to 5.0 mL/g FDKP. Reducing anti-solvent quantity from the control quantity substantially produced a % trans FDKP above the desired range.

In these experiments crystallization time did not significantly affect trans FDKP isomer content at up to about 6 hours. Isomer content % trans FDKP fell outside the about 45 to about 65% range at the high (35° C.) and low (0° C.) crystallization temperatures tested.

Subsequent experiments supported these findings. FIG. 87 shows a surface depicting FDKP isomer content, measured as % trans FDKP, as a function of solvent:anti-solvent ratio (TFA:GAA) and crystallization temperature. Over the ranges tested in these experiments the values for % trans FDKP varied from 59-75%. The data suggest that trans FDKP is within the desired range at a low solvent ratio (0.43) and high

crystallization temperatures (25° C.). Predicted values for trans FDKP in this area of the response surface are 58-60%. These observations suggest that using a crystallization temperature of 25° C. could be advantageous.

The preceding disclosures are illustrative embodiments. It should be appreciated by those of skill in the art that the devices, techniques and methods disclosed herein elucidate representative embodiments that function well in the practice of the present disclosure. However, those of skill in the art should, in light of the present disclosure, appreciate that many changes can be made in the specific embodiments that are disclosed and still obtain a like or similar result without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention.

Unless otherwise indicated, all numbers expressing quantities of ingredients, properties such as molecular weight, reaction conditions, and so forth used in the specification and claims are to be understood as being modified in all instances by the term "about." Accordingly, unless indicated to the contrary, the numerical parameters set forth in the following specification and attached claims are approximations that may vary depending upon the desired properties sought to be obtained by the present invention. At the very least, and not as an attempt to limit the application of the doctrine of equivalents to the scope of the claims, each numerical parameter should at least be construed in light of the number of reported significant digits and by applying ordinary rounding techniques. Notwithstanding that the numerical ranges and parameters setting forth the broad scope of the invention are approximations, the numerical values set forth in the specific examples are reported as precisely as possible. Any numerical value, however, inherently contains certain errors necessarily resulting from the standard deviation found in their respective testing measurements.

The terms "a" and "an" and "the" and similar referents used in the context of describing the invention (especially in the context of the following claims) are to be construed to cover both the singular and the plural, unless otherwise indicated herein or clearly contradicted by context. Recitation of ranges of values herein is merely intended to serve as a shorthand method of referring individually to each separate value falling within the range. Unless otherwise indicated herein, each individual value is incorporated into the specification as if it were individually recited herein. All methods described herein can be performed in any suitable order unless otherwise indicated herein or otherwise clearly contradicted by context. The use of any and all examples, or exemplary language (e.g. "such as") provided herein is intended merely to better illuminate the invention and does not pose a limitation on the scope of the invention otherwise claimed. No language in the specification should be construed as indicating any non-claimed element essential to the practice of the invention.

The use of the term "or" in the claims is used to mean "and/or" unless explicitly indicated to refer to alternatives only or the alternatives are mutually exclusive, although the disclosure supports a definition that refers to only alternatives and "and/or."

Groupings of alternative elements or embodiments of the invention disclosed herein are not to be construed as limitations. Each group member may be referred to and claimed individually or in any combination with other members of the group or other elements found herein. It is anticipated that one or more members of a group may be included in, or deleted from, a group for reasons of convenience and/or patentability. When any such inclusion or deletion occurs, the specification is herein deemed to contain the group as modified thus fulfilling the written description of all Markush groups used in the appended claims.

Preferred embodiments of this invention are described herein, including the best mode known to the inventors for carrying out the invention. Of course, variations on those preferred embodiments will become apparent to those of ordinary skill in the art upon reading the foregoing description. The inventor expects those of ordinary skill in the art to employ such variations as appropriate, and the inventors intend for the invention to be practiced otherwise than specifically described herein. Accordingly, this invention includes all modifications and equivalents of the subject matter recited in the claims appended hereto as permitted by applicable law. Moreover, any combination of the above-described elements in all possible variations thereof is encompassed by the invention unless otherwise indicated herein or otherwise clearly contradicted by context.

Specific embodiments disclosed herein may be further limited in the claims using consisting of or consisting essentially of language. When used in the claims, whether as filed or added per amendment, the transition term "consisting of" excludes any element, step, or ingredient not specified in the claims. The transition term "consisting essentially of" limits the scope of a claim to the specified materials or steps and those that do not materially affect the basic and novel characteristic(s). Embodiments of the invention so claimed are inherently or expressly described and enabled herein.

Furthermore, numerous references have been made to patents and printed publications throughout this specification. Each of the above cited references and printed publications are herein individually incorporated by reference in their entirety.

Further, it is to be understood that the embodiments of the invention disclosed herein are illustrative of the principles of the present invention. Other modifications that may be employed are within the scope of the invention. Thus, by way of example, but not of limitation, alternative configurations of the present invention may be utilized in accordance with the teachings herein. Accordingly, the present invention is not limited to that precisely as shown and described.

The invention claimed is:

1. A drug delivery system comprising an inhaler, a powder container, comprising fumaryl diketopiperazine (FDKP) microparticles comprising a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 45% to about 65% and a drug, wherein the aerodynamic performance of the microparticles is improved as compared to fumaryl diketopiperazine microparticles having a trans isomer content outside of said trans isomer content of about 45% to about 65%; and

wherein in use about 10% to 70% of an air flow exiting the inhaler and entering a user passes through the powder container and about 90% to 30% of said air flow bypasses the powder container.

2. The drug delivery system of claim 1 wherein the FDKP microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 45% to about 56%.

3. The drug delivery system of claim 1 wherein said powder container comprises a unit dose cartridge.

4. The drug delivery system of claim 1 wherein the FDKP microparticles comprise a drug comprising insulin, GLP-1, heparin, calcitonin, felbamate, parathyroid hormone and fragments thereof, oxyntomodulin, growth hormone, erythropoietin, AZT, DDI, G-CSF, lamotrigine, chorionic gonadotropin releasing factor, luteinizing releasing hormone,  $\beta$ -galactosidase or Argatroban.

5. The drug delivery system of claim 1 having a resistance to flow of about 0.065 to about 0.200 (vKPa)/liter per minute.

6. The drug delivery system of claim 4 wherein the drug is insulin.

## 61

7. The drug delivery system of claim 6 wherein the insulin content of the FDKP microparticles is about 3 to about 4 U/mg.

8. A method of treating an insulin-related disorder comprising providing, for self-administration, the drug delivery system of claim 1 to administer insulin to a person in need thereof.

9. A drug delivery system comprising an inhaler, a powder container comprising FDKP microparticles having improved aerodynamic performance that have been prepared by a process comprising determining the trans-FDKP isomer content;

wherein the microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 45% to about 65% and the aerodynamic performance of the microparticles is improved as compared to fumaryl diketopiperazine microparticles having a trans isomer content outside of said trans isomer content of about 45% to about 65%; and

wherein in use about 10% to 70% of an air flow exiting the inhaler and entering a user passes through the powder container and about 90% to 30% of said air flow bypasses the powder container.

10. The drug delivery system of claim 9 comprising FDKP microparticles having a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 50% to about 63%.

11. The drug delivery system of claim 9 comprising FDKP microparticles having a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 45% to about 56%.

## 62

12. The drug delivery system of claim 9 having a resistance to flow of approximately 0.065 to about 0.200 (kPa)/liter per minute.

13. The drug delivery system of claim 1 wherein the FDKP microparticles are prepared by a process comprising recrystallizing FDKP from a solvent, then forming microparticles, wherein the trans-FDKP content of the microparticles is about 45% to about 65%.

14. The drug delivery system of claim 13 wherein the FDKP microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 50% to about 65%.

15. The drug delivery system of claim 13 wherein the FDKP microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 54% to about 65%.

16. The drug delivery system of claim 4 having a manufacturing specification in a range of about 53% to about 63% trans-FDKP isomer content, based upon the total content of FDKP.

17. The drug delivery system of claim 15 wherein the FDKP microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 54% to about 63%.

18. The drug delivery system of claim 17 wherein the FDKP microparticles have a trans-FDKP isomer content of about 54% to about 56%.

\* \* \* \* \*

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
**CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**

PATENT NO. : 9,192,675 B2  
APPLICATION NO. : 13/954731  
DATED : November 24, 2015  
INVENTOR(S) : Smutney et al.

Page 1 of 1

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

IN THE SPECIFICATION

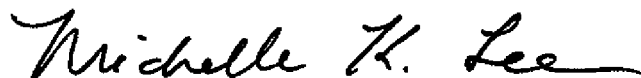
Column 39, lines 46-47, the formula “bis-3,6-(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine” should read --3,6-bis(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine--

Column 46, lines 56-57, the formula “bis-3,6-(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine” should read --3,6-bis(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)-2,5-diketopiperazine--

Column 49, lines 66-67, the formula “2,5-diketo-3,6-di(4-X-aminobutyl)piperazine” should read --2,5-diketo-3,6-di(N-X-4-aminobutyl)piperazine--

Column 50, lines 5-6, the formula “2,5-diketo-3,6-di-(4-fumaryl-aminobutyl)piperazine” should read --2,5-diketo-3,6-di(N-fumaryl-4-aminobutyl)piperazine--

Signed and Sealed this  
Twenty-ninth Day of March, 2016



Michelle K. Lee  
*Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office*

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  
**CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION**

PATENT NO. : 9,192,675 B2  
APPLICATION NO. : 13/954731  
DATED : November 24, 2015  
INVENTOR(S) : Smutney et al.

Page 1 of 1


It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

On the Title Page:

(73) Assignee: "ManKind" Corporation, Valencia, CA (US)

should read (73) Assignee: --MannKind-- Corporation, Valencia, CA (US)

Signed and Sealed this  
Seventh Day of June, 2016

A handwritten signature in black ink, reading "Michelle K. Lee". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style.

Michelle K. Lee  
*Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office*